EUROPEAN CHEMICALS AGENCY

GUIDANCE

# Guidance on Information Requirements and Chemical Safety Assessment

## Chapter R.7c: Endpoint specific guidance

Draft Version 3.0

June 2016

# Legal notice



**Guidance on Information Requirements and Chemical Safety Assessment**
**Chapter R.7c: Endpoint specific guidance**

**Reference:** XXX
**ISBN:** XXX
**Publication date:** XX 201X
**Language:** EN



If you have questions or comments in relation to this document please send them (indicating the document reference, issue date, chapter and/or page of the document to which your comment refers) using the Guidance feedback form. The feedback form can be accessed via the ECHA Guidance website or directly via the following link:

https://comments.echa.europa.eu/comments_cms/FeedbackGuidance.aspx

**European Chemicals Agency**

Mailing address: P.O. Box 400, FI-00121 Helsinki, Finland

Visiting address: Annankatu 18, Helsinki, Finland

# Preface

This document describes the information requirements under the REACH Regulation with regard to substance properties, exposure, uses and risk management measures, and the chemical safety assessment. It is part of a series of guidance documents that are aimed to help all stakeholders with their preparation for fulfilling their obligations under the REACH Regulation. These documents cover detailed guidance for a range of essential REACH processes as well as for some specific scientific and/or technical methods that industry or authorities need to make use of under the REACH Regulation.

The original versions of the guidance documents were drafted and discussed within the REACH Implementation Projects (RIPs) led by the European Commission services, involving stakeholders from Member States, industry and non-governmental organisations. After acceptance by the Member States competent authorities the guidance documents had been handed over to ECHA for publication and further maintenance. Any updates of the guidance are drafted by ECHA and are then subject to a consultation procedure, involving stakeholders from Member States, industry and non-governmental organisations. For details of the consultation procedure, please see:

http://echa.europa.eu/documents/10162/13608/mb_63_2013_revision_consultation_procedure_guidance_en.pdf

The guidance documents can be obtained via the website of the European Chemicals Agency at:

http://echa.europa.eu/web/guest/guidance-documents/guidance-on-reach

Further guidance documents will be published on this website when they are finalised or updated.

This document relates to the REACH Regulation (EC) No 1907/2006 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 18 December 2006[1].

[1] Regulation (EC) No 1907/2006 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 18 December 2006 concerning the Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH), establishing a European Chemicals Agency, amending Directive 1999/45/EC and repealing Council Regulation (EEC) No 793/93 and Commission Regulation (EC) No 1488/94 as well as Council Directive 76/769/EEC and Commission Directives 91/155/EEC, 93/67/EEC, 93/105/EC and 2000/21/EC (OJ L 396, 30.12.2006, p.1; corrected by OJ L 136, 29.5.2007, p.3).

# Document history

| Version | Changes | Date |
|---|---|---|
| Version 1 | First edition | July 2008 |
| Version 1.1 | Corrigendum:<br>(i) replacing references to DSD/DPD by references to CLP<br>(ii) further minor editorial changes/corrections | November 2012 |
| Version 2.0 | Second edition. Partial revision of this document was necessary to take into account the revised version (2.0) of Chapter R.11 of the Guidance on IR&CSA following amendment of Annex XIII to REACH (according to Commission Regulation (EU) No 253/2011 of 15 March 2011, OJ L 69 7 16.3.2011). Main changes in the guidance document include the following:<br>• References to the updated Chapter R.11 have been added and the corresponding text updated;<br>• The document has been re-formatted to ECHA new corporate identity. | November 2014 |
| Version 3.0 | Partial revision of the document with respect to PBT/vPvB aspects to take into account the updated version of Chapter R.11 (v 3.0). Main changes in the guidance document include the following:<br>• Update to Section R.7.10.1: XX<br>• Update to Section R.7.10.3.1: *in vitro* bioaccumulation assessment XXX<br>• Update to Section R.7.10.8 to R.7.10.13: XXX<br>• | XXX 201X |

## Convention for citing the REACH regulation

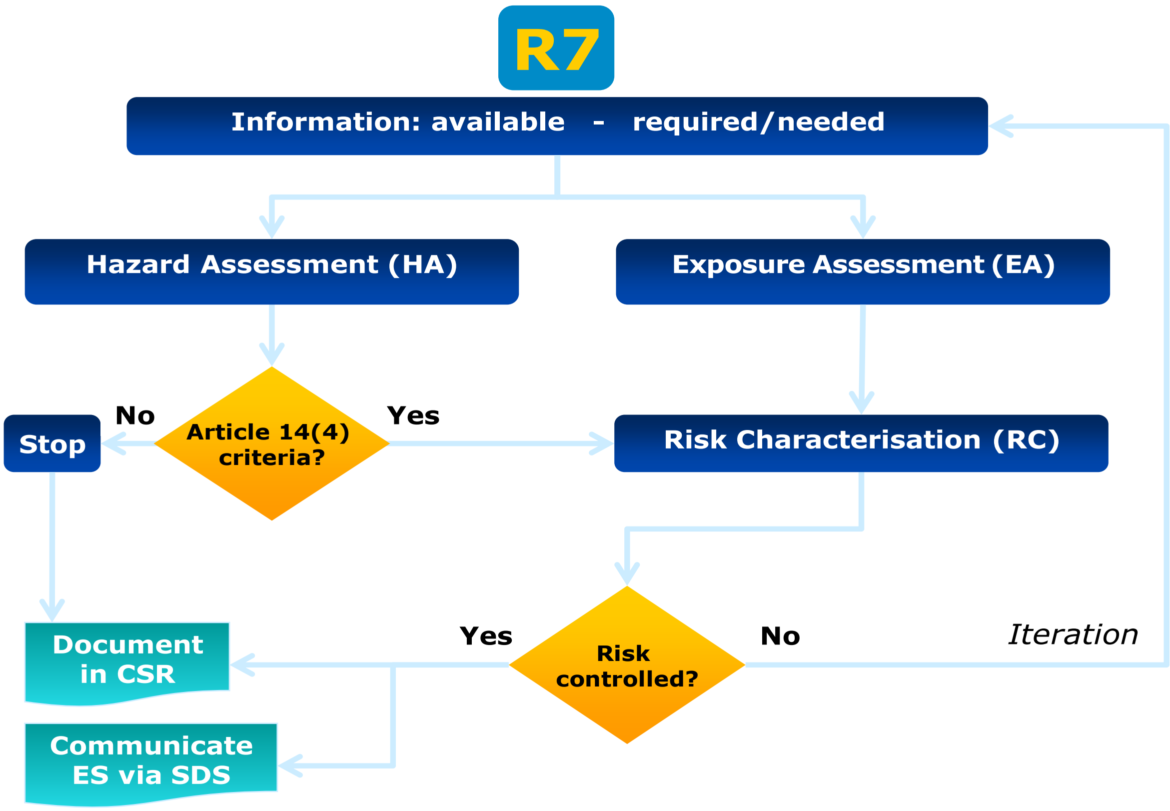
Where the REACH regulation is cited literally, this is indicated by text in italics between quotes.

## Table of Terms and Abbreviations

See Chapter R.20.

## Pathfinder

The figure below indicates the location of chapter R.7(c) within the Guidance Document:



# Table of Contents

## Table of Figures



## Table of Tables

# Appendices to Chapter R.7b



# Appendix to Chapter R.7 (a, b and c)

# R.7.10 Bioconcentration and bioaccumulation; long-term toxicity to birds

## R.7.10.1 Aquatic bioaccumulation

Information on accumulation in aquatic organisms is vital for understanding the environmental behaviour of a substance, and is a relevant consideration at all supply levels, even when it is not a specified requirement. The information is used for hazard classification and PBT assessment as well as wildlife and human food chain exposure modelling for the chemical safety assessment. It is also a factor in deciding whether long-term ecotoxicity testing might be necessary. This is because chemical accumulation may result in internal concentrations of a substance in an organism that cause toxic effects over long-term exposures even when external concentrations are very small. Highly bioaccumulative chemicals may also transfer through the food web, which in some cases may lead to biomagnification.

### R.7.10.1.1 Definitions of aquatic bioaccumulation

Several terms have been used to describe chemical accumulation in biota, and slightly different definitions of these (all of equal validity) may be found in the literature. For the purposes of this document the following definitions have been used:

*Accumulation* is a general term for the net result of absorption (uptake), distribution, metabolism and excretion (ADME) of a substance in an organism. These processes are discussed in detail in the mammalian toxicokinetics guidance document. In aquatic organisms, the main removal processes – referred to as elimination or depuration – is diffusive transfer across gill surfaces and intestinal walls, and biotransformation to metabolites that are more easily excreted than the parent compound. Further discussion of aquatic bioaccumulation processes may be found in other reference sources such as ECETOC (1996) and Boethling and Mackay (2000). Maternal transfer to eggs may add to depuration and can sometimes be significant, while growth may affect the concentration in an organism in the case when the rate of other excretion processes is in the same order of magnitude as the growth (dilution) rate.

*Bioconcentration* refers to the accumulation of a substance dissolved in water by an aquatic organism. Annex 1 of OECD TG 305 contains definitions for BCF. The steady-state *bioconcentration factor* ($BCF_{SS}$) is the ratio of the concentration of a substance in an organism to the concentration in water once a steady state has been achieved:

$$BCF_{SS} = C_o/C_w$$

where BCF is the bioconcentration factor (L/kg)

$C_o$ is the chemical concentration in the whole organism (mg/kg, wet weight)

$C_w$ is the chemical concentration in water (mg/L)

Please note that corrections for growth and/or a standard lipid content are not accounted for in this definition of the BCF.

The steady-state bioconcentration factor ($BCF_{SS}$) does not change significantly over a prolonged period of time, the concentration of the test substance in the surrounding medium being constant during this period.

Assuming that the organism can be mathematically represented as a homogeneously mixed single compartment (Sijm, 1991), and that first order kinetics applies, a BCF can also be expressed on a kinetic (i.e. non-equilibrium) basis as the quotient of the uptake and depuration rate constants:

$$\text{(Kinetic) } BCF_K = k_1/k_2$$

where $k_1$ is the uptake clearance [rate constant] from water (L/kg/day)

$k_2$ is the elimination rate constant ($day^{-1}$).

In principle the value of the $BCF_{SS}$ and the $BCF_K$ for a particular substance should be comparable, but deviations may occur if steady-state was uncertain or if corrections for growth have been applied to the kinetic BCF. The kinetic BCF ($BCF_K$) is preferred for regulatory purposes since for bioaccumulative substances a real steady state is often not attained during the uptake phase, and the conclusion of steady-state from the concentrations in fish at three consecutive time points could be erroneous. If the $BCF_K$ is significantly different from the $BCF_{SS}$, this is a clear indication that steady-state has not been attained in the uptake phase.

*Bioaccumulation* refers to uptake from all environmental sources including water, food and sediment. The *bioaccumulation factor* (BAF) can be expressed for simplicity as the steady-state (equilibrium) ratio of the substance concentration in an organism to the concentration in the surrounding medium (e.g. water in natural ecosystems).

For sediment dwellers, the biota-sediment accumulation factor BSAF is the ratio of the concentrations in the organism and the sediment. This may be normalised by multiplication with the quotient of the fraction of organic carbon of the sediment and the fraction of lipid in the invertebrate ($f_{oc}/f_{lip}$), in which case the term is referred to as the normalised biota-sediment accumulation factor (BSAF).

*Biomagnification* refers to accumulation via the food chain. It may be defined as an increase in the (fat-adjusted) internal concentration of a substance in organisms at succeeding trophic levels in a food chain. The biomagnification potential can be expressed as either:

a *trophic magnification factor* (TMF), which is the concentration increase in organisms with an increase of one trophic level (Fisk *et al*., 2001); or

a *biomagnification factor* (BMF), which is the ratio of the concentration in the predator and the concentration in the prey:

$$BMF = C_o/C_d$$

where BMF is the biomagnification factor (dimensionless)

$C_o$ is the steady-state chemical concentration in the organism (mg/kg)

$C_d$ is the steady-state chemical concentration in the diet (mg/kg).

Whereas BMFs describe the increase in concentrations from prey to predator, TMFs describe the average increase in concentration per trophic level.

*Trophic dilution* occurs when the concentration of a chemical in a predator is lower than that in its prey (due to greater metabolic capacity and increased compartmentalization of higher trophic level species, etc.).

*Secondary poisoning* refers to the toxic effects in the higher members of a food chain that result from ingestion of organisms from lower trophic levels that contain accumulated substances (and/or related metabolites).

In all of the above equations, the concentration in the organism should be expressed on a wet (rather than dry) weight basis. In addition, it is important to consider lipid normalisation and growth correction in some circumstances and these are considered further in Section R.7.10.4 and R.7.10.5.

#### R.7.10.1.2 Objective of the guidance on aquatic bioaccumulation

The aim of this document is to provide guidance to registrants on the assessment of all available data on a substance related to aquatic bioaccumulation, to allow a decision to be made on the need for further testing (with fish or, where appropriate, invertebrates).

### R.7.10.2 Information requirements for aquatic bioaccumulation

Annex IX to REACH indicates that information on bioaccumulation in aquatic – preferably fish – species is required for substances manufactured or imported in quantities of 100 t/y or more. In general, this means the establishment of a fish bioconcentration factor, although a biomagnification factor may also be appropriate in some circumstances.

Reliable measured data are preferred if available (see Section R.7.10.5), but Annex XI to REACH also applies, encouraging the use of alternative information at all supply levels before a new vertebrate test is conducted. Prediction techniques are well developed for many classes of organic substance (see Section R.7.10.3), and surrogate information (e.g. the octanol-water partition coefficient or $K_{ow}$) may sometimes suffice on its own or as part of a *Weight-of-Evidence* approach. A number of new methods are also being developed, which may provide important alternative data in the future. These are summarised in Section R.7.10.3.

Although bioaccumulation is not a specified endpoint below 100 t/y, surrogate information may still be relevant (e.g. for hazard classification and PBT screening), and more detailed consideration might be appropriate in some circumstances (see Section R.7.10.5). Furthermore, if a registrant, while conducting a CSA, cannot derive a definitive conclusion (i) ("The substance does not fulfil the PBT and vPvB criteria") or (ii) ("The substance fulfils the PBT or vPvB criteria") in the PBT/vPvB assessment using the relevant available information, he must, based on section 2.1 of Annex XIII to REACH, generate the necessary information, regardless of his tonnage band (for further details, see Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*). In such a case, the only possibility to refrain from testing or generating other necessary information is to treat the substance "*as if it is a PBT or vPvB*" (see Chapter R.11 of the Guidance on IR&CSA for details).

### R.7.10.3 Available information on aquatic bioaccumulation

The following sections summarise the types of relevant data that may be available from laboratory tests or other sources. It should be noted that most of the methods were developed for neutral (i.e. non-ionised) organic chemicals, and there may be problems applying some of the concepts to other substances – further guidance is provided in Section R.7.10.7.

Several databases exist that summarise such information on a large number of substances, and the more important ones are described in

Appendix R.7.10—2.

#### R.7.10.3.1 Laboratory data on aquatic bioaccumulation

#### *In vivo* tests for aquatic bioaccumulation

Fish bioconcentration test

Traditionally, bioconcentration potential has been assessed using laboratory experiments that expose fish to the substance dissolved in water. A number of standardised test guidelines are available. The EU Annex V C.13 (*to be renumbered under REACH*) method is based on the more widely used OECD test guideline 305, which was updated in October 2012 and is briefly described below. Other guidelines such as ASTM E1022-94 (ASTM, 2003) and OPPTS 850.1730 (US EPA, 1996a) are very similar[2].

The revised OECD test guideline 305 (OECD, 2012) provides guidance for the following three tests with different exposure methods and sampling schemes:

- OECD 305-I: Aqueous Exposure Bioaccumulation Fish Test
- OECD 305-II: Minimised Aqueous Exposure Fish Test
- OECD 305-III: Dietary Exposure Bioaccumulation Fish Test

The main changes in the revised test guideline compared to the previous version of OECD TG 305 from 1996 are the following:

- The testing of only one test concentration can be considered sufficient, when it is likely that the bioconcentration factor (BCF) is independent of the test concentration.

[2] The main differences concern the: (a) method of test water supply (static, semi-static or flow through); (b) requirement for carrying out a depuration study; (c) mathematical method for calculating BCF; (d) sampling frequency; (e) number of measurements in water and number of samples of fish; (f) requirement for measuring the lipid content of the fish; and (g) minimum duration of the uptake phase.

- A minimised aqueous exposure test design in which a reduced number of sample points is possible, if specific criteria are met.
- Fish lipid content should be measured so that BCF can be expressed on a 5% lipid content basis.
- Greater emphasis on kinetic BCF estimation (when possible) next to estimating the BCF at steady state.
- For certain groups of substances, a dietary exposure test will be proposed, where this is considered more suitable than an aqueous exposure test.
- Fish weight should be measured so that $BCF_K$ can be corrected for growth dilution.

In principle, a sufficient number of fish are exposed to one or two sub-lethal concentrations of the test substance dissolved in water. Both fish and water are sampled at regular time-intervals and the concentration of test substance measured. Tests are generally conducted using a flow-through system, although a renewal system is allowed if the requirement of constant aqueous concentration is met (flow-through methods are preferred for hydrophobic substances (i.e. log $K_{ow}$ >3)). After reaching an apparent steady-state concentration (or after 28 days, whichever is sooner), the remaining fish are transferred to clean water and the depuration is followed (usually for 14 days)[3].

The aim of the aqueous bioconcentration testing is to produce a reliable estimate of how much substance could concentrate from the aquatic compartment ($C_w$) to fish ($C_f$) so that a bioconcentration factor ($BCF_{SS}$) can be calculated by using the ratio $C_f/C_w$ at steady-state. However, a $BCF_K$ value is preferred, and it may also be calculated as the ratio of the uptake rate constant ($k_1$) and the depuration rate constant ($k_2$). This approach is especially useful in those cases in which steady-state is not reached during the uptake phase, as $BCF_k$ in these cases will generally provide a statistically more robust value. If uptake follows first order kinetics and the $BCF_{SS}$ was really based on steady state data, both methods should in principle lead to the same result. However, for bioaccumulative substances a real steady state is often not attained during the uptake phase, and the conclusion of steady-state from the concentrations in fish at three consecutive time points could be erroneous. If the $BCF_K$ is significantly different from the $BCF_{SS}$, this is a clear indication that steady-state has not been attained in the uptake phase. Besides that, the $BCF_{SS}$ cannot be corrected for the growth of fish as no agreed method is available to correct $BCF_{SS}$ for growth. The increase in fish mass during the test will result in a decrease of the test substance concentration in growing fish (= growth dilution) and thus the BCF may be underestimated if no correction is made. Growth dilution may affect both $BCF_{SS}$ and $BCF_K$ and therefore the $BCF_K$ should be calculated and corrected for growth dilution, $BCF_{kg}$, if growth of fish is significant during the test (this is especially important for fast growing juvenile fish, such as juvenile rainbow trout). The

[3] The time needed for reaching steady-state conditions may be set on the basis of $K_{ow}$ – k2 correlations (e.g. log k2 = 1.47 – 0.41 log $K_{ow}$ (Spacie & Hamelink, 1982) or log k2 = 1.69 – 0.53 log $K_{ow}$ (Gobas *et al.*, 1989)). The expected time (in days) needed to achieve 95% steady state may be calculated as -ln(1-0.95)/k2, provided that the bioconcentration follows first order kinetics.

revised OECD TG 305 (OECD, 2012) contains a procedure for growth correction.The guidelines regarding aqueous exposure (i.e. OECD 305-I and 305-II) are most validly applied to substances with log $K_{ow}$ values between 1.5 and 6. Practical experience suggests that if the aqueous solubility of the substance is low (i.e. below ~0.01 to 0.1 mg/L), this test might not provide a reliable BCF because it is very difficult to maintain exposure concentrations (Verhaar *et al*., 1999). Volatile and degradable substances are also difficult to test with this method for similar reasons. This is the reason for flow-through testing in these situations.

Fish dietary bioaccumulation test

In fish dietary exposure tests, a sufficient number of fish are exposed usually to one sub-lethal concentration of the test substance spiked in fish food. Both fish and food are sampled at regular time intervals and the concentration of test substance measured. It is recommended to conduct the test using a flow-through system in order to limit potential exposure of the test substance via water as a result of any desorption from spiked food or faeces. However, a semi-static conditions are also allowed. An uptake phase of 7-14 days is recommended but it can be extended if necessary. As fish may not reach steady-state during the uptake phase, the data treatment and results are usually based on a kinetic analysis of tissue residues. The depuration phase begins when the fish are fed for the first time with unspiked food and usually lasts for up to 28 days or until the test substance can no longer be quantified in whole fish, whichever is sooner.

A dietary exposure test (OECD TG 305-III: Dietary Exposure Bioaccumulation Fish Test) should be considered for substances for which it is not possible to maintain and measure aqueous concentrations reliably and/or potential bioaccumulation may be predominantly expected from uptake via feed (e.g. for substances with extremely low water solubility and high $K_{oc}$, which will usually dissipate from water to organic matter). For strongly hydrophobic substances (log $K_{ow}$ > 5 and a water solubility below ~ 0.01-0.1 mg/L), testing via aqueous exposure may become increasingly difficult. However, an aqueous exposure test is preferred for substances that have a high log $K_{ow}$ but still appreciable water solubility with respect to the sensitivity of available analytical techniques, and for which the maintenance of the aqueous concentration as well as the analysis of these concentrations do not pose any constraints. Also, if the expected fish concentration (body burden) *via* water exposure within 60 days is expected to be below the detection limit, the dietary test may provide an option to achieve body burdens that exceed the detection limits for the substance. As such, the principle idea of the dietary test is to obtain a depuration rate constant for substances for which this is impossible via the aqueous exposure route. However, an improved analytical technique or the use of a radiolabelled substance could be considered first to improve the detection limit in the aqueous test. The endpoint for a dietary study is a dietary biomagnification factor (dietary BMF), which is the concentration of a substance in predator (i.e. fish) relative to the concentration in the prey (i.e. food) at steady state. The dietary test also provides valuable toxicokinetics data including the dietary chemical absorption efficiency and the whole body elimination rate constant ($k_2$) and half-life.

More information on the fish dietary bioaccumulation test and the interpretation and use of the results from it  in the chemical safety assessment including PBT assessment can be found in the Chapter R.11 of the Guidance on IR&CSA.

Invertebrate tests

Invertebrate accumulation studies generally involve sediment-dwelling species (such as annelids (oligochaetes) and insects), although molluscs may also be tested. Like the fish dietary test, spiking of sediment circumvents exposure problems for poorly soluble substances. Several standardised guidelines exist or are in development.

OECD TG 315 Bioaccumulation in Sediment-dwelling Benthic Oligochaetes is the preferred method for generating bioaccumulation information in invertebrates. The recommended oligochaeta species are *Tubifex tubifex* (Tubificidae) and *Lumbriculus variegatus* (Lumbriculidae). The species *Branchiura sowerbyi* (Tubificidae) is also indicated but it should be noted that it has not been validated in ring tests at the time of writing. The biota-sediment accumulation factor (expressed in kg wet (or dry) sediment·$kg^{-1}$ wet (or dry) worm) is the main relevant outcome and can be reported as a steady state bioaccumulation factor $BAF_{SS}$ or as the kinetic bioata-sediment accumulation factor ($BSAF_K$). In both cases the sediment uptake rate constant $k_s$ (expressed in kg wet (or dry) sediment·$kg^{-1}$ of wet (or dry) worm $d^{-1}$), and elimination rate constant $k_e$ (expressed in $d^{-1}$) should be reported as well. The normalised biota-sediment accumulation factor (BSAF) is the lipid-normalised steady state factor determined by normalising the $BSAF_K$ and should be additionally reported for highly lipophilic substances.

OECD TG 315 recommends the use of artificial sediment. If natural sediments are used, the sediment characteristics should be specifically reported. For lipophilic substances, BSAFs often vary with the organic carbon (OC) content of the sediment. Typically a substance will have greater availability to the organism when the sediment OC content is low, compared to a higher OC content. It should be considered to test at least two natural sediments with different organic matter content, the characteristics of the organic matter, in particular the content of black carbon, should be reported. To ensure comparability of results between different sediments, a normalised BSAF is derived from a non-normalised BSAF by converting the results to a standard OC content of 2%. This value is chosen based on the standard artificial sediment used in OECD sediment toxicity tests. This allows tests on the same substance and tests on different substances to be comparable. The load rate should be as low as possible and well below the expected toxicity, however it should be sufficient to ensure that the concentrations in the sediment and in the organisms are above the detection limit throughout the test. The relevance of bioavailability of the substance for the test organism should also be considered and, if relevant and possible, bioaccumulation could be expressed as a BCF between organism and dissolved pore water concentrations.

ASTM E1022-94 describes a method for measuring bioconcentration in saltwater bivalve molluscs using the flow-through technique (ASTM, 2003). It is similar to the OECD 305 guideline, with modifications for molluscs (such as size, handling and feeding regime). Consequently it has similar applicability. Results should be reported in terms of total soft tissue as well as edible portion, especially if ingestion of the test material by humans is a major concern. For tests on organic and organometallic chemicals, the percent lipids of the tissue should be reported. Recommended species are Blue Mussel (*Mytilus edulis*), Scallop (*Pecten* spp.) and Oyster (*Crassostrea gigas* or *C. virginica*). A similar test is described in OPPTS 850.1710 (US-EPA, 1996b).

- ASTM E1688-00a (ASTM, 2000) describes several bioaccumulation tests with spiked sediment using a variety of organisms (some of these are also covered by US-EPA guidelines), including:
    - freshwater amphipods (Diporeia sp.), midge larvae (Chironomus tentans) and mayflies (Hexagenia sp.).

- Many of these are based on techniques used in successful studies and expert opinion rather than a specific standard method.

The small size of many of these organisms sometimes means that large numbers of individuals are required for chemical analyses. Further useful information on sediment testing can be found in US-EPA (2000a).

In addition, non-standard tests may be encountered in the scientific literature, involving many species. Some information on uptake may also be available from sediment organism toxicity tests if tissue analysis is performed. However, a test specifically designed to measure uptake is preferable.

### *In vitro* data on aquatic bioaccumulation

Procedures used to estimate intrinsic hepatic clearance from *in vitro* assay data were originally developed by the pharmaceutical industry to support preclinical screening of drug candidates (Rodrigues, 1997). These procedures have been used for several decades (Rane *et al*., 1977), and significant progress has been made in refining the methods and applying them to a broad range of substrates (Riley *et al.*, 2005; Hallifax *et al.*, 2010). Most of this work has been performed using mammalian (rat, mouse, human) tissue preparations (liver microsomes, primary hepatocytes, and liver slices). In the last decade, researchers interested in predicting *in vivo* biotransformation from *in vitro* data have adapted these methods for use with fish (Nichols *et al.*, 2006).

Fish *in vitro* methods have the potential to provide important data for bioaccumulation assessments, and although many require sacrifice of live animals, may contribute to a reduction in (or refinement of) animal testing. Approaches for using *in vitro* data to determine metabolic capacity have been described and studied in several test systems. Table R.7.10—1 provides a summary of standardised methods for use of fish liver S9 fractions and primary cryopreserved hepatocytes (and applicable extrapolation models), as well as recent publications that evaluated these methods and used them to predict biotransformation impacts on bioaccumulation. As is evident in this table, the fish liver S9 and primary hepatocyte (both fresh and cryopreserved) methods have been well-studied, characterized, and evaluated using a range of test substances.

Table R.7.10—2 provides a summary of other *in vitro* test systems used to study chemical biotransformation in fish. Included are specifics on the test substances evaluated and species. The intent of this table is not to provide a comprehensive list of such studies, but rather to illustrate the range of different test systems. In most instances, the data obtained from these studies were not used to predict biotransformation impacts on bioaccumulation, and in general these methods are not as well-developed as the liver S9 and primary hepatocyte methods. Nevertheless, it may be possible to use one or more of these systems to predict *in vivo* rates of metabolic clearance, provided that appropriate supporting information is developed (e.g., extrapolation factors and chemical binding algorithms).

The use of *in vitro* data for bioaccumulation assessment requires a strategy for *in vitro-in vivo* extrapolation of measured biotransformation rates and incorporation of estimated hepatic clearance into appropriate computational models (Nichols *et al.*, 2006). The *in vitro* assays are generally performed using a substrate depletion approach, wherein the goal is to measure loss of a test substance (parent compound) added to the biological matrix. This information is then converted to a whole-body biotransformation rate constant ($k_M$) using several extrapolation factors. When used as an input to a standard one-compartment model for chemical bioconcentration, the estimated $k_M$ value is combined with a first-order rate constant for chemical uptake across the gills ($k_u$) as well as the summed rate constant for all non-metabolic routes of elimination ($k_{nb}$). The model may then be used to simulate the chemical concentration in the fish and predict a steady-state BCF. This approach has been integrated into a published extrapolation model (Nichols *et al.*, 2013a) which was parameterized for small (10 g) rainbow trout (i.e., representative of those used for *in vivo* OECD TG 305 testing). A standardised approach for *in vitro* to *in vivo* extrapolation is critical to using and applying in vitro biotransformation rate data for bioaccumulation assessment.

Multi-compartment physiologically-based pharmacokinetic models for fish have also been developed and can be parameterized with *in vitro* biotransformation data for the liver and other tissues (e.g., gastrointestinal tract, gill). These more complex models may prove useful for higher tiered bioaccumulation assessments, although additional model input parameters are required (Nichols et al., 1990; Stadnicka *et al.*, 2012; Stadnicka-Michalak *et al.*, 2014). Such models may also be appropriate when predicting biotransformation impacts on chemicals taken up primarily from the diet (Nichols *et al.*, 2007).

Standard protocols are available for fish liver S9 fraction isolation and incubations (Johanning *et al.*, 2012a) and fish liver primary hepatocyte (cryopreserved) isolation and incubations (Fay *et al.*, 2015a). The development and standardisation of both methodologies are the result of earlier multi-laboratory ring-trials (Fay *et al.*, 2014; Johanning et al., 2012b), and the two methods have been proposed as OECD Test Guidelines (OECD Project 3.13, OECD 2015). Both the liver S9 and primary cryopreserved hepatocyte methods are currently undergoing validation through a multi-laboratory OECD ring-trial (Embry *et al.*, 2015; Fay *et al.*, 2015b). The validation includes the use of a standard reference chemical (pyrene) for each run, as well as appropriate negative controls (e.g., heat-treated and no-cofactor samples).

A number of the studies shown in Table R.7.10—1 have collected *in vitro* metabolism data for fish and performed additional calculations to estimate the whole-body biotransformation rate constant $k_M$. This rate was then used as an input to predictive models for chemical bioconcentration. To date, this work has shown that incorporating *in vitro* metabolism data into established bioconcentration models substantially improves their performance; predicted levels of accumulation are much closer to measured values than predictions obtained assuming no metabolism (Han *et al.*, 2007, 2009; Cowan-Ellsberry *et al.*, 2008; Dyer *et al.*, 2008; Gomez *et al.*, 2010; Laue *et al.*, 2014; Fay *et al.*, 2014).

*In vitro* methods employing tissues other than liver, including gill and gastrointestinal tract are in the earlier stages of development, as are assays using cell lines derived from these tissues. *In vitro* data from these extrahepatic systems may be of particular importance when chemicals are metabolised in the gills or gut, or when dietary uptake is the primary route of exposure. Although these methods have not been used as broadly as the liver S9 and primary hepatocyte assays, they are promising approaches that could also address the role of metabolism in bioaccumulation assessment once they are further developed, standardised, and validated.

It should be noted that the presence/absence and activities of different metabolising enzymes varies among species, and quantitative correlations with fish have not yet been established. Moreover, the presence of measureable metabolism does not necessarily correspond to a decrease in risk. Although in general the products of biotransformation are eliminated more rapidly than the parent compound from which they derive, this is not always the case. Further, biotransformation may in some cases increase toxicity by creating reactive metabolites (a process called bioactivation). Technical challenges associated with *in vitro* measurement of biotransformation include the limited working lifetime of these preparations and difficulties associated with the use of very hydrophobic (high log Kow) test substances. Liver spheroids remain viable for long periods of time and may be particularly well suited for low clearance compounds (Baron *et al.*, 2012), although this remains to be determined. Alternatively, it may be possible to employ existing S9 and hepatocyte assays using a relay approach, or some type of hepatic co-culture system (Di *et al.*, 2012; Hutzler *et al.*, 2015). Lee *et al.* (2012, 2014) demonstrated the use of a sorbent-phase dosing approach for very hydrophobic compounds. Research is needed to compare results obtained using this and similar methods to rates measured using conventional solvent dosing procedures. Additional work is required to establish the utility and comparability of different in vitro systems, and clarify the role of chemical binding (*in vitro* and *in vivo*) as a determinant of hepatic clearance.

Although *in vitro* data on fish metabolism is not a standard REACH information requirement, results of such studies can support the bioaccumulation assessment and can be considered as part of a weight of evidence approach.

**Table R.7.10—1 Summary of methods and studies with fish primary hepatocytes and S9 fractions (standardised methods).**

| Reference | Test System/ Method | Species | Chemicals Evaluated | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Segner and Cravedi, 2001 | Fish primary hepatocytes | General discussion on teleost; focus on rainbow trout | | Metabolic activity in primary cultures of fish hepatocytes |
| Han *et al.*, 2007 | Fish primary hepatocytes (fresh) | Rainbow trout | Atrazine<br>Molinate<br>4,4-bis(dimethylamino)-benzophenone<br>4-nonylphenol<br>2,4-di-tert-butylphenol<br>Trifluralin<br>Benzo(a)pyrene | |
| Cowan-Ellsberry *et al.*, 2008 | Fish primary hepatocytes (fresh) | Common carp | Octaethylene glycol monohexadecyl ether<br>sodium 2-phenyl dodecane p-sulfonic acid | |

| Reference | Test System/ Method | Species | Chemicals Evaluated | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Cowan-Ellsberry *et al.*, 2008 | Fish liver fractions (S9) | Rainbow trout | Fluroxypyr methylheptyl ester<br>Haloxyfop methyl ester<br>Zoxamide<br>Chlorpyrifos | |
| Dyer *et al.*, 2008 | Fish liver micosomes and fractions (S9) | Rainbow trout<br>Common carp | Linear alkylbenzene sulfonate (C12-LAS)<br>Alcohol ethoxylate (C13EO8) | |
| Dyer *et al.*, 2008 | Fish primary hepatocytes (fresh) | Common carp | Linear alkylbenzene sulfonate (C12-LAS)<br>Alcohol ethoxylate (C13EO8) | |
| Han *et al.*, 2008 | Fish primary hepatocytes (fresh) | Rainbow trout | Molinate<br>4,4bis(dimethylamino)-benzophenone<br>4-nonylphenol<br>2,4-di-tert-butylphenol<br>Benzo(a)pyrene | |
| Han *et al.*, 2009 | Fish liver micosomes and fractions (S9) | Rainbow trout | Molinate<br>4,4bis(dimethylamino)-benzophenone<br>4-nonylphenol<br>2,4-di-tert-butylphenol<br>Benzo(a)pyrene | |
| Gomez *et al.*, 2010 | Fish liver and gill fractions (S9) | Rainbow trout<br>Channel catfish | Ibuprofen<br>Norethindrone<br>Propranolol | |
| Mingoia *et al.*, 2010 | Fish primary hepatocytes (cryopreserved) | Rainbow trout | Molinate<br>Michler's ketone<br>4-nonylphenol<br>2,4-ditert-butylphenol<br>Benzo(a)pyrene<br>Pyrene | |
| Johanning *et al.*, 2012 | Fish liver fractions (S9) | Rainbow trout | | Current Protocols publication of the detailed isolation and incubation methodologies |
| Fay *et al.*, 2014 | Fish primary hepatocytes (cryopreserved) | Rainbow trout | | Study investigated impact of sex and cryopreservation methodology on Phase I and Phase II activity; results demonstrated that juvenile hepatocytes from male and female trout can be used interchangeably. Cryopreservation method was optimized. |

| Reference | Test System/ Method | Species | Chemicals Evaluated | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nichols *et al.*, 2013a | IVIVE methodology | Rainbow trout | | Revision of initial IVIVE model to address physiological parameters for smaller-sized fish used for in vivo BCF studies |
| Nichols *et al.*, 2013b | Fish isolated perfused liver and fractions (S9) | Rainbow trout | 6 PAHs | |
| Fay *et al.*, 2014 | Fish primary hepatocytes (cryopreserved) | Rainbow trout | Benzo[a]pyrene<br>4-nonylphenol<br>Di-tert-butyl phenol<br>Fenthion<br>Methoxychlor<br>o-terphenyl | |
| Laue *et al.*, 2014 | Fish liver fractions (S9) | Rainbow trout | Pentachlorobenzene<br>Musk xylene<br>Isolongifolanone<br>Methyl cedryl ketone<br>Opalal<br>Peonile<br>Iso E Super<br>δ-damascone<br>cyclohexyl salicylate<br>Agrumex | |
| Fay *et al.*, 2015 | Fish primary hepatocytes (cryopreserved) | Rainbow trout | | Current Protocols publication of the detailed isolation and incubation methodologies |
| OECD Project 3.13 (Embry *et al.*, 2015; Fay *et al.*, 2015) | Fish liver fractions (S9) and primary hepatocytes (cryopreserved) | Rainbow trout | Pyrene<br>4-*n*-nonylphenol<br>Fenthion<br>Cyclohexyl salicylate<br>Deltamethrin<br>Methoxychlor | Multi-laboratory ring trial involving 5 laboratories to support development of two OECD test guidelines for fish *in vitro* metabolism |

**Table R.7.10—2 Summary of *in vitro* studies in various test systems**

| Reference | Test System(s) | Species | Chemicals Evaluated | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|

| Reference | Test System(s) | Species | Chemicals Evaluated | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Förlin and Andersson, 1981 | Isolated perfused fish liver | Rainbow trout | Paranitroanisole | Examined differences between Clophen A50-treated fish and untreated fish on paranitroanisole metabolism |
| Andersson et al., 1983 | Isolated perfused fish liver | Rainbow trout | 7-ethoxycoumarin | Examined differences between Clophen A50 or BNF-treated fish and untreated fish on 7-ethoxycoumarin metabolism |
| Kane and Thohan, 1996 | Fish liver slices | Rainbow trout | Description of methodology to prepare liver slides and examine biotransformation | |
| Wood and Pärt, 1997 | Fish gill epithelial cells | Rainbow trout | Description of primary culture method for gill epithelial cells | |
| Kleinow et al., 1998 | Isolated perfused fish intestine | Channel catfish | Benzo(a)pyrene | Examined metabolism in BNF-induced fish |
| Cravedi *et al.*, 1998 | Fish liver slices | Rainbow trout | Examined metabolism of 7-ethoxycoumarin (7-EC) and testosterone to evaluate ability to biotransform xenobiotics. | |
| Cravedi *et al.*, 1999 | Fish primary hepatocytes (fresh) | Rainbow trout | Pentachlorophenol<br>Aniline<br>Biphenyl | |
| Cravedi *et al.*, 2001 | Fish primary hepatocytes (fresh) | Rainbow trout | 2,4-dichloroaniline<br>Prochloraz<br>Nonylphenol diethoxylate | *In vivo* metabolism study done in parallel |
| Walker *et al.*, 2007 | Fish gill epithelial cells | Rainbow trout | Optimization of culture conditions (from Wood et al., 1997 method); examined Phase II enzymes in response to metal exposure | |
| Kawano *et al.*, 2011 | Fish intestinal epithelial cell line (RTgut-GC) | Rainbow trout | Description of cell line isolation methodology | |
| Baron *et al.*, 2012 | Fish liver spheroids | Rainbow trout | Initial paper describing the isolation method | |
| Schultz and Hayton, 1999 | Fish liver fractions (S10) | Bluegill sunfish<br>Rainbow trout<br>Channel catfish | Trifluralin | Initial study to investigate interspecies scaling |

| Reference | Test System(s) | Species | Chemicals Evaluated | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Barron *et al.,* 1999 | Fish gill and liver microsomes | Rainbow trout | 4-nitrophenol | Study assessed carboxylesterase activity in whole fish homogenates and different tissue preparations. |
| Kolanczyk *et al*., 1999 | Fish liver microsomes | Rainbow trout | 4-methoxyphenol | |
| James *et al.*, 2001 | Isolated perfused fish intestine | Channel catfish | 3-hydroxybenzo(a)pyrene | |
| James *et al.,* 2004 | Isolated perfused fish liver | Channel catfish | Benzo(a)pyrene-7,8-dihydrodiol | Used 3-MC induced fish to isolate liver; examined benzo(a)pyrene-7,8-dihydrodiol toxicity in the presence of polychlorobiphenylos |
| Doi *et al*., 2006 | Isolated perfused fish intestine | Channel catfish | 3,3′,4,4′-tetrachlorobiphenyl (CB 77) | Examined metabolism in BNF-induced fish |
| Dyer *et al.*, 2008 | Fish liver cell line (PLHC-1) | Desert topminnow | Linear alkylbenzene sulfonate (C12-LAS)<br>Alcohol ethoxylate (C13EO8) | |
| Stadnika-Michalak *et al.*, 2014 | Fish gill epithelial cell line (RTgill-W1) | Rainbow trout | Imidacloprid<br>Dimethoate<br>Carbendazim<br>Malathion<br>Cyproconazole<br>Propiconazole<br>Pentachlorophenol<br>Cypermethrin<br>1,2,3-Trichlorobenzene<br>Naphtalene<br>Hexachlorobenzene | |
| Stott *et al.*, 2015 | Fish primary gill epithelial cells | Rainbow trout | Propranolol<br>Metoprolol<br>Atenolol<br>Formoterol<br>Terbutaline<br>Ranitidine<br>Imipramine | Examined transport of pharmaceutical compounds across gill epithelium |

<u>Biomimetic techniques</u>

Biomimetic extraction systems try to mimic the way organisms extract chemicals from water. There are three main types:

- *semi-permeable membrane devices (SPMD)*, which are usually either a bag or tube made of a permeable membrane (e.g. low density polyethylene) containing an organic phase (e.g. hexane, natural lipids or the model lipid triolein) (Södergren, 1987; Huckins *et al*., 1990). SPMDs have been used to assess effluents (Södergren, 1987), contaminated waters (Petty *et al*., 1998) and sediments (Booij *et al*., 1998) as animal replacements for assessing potentially bioaccumulative chemicals.

- *solid phase micro extraction (SPME)*, consisting of a thin polymer coating on a fused silica fibre (Arthur and Pawliszyn, 1990). Equilibrium may be achieved in hours to days, due to the high surface area to volume ratio (Arthur and Pawliszyn, 1990; Vaes *et al,* 1996 & 1997).

- *artificial membranes*, prepared from phospholipids that form small unilamellar vesicles in water (Gobas *et al.*, 1988; Dulfer and Govers, 1995; Van Wezel *et al*. 1996; Vaes *et al.*, 1997; Vaes *et al.*, 1998a). These vesicles are thought to resemble the lipid bilayers of natural membranes, and they have mainly been used to study toxicity (e.g. Vaes *et al*., 1998b).

All three methods will extract only the freely dissolved (i.e. bioavailable) fraction of chemicals from water samples, in proportion to their partitioning coefficient, which is mainly related to the hydrophobicity of the substance and molecular size. In this way they simulate the potential for aquatic organisms to bioconcentrate organic chemicals by passive diffusion into storage lipids and cell membranes. Both SPMD and SPME are relatively easy to use. Due to the small size of the organic phase, SPME has a much shorter equilibration time than SPMD and relatively small sizes of water samples can be used without depleting the aqueous phase. SPMD is more suitable than SPME to assess the bioaccumulation potential in the field from prolonged exposure with fluctuating concentrations of contaminants.

Techniques like SPMD and SPME cannot account for metabolism by fish or invertebrates. It should also be noted that the partition coefficient measured with a particular device has to be translated to a BCF for organisms using an appropriate conversion factor. For example, a number of workers have established relationships between SPME partition coefficients, log $K_{ow}$ and invertebrate BCFs for a variety of compounds (Verbruggen, 1999; Verbruggen *et al.*, 2000; Leslie *et al*., 2002).

Biomimetic extractions are very useful for measuring the bioavailability of non-dissociating organic substances in the water phase, or to measure an average exposure over time in a specific system. However, when interpreting the results from such methods in the context of bioaccumulation, the following points need to be considered:

- The data produced are simple measures of substance bioavailability, and uptake rates will differ from uptake rates in organisms. Equations are needed to translate between the two. They therefore provide a maximum BCF value for most substances, linked to the potential passive diffusive uptake into an organism and distribution into the lipid.

- They do not simulate the ability of fish to actively transport chemicals, nor mimic other methods of uptake and storage (e.g. protein binding), which can be important for some substances. They also neglect mechanisms of elimination, such as metabolism and excretion.

- The time to equilibration with water samples can be very long for some types of device. For example, Booij *et al.* (1998) suggested that results from SPMDs exposed for less than 2 months should be treated with caution.

Bioconcentration can therefore be either overestimated (for readily metabolised and actively excreted chemicals) or underestimated (e.g. in the case of active uptake of a substance that is poorly metabolised or when bioaccumulation is not governed by lipophilicity). In addition, since biomimetic methods are only capable of reaching equilibrium with freely dissolved chemicals they cannot be used to address the potential uptake *via* the gut. They are therefore of limited usefulness in the assessment of bioaccumulation.

### R.7.10.3.2 Non-testing data aquatic bioaccumulation

Non-testing data can generally be provided by:

- Quantitative structure-activity relationships (QSARs);
- Expert systems; and
- Grouping approaches (including read-across, structure-activity relationships (SARs) and chemical categories).

These methods can be used for the assessment of bioaccumulation if they provide relevant and reliable data on the chemical of interest.

#### (Q)SAR models

(Q)SAR models for predicting fish BCFs have been extensively reviewed in the literature (e.g. Boethling and Mackay, 2000; Dearden, 2004; Pavan *et al*., 2006). ECHA's *Practical Guide 5: How to use and report (Q)SARs* provides guidance on how to use and report (Q)SAR predictions under REACH. The Practical Guide also includes a list of QSAR models suitable for predicting bioaccumulation in aquatic species (Table R.7.10—3):

**Table R.7.10—3 QSAR models suitable for predicting bioaccumulation in aquatic species**

| Software tool | Models/Modules | Free or Commercial |
|---|---|---|
| EPI Suite (US EPA) | BCF BAF | Free |
| T.E.S.T. (US EPA) | Bioaccumulation factor | Free |
| VEGA (IRFMN) | CAESAR, Meylan and KNN/Read-Across models | Free |
| CASE Ultra (MultiCASE) | EcoTox model bundle | Commercial |
| CATALOGIC (LMC) | Two BCF base-line models | Commercial |

The most important approaches for aquatic bioaccumulation (Q)SAR models are presented below.

Some examples are given to illustrate each model type and the techniques used to develop them. This overview *is not intended to be an exhaustive list of models*: other methods and models should be considered if relevant. Not all the models were developed with European regulatory purposes in mind, and so it is important to assess in each case whether the predicted endpoint corresponds with the regulatory endpoint of interest.

### BCF models based on log Kow

The most common and simplest QSAR models are based on correlations between BCF and chemical hydrophobicity (as modelled by log $K_{ow}$). The mechanistic basis for this relationship is the analogy of the partitioning process between lipid-rich tissues and water to that between *n*-octanol and water (whereby *n*-octanol acts as a lipid surrogate). In this model, uptake is considered to be a result of passive diffusion through gill membranes.

Several log BCF/log $K_{ow}$ relationships for non-polar, hydrophobic organic chemicals have been proposed and used in the regulatory applications. Some were derived for specific chemical classes, like chlorinated polycyclic hydrocarbons (Schüürmann *et al*., 1988) and anilines (Zok *et al*., 1991), but several include diverse sets of chemicals (e.g. Neely *et al*., 1974; Veith *et al*., 1979; Ellgenhausen *et al*., 1980; Könemann & van Leeuwen, 1980; Geyer *et al*., 1982; Mackay, 1982; Veith & Kosian, 1983; Geyer *et al*., 1984; Hawker & Connell, 1986; Connell & Hawker, 1988; Geyer *et al*, 1991; Bintein *et al*. 1993; Gobas, 1993; Lu *et al*., 1999; Escuder-Gilabert *et al*., 2001; Dimitrov *et al*., 2002a). For example, Veith *et al*. (1979) developed the following QSAR for a set of 55 diverse chemicals:

$\log BCF = 0.85 \times \log K_{ow} - 0.70$ $R^2 = 0.897$, log $K_{ow}$ range = 1-5.5

where $R^2$ is the correlation coefficient.

The differences between the various correlations are probably due to variations in test conditions used for the substances in the training sets (Nendza, 1988). The range of log $K_{ow}$ values of the chemicals under study may also be too broad.

Linear correlations give a good approximation of the BCF for non-ionic, slowly metabolised substances with log $K_{ow}$ values in the range of 1 to 6. However, the relationship breaks down with more hydrophobic substances, which have lower BCFs than would be predicted with such methods. Several possible reasons for this have been identified (e.g. Gobas *et al*., 1987; Nendza, 1988; Banerjee and Baughman, 1991), including:

- reduced bioavailability and difficulties in measuring exposure concentrations (due to the low aqueous solubility),
- failure to reach steady state because of slow membrane passage of large molecules, and
- growth dilution, metabolism, degradation, etc.

More complicated types of relationship have been developed to overcome this problem. Hansch (cited in Devillers and Lipnick, 1990) proposed a simple parabolic model; Kubinyi (1976, 1977 & 1979) and Kubinyi *et al*. (1978) subsequently proposed a bilinear model, successfully used in many drug design and environmental QSAR studies. Linear, parabolic and bilinear models were developed and compared by Bintein *et al*. (1983) on a dataset of 154 diverse chemicals with a log $K_{ow}$ range from 1.12 to 8.60, highlighting the better performance of the bilinear relationship:

$$\log BCF = (0.910 \times \log K_{ow}) - (1.975 \times \log (6.8E\text{-}7 \times K_{ow} + 1)) - 0.786$$

$R^2 = 0.865$ $s = 0.347$ $F = 463.51$

Where $R^2$ is the multiple correlation coefficient, $s$ is the standard error of the estimate and $F$ is the Fisher test value.

Connell and Hawker (1988) proposed a 4th order polynomial relationship generated in such a way that the influence of non-equilibrium conditions was eliminated. The curve, based on data on 43 substances, resembles a parabola with a maximum log BCF value at a log $K_{ow}$ of 6.7, and decreasing log BCF values for chemicals with higher log $K_{ow}$ values. This relationship was recalculated and recommended for use (as the "modified Connell equation") in the risk assessment of new and existing chemicals (EC, 2003):

$$\log BCF = -0.2 \log K_{ow}^2 + 2.74 \log K_{ow} - 4.72 \qquad R^2 = 0.78$$

Meylan *et al*. (1999) proposed a suite of log BCF/log $K_{ow}$ models based on a fragment approach from the analysis a large data set of 694 chemicals. Measured BCFs and other experimental details were collected in the Syracuse BCFWIN database (SRC Bioconcentration Factor Data Base) and used to support the BCFWIN software (Syracuse Research Corporation, Bioconcentration Factor Program BCFWIN). Chemicals with significant deviations from the line of best fit were analysed carefully dividing them into subsets of data on non-ionic, ionic, aromatic and azo compounds, tin and mercury compounds. Because of the deviation from rectilinearity, different models were developed for different log $K_{ow}$ ranges, and a set of 12 correction factors and rules were introduced to improve the accuracy of the BCF predictions. On average, the goodness of fit of the derived methodology is within one-half log unit for the compounds under study.

A single non-linear empirical model between log BCF and log $K_{ow}$ was derived by Dimitrov *et al*. (2002a) for 443 polar and non-polar narcotic chemicals with log $K_{ow}$ range from –5 to 15 extracted from the Meylan *et al*. (1999) data set. Hydrophobicity was found to explain more than 70% of the variation of the bioconcentration potential. A linear relationship was identified in the range for log $K_{ow}$ 1 to 6. The compounds were widely dispersed around and beyond the maximum of the log BCF/log $K_{ow}$ curve. This QSAR gives a Gaussian-type correlation to account for the log BCF approximating to 0.5 at low and high log $K_{ow}$ values. The continuous aspect of the proposed model was considered more realistic than the broken line model of Meylan *et al*. (1999). The main originality of this model, compared to other non-linear QSARs, is its asymptotic trend for extremely hydrophilic and hydrophobic chemicals.

Overall, it can be concluded that:

- linear equations are applicable in the log $K_{ow}$ range of 1-6; and
- non-linear equations show better performance above a log $K_{ow}$ of 6.

A log $K_{ow}$ of 6 can therefore be used as the switch point between the two types, based on the fact they cross at a log $K_{ow}$ value just above 6.

### BCF models based on other experimentally derived descriptors

Although not as extensively used as log $K_{ow}$, correlations of BCF with aqueous solubility (S) have been developed (e.g. Chiou *et al*., 1977; Kenaga & Goring, 1980; Davies & Dobbs, 1984; Jørgensen *et al*., 1998). It should be noted that a strong (inverse) relationship exists between log $K_{ow}$ and aqueous solubility for liquids. However, aqueous solubility is not a good estimate of hydrophobicity for solids (since the melting point also has an influence), and instead the solubility of the supercooled liquid should be used (if this can be estimated, e.g. see Yalkowski *et al*., 1979).

As an example, Isnard and Lambert (1988) developed the following BCF model for 107 chemicals (both solids and liquids) where aqueous solubility is in mol/m$^3$:

$$\log BCF = -0.47 \times \log S + 2.02 \qquad R^2 = 0.76$$

It should be noted that both the slope and regression correlation coefficient are relatively low. This is a common problem for such QSARs that include both solids and liquids in their training set. Predictions may therefore be prone to significant error. Consequently, specific justification should be made for applying QSARs based on aqueous solubility.

### BCF models based on theoretical molecular descriptors

The mechanistic basis of the majority of BCF QSAR models based on either log $K_{ow}$ or aqueous solubility was determined prior to modelling by ensuring that the initial set of training structures and/or descriptors were selected to fit a pre-defined mechanism of action. However, the empirical input parameter data might not always be available for every substance (e.g. there may be technical difficulties in performing a test), or the substance could be outside the domain of predictive models. Consequently, other models have been proposed in the literature following statistical studies based on theoretical descriptors. Examples include methods based on:

- **molecular connectivity indices** (MCI) (Sabljic & Protic, 1982; Sabljic, 1987; Lu *et al*., 1999; Lu *et al*., 2000),
- solvatochromic or linear solvation energy relationship (LSER) descriptors (Kamlet *et al*., 1983; Park & Lee, 1983),
- **fragment constants**, based on chemical fragmentation according to rules developed by Leo (1975) (Tao *et al*., 2000 & 2001; Hu *et al*., 2005),
- quantum chemical descriptors (Wei *et al*., 2001), and
- **diverse theoretical molecular descriptors** selected by genetic algorithm (Gramatica and Papa, 2003 & 2005).

Theoretical descriptors do not suffer from variability, but are difficult to determine by the non-expert. In addition, such models are perceived by the developers to be capable of providing predictions for a wider set of chemicals than is normally the case. However, whilst the domain of these types of model is occasionally well described, most require a certain degree of competence to determine whether the training set of the model is relevant for the chemical of interest. Since the mechanistic basis of these models is determined post-modelling, by interpretation of the final set of training structures and/or descriptors, they are often criticised for their lack of mechanistic interpretability. The use of this type of model should therefore be thoroughly described and justified if a registrant chooses to predict a BCF this way.

### QSAR model for identifying "B-profile"

A base-line modelling concept was proposed by Dimitrov *et al*. (2005a), specifically for PBT assessment. It is based on the assumption of a maximum bioconcentration factor ($BCF_{max}$) (Dimitrov *et al*., 2003) with a set of mitigating factors used to reduce this maximum, such as molecular size, maximum diameter (Dimitrov *et al*., 2002b), ionisation and potential metabolism by fish (as extrapolated from rodent metabolic pathways). Substances in the training set were divided into groups based on log $K_{ow}$ intervals of 0.5, and the five highest BCFs in each group were used to fit a curve of maximum uptake (via passive diffusion). The model therefore predicts a maximum BCF ($BCF_{max}$) for a substance, which may be higher than BCFs estimated using other techniques, especially for small non-ionised poorly metabolised substances.

For the training set used, the most important mitigating factor to obtain a predicted BCF closest to the actual measured BCF was metabolism. The derived model was demonstrated to perform very well in terms of sensitivity and specificity. In addition, the measured BCF data used for the training set are provided together with a general description of the applicability domain of the model.

### Food web bioaccumulation models

While many QSARs have been proposed to model the BCF, fewer models are available for the bioaccumulation factor (BAF) (e.g. Barber *et al*., 1991; Thomann *et al*., 1992; Gobas, 1993; Campfens & Mackay, 1997; Morrison *et al*., 1997).

Food chain or food web models can be used to predict bioaccumulation in aquatic (and terrestrial) organisms (Hendriks & Heikens, 2001; Traas *et al*., 2004) as well as humans (e.g. Kelly *et al*., 2004). These models integrate uptake from water, air and dietary sources such as detritus (water or sediment), plants or animals. Concentrations in organisms in a food chain can be modelled by linking a set of equations for each trophic level to describe uptake from water and consecutive food sources.

If species have several dietary sources, a more complex food web exists where fluxes between different species can occur simultaneously. Such a model is mathematically very similar to multimedia models to describe environmental fate. The great advantage of these models is that food webs of any dimension can be described, with as many food sources as needed, and concentrations in all species can be calculated simultaneously (Sharpe & Mackay, 2000).

In general, food web models successfully predict steady-state concentrations of persistent halogenated organic pollutants which are slowly metabolised (Arnot & Gobas, 2004; Traas *et al*., 2004). However, these mass-balance models are often computationally intensive and typically require site-specific information, so are not readily applicable to screen large numbers of chemicals.

A different, simpler approach can be taken by estimating the BAF of species at different trophic levels that account for both water and food uptake with empirical regressions (Voutsas *et al*., 2002) or a semi-empirical BAF model (Arnot and Gobas, 2003). These are calibrated on measured field BAF data and calculate a maximum BAF for organic chemicals in selected generic trophic levels (algae, invertebrates and fish). The Arnot and Gobas (2003) food web bioaccumulation model is a simple, single mass-balance equation that has been used extensively by Environment Canada for categorising organic substances on the Canadian Domestic Substances List. The model requires few input parameters (i.e. only $K_{ow}$ and metabolic transformation rate, if available – the default is zero), and derives the BAF as the ratio of the chemical concentration in an upper trophic level organism and the total chemical concentration in unfiltered water (it also estimates an overall biomagnification factor for the food web). It accounts for the rates of chemical uptake and elimination (a number of simple relationships have been developed to estimate the rate constants for organic chemicals in fish from Gobas, 1993), and specifically includes bioavailability considerations.

The main discrepancies between model predictions and measured BAF values are often due to biotransformation of a chemical by the organism and to an overestimation of bioavailable concentrations in the water column and sediment. Other important sources of discrepancies relate to differences in site-specific food chain parameters versus generic assumptions (e.g. growth rates, lipid contents, food chain structure, spatial and temporal variation in exposure concentrations, sediment-water disequilibrium, etc.).

### Read-across and categories

See also Sections R.6.1 and R.6.2.

If a substance belongs to a class of chemicals that are known to accumulate in living organisms, it may have a potential to bioaccumulate. If a valid BCF for a structurally closely related substance is available, read-across can be applied. When applying read-across two important aspects have to be considered, i.e. the lipophilicity and the centre of metabolic action for both substances.

The BCF value of a substance is generally positively correlated with its hydrophobicity. Therefore, if the substance to be evaluated has a higher log $K_{ow}$ than an analogue substance for which a BCF is available, the BCF value has to be corrected. The use of the same factor of difference as for $K_{ow}$ will be a reasonable worst-case estimate, because generally the relationship between BCF and $K_{ow}$ is slightly less than unity. For example, if the substance to be evaluated has one methyl group more than the compound for which a BCF value is available, the log $K_{ow}$ will be 0.5 higher and the estimated BCF from read-across is derived from the known BCF multiplied by a factor of $10^{0.5}$. In principle, this correction should give reasonable estimates as long as the difference in log $K_{ow}$ is limited. However, the addition of one ethyl group already leads to a difference in log $K_{ow}$ of more than one log unit or a factor of 10 on the BCF value. If the substance to be evaluated has a *lower* log $K_{ow}$ than the substance for which a BCF value is available, care must be taken not to adjust the value too far downwards.

If the substance has such a large molecular size (see Section R.7.10.3.4) that the uptake of the substance by an organism might be hindered, a different approach should be followed. The addition of an extra substituent that leads to an increase of the log $K_{ow}$ value does not necessarily lead to a higher BCF value in this case. On the contrary, such an addition may cause the substance to be less easily taken up by the organism, which may result in a lower instead of a higher BCF value. In such cases the ideal compound for read-across is a structurally similar compound with a slightly smaller molecular size.

Another important aspect is the capability of fish to metabolise substances to more polar compounds, leading to a lower BCF value (in some circumstances metabolism could lead to the formation of more bioaccumulative substances). Small changes to molecular structure can be significant. For example, metabolism may be inhibited if a substituent is placed on the centre of metabolic action. If read-across is applied, it must be recognised that the presence of such a substituent on the substance to be evaluated may lead to a strongly reduced metabolism in comparison with the substance for which the BCF is known. As a consequence, the BCF value may be underestimated. If there are indications of metabolism for the analogue substance for which a BCF value is available, it must be examined if the same potential for metabolism is present in the substance and the species to be evaluated.

An indication of metabolism can be obtained by comparing measured BCF values with predicted values from QSARs based on log $K_{ow}$. These QSARs are based on neutral organic compounds that are not metabolised strongly. If it appears that the BCF of a substance lies significantly below the estimate from the QSAR (e.g. more than one log unit), this is a strong indication for metabolism of the compound. Further indications of metabolism may be provided by *in vitro* methods (see Section R.7.10.3.1) and inferences from mammals (see Section R.7.10.3.4).

### R.7.10.3.3 Field data on aquatic bioaccumulation

Although interpretation is often difficult, the results of field measurements can be used to support the assessment of risks due to secondary poisoning (Ma, 1994), and the PBT assessment. The following study types can provide information on bioaccumulation properties of substances:

- **Monitoring data**: Detection of a substance in the tissue of an organism provides a clear indication that it has been taken up by that organism, but does not by itself indicate that significant bioconcentration or bioaccumulation has occurred. For that, the sources and contemporary exposure levels (for example through water as well as food) must be known or reasonably estimated.

- **Field measurements of specific food chains/webs**: Measurement of concentrations in organisms at various trophic levels in defined food chains or food webs can be used to evaluate biomagnification.

- **Outdoor mesocosms**: Outdoor meso- or microcosm studies can be performed with artificial tanks or ponds or by enclosing parts of existing ecosystems (guidance is provided in OECD, 2006). Although the focus of such studies is usually on environmental effects, they can provide information on bioaccumulation in the system provided adequate measurements of concentration are made.

- ***In situ* bioaccumulation tests using caged organisms**: Sibley *et al.* (1999) constructed a simple, inexpensive bioassay chamber for testing sediment toxicity and bioaccumulation under field conditions using the midge *Chironomus tentans* and the oligochaete *Lumbriculus variegatus*. They concluded that the *in situ* bioassay could be used successfully to assess bioaccumulation in contaminated sediments. These studies can bypass problems caused by sediment manipulation during collection for laboratory tests (disruption of the physical integrity of a sediment can change the bioavailability of contaminants). Organisms in *in situ* tests are exposed to contaminants via water and/or food. The tests cannot make a distinction between these routes. Also, environmental factors potentially modifying the bioaccumulation process are not controlled. These factors include (but are not limited to) lack of knowledge or control of exposure concentrations and bioavailability aspects. Temperature or water oxygen content may also impact the physiological status of the organism, and consequently influence the uptake rate.

Field studies can be used to derive bioaccumulation factors (BAFs) and biota–sediment accumulation factors (BSAFs), and have been used to develop water quality standards (e.g. US-EPA, 2000b). B(S)AFs are simple ratios - neither definition includes any statement about ecosystem conditions, intake routes and relationships between the concentrations of substances in the organism and exposure media (see Ankley *et al.,* 1992; Thomann *et al.,* 1992). Field B(S)AF values are affected by ecosystem variables like the natural temporal and spatial variability in exposure, sediment-water column chemical relationships, changing temperatures, simultaneous exposure to mixtures of chemicals and nutrients, and variable exposures due to past and current loadings. In general, data obtained under (pseudo-)steady-state conditions are strongly preferred.

It should also be noted that substantial variation can be found both within and between studies reporting field-derived BAFs for zooplankton (Borgå *et al*., 2005), and this variability should not be overlooked when relating BAFs to $K_{ow}$ or other descriptors. The authors attribute the variability to difficulties with measurements of the substance in the water phase, additional dietary uptake and the possibility that substances partition into other organic phases than lipids.

The quantity and quality of field data may be limited and their interpretation difficult. This is especially true for trophic magnification factors, which describe the accumulation throughout the whole food chain. The validity of the TMF is strongly dependent on the spatial and time scales over which the samples are retrieved. This is discussed further in Section R.11.4.1.2 in Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*.

### R.7.10.3.4 Other indications of bioaccumulation potential

The following factors will be relevant for many substances as part of a *Weight-of-Evidence* approach, especially in the absence of a fully valid fish BCF test result.

#### n-Octanol/water partition coefficient

As a screening approach, the potential for bioaccumulation can be estimated from the value of the n-octanol/water partition coefficient ($K_{ow}$) (see Section R.7.1 in Chapter R.7a of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*). It is accepted that log $K_{ow}$ values greater than or equal to 3 indicate that the substance may bioaccumulate to a significant degree. For certain types of chemicals (e.g. surface-active agents and those which ionise in water), the log $K_{ow}$ might not be suitable for calculation of a BCF value (see Section R.7.10.7). There are, however, a number of factors that are not taken into consideration when the BCF is estimated only on the basis of log $K_{ow}$, namely:

- active transport phenomena;
- metabolism in organisms and the accumulation potential of any metabolites;
- affinity due to specific interactions with tissue components;
- special structural properties (e.g. amphiphilic substances or dissociating substances that may lead to multiple equilibrium processes); and
- uptake and depuration kinetics (leading for instance to a remaining concentration plateau in the organism after depuration).

In addition, n-octanol only simulates the lipid fraction and therefore does not simulate other storage sites (e.g. protein).

It should be noted that although log $K_{ow}$ values above about eight can be calculated, they can not usually be measured reliably (see Section R.7.1 in Chapter R.7a of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*). Such values should therefore be considered in qualitative terms only. It has also been assessed whether an upper log $K_{ow}$ limit value should be introduced based on the lack of experimental log $K_{ow}$ and BCF values above such a value. Based on current knowledge, for PBT assessments, a calculated log $K_{ow}$ of 10 or above is taken as an indicator of reduced bioconcentration. The use of this and other such indicators (such as high molecular mass and large molecular size) is discussed further in Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*.

### Adsorption

Adsorption onto biological surfaces, such as gills or skin, may also lead to bioaccumulation and an uptake via the food chain. Hence, high adsorptive properties may indicate a potential for both bioaccumulation and biomagnification. For certain chemicals, for which the octanol/water partition coefficient cannot be measured properly, a high adsorptive capacity (of which log $K_p$ >3 may be an indication) can be additional evidence of bioaccumulation potential.

### Hydrolysis

The effect of hydrolysis may be a significant factor for substances discharged mainly to the aquatic environment: the concentration of a substance in water is reduced by hydrolysis so the extent of bioconcentration in aquatic organisms would also be reduced. Where the half-life, at environmentally relevant pH values (4-9) and temperature, is less than 12 hours, it can be assumed that the rate of hydrolysis is greater than that for uptake by the exposed organisms. Hence, the likelihood of bioaccumulation is greatly reduced. In these cases, it may sometimes be appropriate to perform a BCF test on the hydrolysis products, if identified, instead of the parent substance. However, it should be noted that, in many cases hydrolysis products are more hydrophilic and as a consequence will have a lower potential for bioaccumulation.

### Degradation

Both biotic and abiotic degradation may lead to relatively low concentrations of a substance in the aquatic environment and thus to low concentrations in aquatic organisms. In addition, readily biodegradable substances are likely to be rapidly metabolised in organisms. However, the uptake rate may still be greater than the rate of the degradation processes, leading to high BCF values even for readily biodegradable substances. Therefore ready biodegradability does not preclude a bioaccumulation potential. The ultimate concentration in biota (and hence bioaccumulation factors) will depend also on environmental releases and dissipation, and also on the uptake and metabolism and depuration rate of the organism. Readily biodegradable chemicals will generally have a higher probability of being metabolised in exposed organisms to a significant extent than less biodegradable chemicals. Thus in general terms (depending on exposure and uptake), concentrations of most readily biodegradable substances will be low in aquatic organisms. Information on degradation kinetics will usually be missing for most substances.

If persistent metabolites are formed in substantial amounts the bioaccumulation potential of these substances should also be assessed. However, for most substances information will be scarce (see Section R.7.9 in Chapter R.7b of the of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*). Information on possible formation of degradation products may also be obtained by use of expert systems such as METABOL and CATABOL which can predict biodegradation pathways and metabolites (see Section R.7.9 in Chapter R.7b of the of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*). Information on the formation of metabolites may be obtained from experiments with mammals, although extrapolation of results should be treated with care, because the correlation between mammalian metabolism and environmental transformation is not straightforward (see below). Predictions of possible metabolites in mammalian species (primarily rodents) may be obtained by use of expert systems such as Multicase and DEREK (see Sections R.7.9.6 in Chapter R.7b and R.6.1 in Chapter R.6 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*), offering predictions of metabolic pathways and metabolites as well as their biological significance.

Interpretation of expert systems predicting formation of possible degradation products or metabolites like those referred to above require expert judgement. This applies for example in relation to identification of the likelihood and possible biological significance of the predicted transformation products, even though some of the systems do offer some information or guidance in this regard.

## Molecular size

Information on molecular size can be an indicator to strengthen the evidence for a limited bioaccumulation potential of a substance. See Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA* for further discussion.

## Mammalian toxicokinetic data

Mammalian toxicokinetic studies may provide useful information in a *Weight-of-Evidence* approach for bioaccumulation assessment. Factors to consider include:

- metabolic capacity/rate constants
- affinity for lipid or blood-rich tissues, which could include the volume of distribution, $V_D$ (a parameter that quantifies the distribution of a substance

throughout the body after oral dosing; it is defined as the volume in which a substance would need to be homogeneously distributed to produce an observed blood concentration. If there is significant distribution into lipids the $V_D$ will be increased (although this may also be caused by renal and liver failure).

- the time taken to reach a steady-state (plateau) concentration in tissues, and

uptake efficiency and clearance, and elimination rates/half-lives.

### Additional considerations

For air-breathing organisms, respiratory elimination occurs via lipid-air exchange, and such exchange declines as the octanol-air partition coefficient ($K_{oa}$) increases, with biomagnification predicted to occur in many mammals at a log $K_{oa}$ above 5 (Kelly *et al.*, 2004). Such biomagnification does not occur if the substance and its metabolites are rapidly eliminated in urine (i.e. have a log $K_{ow}$ of around 2 or less). Thus the bioaccumulation potential in air-breathing organisms is a function of both log $K_{ow}$ and log $K_{oa}$. In contrast, respiratory elimination in non-mammalian aquatic organisms occurs via gill ventilation to water, and this process is known to be inversely related to the log $K_{ow}$ (hence an increase in log $K_{ow}$ results in a decrease in the rate of elimination and hence increase in the accumulation potential)(Gobas *et al*. (2003)).

Based on these findings, Kelly *et al*. (2004) proposed that chemicals could be classified into four groups based on their potential to bioaccumulate in air-breathing organisms. These groups are summarised below.

- Polar volatiles (low log $K_{ow}$ and low log $K_{oa}$). These substances have low potential for bioaccumulation in air-breathing organisms or aquatic organisms.

- Non-polar volatiles (high log $K_{ow}$ and low log $K_{oa}$). These substances are predicted to have a high accumulation potential in aquatic organisms but a low accumulation potential in air-breathing mammals.

- Non-polar non-volatiles (high log $K_{ow}$ and high log $K_{oa}$). These substances have a high bioaccumulation potential in both air-breathing organisms and aquatic organisms.

- Polar non-volatiles (low log $K_{ow}$ and high log $K_{oa}$). This group of substances has a low bioaccumulation potential in aquatic organisms but a high bioaccumulation potential in air-breathing organisms (unless they are rapidly metabolised).

These findings may be a relevant consideration for accumulation in top predators for some chemicals whose bioaccumulation potential in aquatic systems appears to be limited.

## R.7.10.4 Evaluation of available information on aquatic bioaccumulation

### R.7.10.4.1 Laboratory data on aquatic bioaccumulation

### *In vivo* data on aquatic bioaccumulation

Fish bioconcentration test

In principle, studies that have been performed using standard test guidelines should provide fully valid data, provided that:

- the test substance properties lie within the recommended range stipulated by the test guideline,
- concentrations are quantified with an appropriate analytical technique, and
- the data are reported in sufficient detail to verify that the validity criteria are fulfilled.

The results should be presented in unambiguously specified units as well as tissue type (e.g. whole body, muscle, fillet, liver, fat). Whole body measurements are preferred and the correction for fat content and growth dilution is recommended (see section below on correction factors).

Detailed guidance on interpretation of fish bioaccumulation test data is provided in OECD (2001) and OECD (2012). Further guidance is also now available (Parkerton *et al*., 2007) following a workshop sponsored by the International Life Sciences Institute (ILSI)-Health & Environmental Sciences Institute (HESI). This addressed key evaluation criteria based on past literature reviews (e.g. Barron, 1990) and recently proposed evaluation criteria for bioaccumulation and bioconcentration data (Arnot & Gobas, 2003). Finally, the CEFIC-LRI project to develop a gold standard database has also produced a report on how to assess the quality of a BCF study (Versonnen *et al*., 2006). The following brief guidelines are based on these various documents. A checklist is also presented in Appendix R.7.10—3.

Test substance information

- The identity of the test substance must be specified, including the chemical name, CAS number and purity (the latter particularly for radiolabelled test substances).
- Key physico-chemical properties (e.g. water solubility and $K_{ow}$) need to be considered in assessing data quality. The water solubility can be used to evaluate whether the dissolved chemical concentration available to the organism may have been overestimated, leading to an underestimate of the BCF. The $K_{ow}$ value can provide an indication of whether sufficient exposure time has been provided for achieving steady-state conditions (in small fish for non-polar organic chemicals assuming worst case conditions, i.e. no metabolism) (see OECD (1996) for further details).

Test species information

- The test species must be identified, and ideally, test organisms should be of a specified gender, life stage and age/size (since these may account for differences in metabolic transformation potential or growth). A steady-state condition is reached faster in smaller organisms than in larger ones due to their higher respiratory surface-to-weight ratio. Fish size is therefore an important consideration for assessing whether the exposure duration is sufficient.

- Whole body lipid content is also a key organism parameter (although this is sometimes not reported), since this variable controls the degree of partitioning between the water and the organism for many organic chemicals (see *correction factors*, below).

Analytical measurements

- Studies that involve only nominal exposure concentrations are unreliable unless adequate evidence is available from other studies to suggest that concentrations would have been well maintained.

- A reliable study should use a parent substance-specific analytical method in both exposure medium and fish tissue. Studies that describe the use of accepted and sensitive substance-specific methods but fail to document (or give further reference to) analytical method validation (e.g. linearity, precision, accuracy, recoveries and blanks) should be assessed on a case-by-case – they might best be designated as *reliable with restrictions*. Studies that do not describe the analytical methods should be designated as not assignable, even if they are claimed to provide substance-specific measurements.

- Radiolabelled test substance can be useful to detect organ specific enrichment or in cases where there are analytical difficulties. However, total radioactivity measurements alone can lead to an overestimation of the parent substance concentration due to:

- small amounts of radiolabelled impurities that may be present in the test substance, and/or

- biodegradation and biotransformation processes in the exposure medium and fish tissue (i.e. the measurements may relate to parent substance plus metabolites (if the radiolabel is placed in a stable part of the molecule) and even carbon that has been incorporated in the fish tissue).
  A parent compound-specific chemical analytical technique or selective clean-up procedure should therefore preferably be used at the end of the exposure period. If the parent substance is stable in water and an enrichment of impurities is not likely from the preparation of the test solution, the BCF based on total radioactivity alone can generally be considered a conservative value. It is also important to evaluate the feeding regime as well, since high concentrations of (usually more polar) metabolites may build up in the gall bladder if the fish are not fed, which may lead to an overestimate of whole body levels (OECD, 2001). For example, Jimenez *et al*. (1987) measured a BCF of 608 for benzo[*a*]pyrene (based on total radioactivity) when fish were fed during the experiment, but a BCF of 3,208 when they were not. Decreased respiration and metabolism as well as a decreased release of bile from the gall bladder in the intestinal tract are mentioned as possible explanations.

- If the solubility of a substance is recorded as less than the analytical detection limit, the bioconcentration potential should be based on the log $K_{ow}$ if a reliable estimate of water solubility cannot be derived (OECD, 2001).

Exposure conditions

- Exposure concentrations should not exceed the aqueous solubility of the test substance. In cases where test exposures significantly exceed aqueous solubility (e.g. due to the use of dispersants), and the analytical method does not distinguish between dissolved and non-dissolved substance, the study data should generally be considered unreliable. An indication of the BCF might be given by assuming that the organisms were exposed at the water solubility limit.
- Aqueous exposure concentrations must be below concentrations that pose a toxicity concern. Typically, the highest exposure concentration should be less than 10% of the TLM (Median Threshold Limit) at 96h, and the lower concentration should be at least 10 times higher than its detection limit in water according to OECD TG 305 (OECD, 1996).
- Aqueous exposure concentrations should be kept relatively constant during the uptake phase. In the case of the OECD test guideline, the concentration of test substance in the exposure chambers must be maintained within ±20% of the mean measured value. In the case of the ASTM guideline, the highest measured concentration should be no greater than a factor of two from the lowest measured concentration in the exposure chamber.

Other test conditions

- While criteria vary, fish mortality less than 10-20% in treated and control groups is generally acceptable. In cases where >30% mortality is reported, the study should be considered not reliable. If no mortality information is provided, one option is to designate the study as 'reliable with restrictions' if the exposure concentration used is at least a factor of 10 below the known or predicted fish $LC_{50}$.
- Standard guidelines require >60% oxygen saturation to be maintained in test chambers throughout the study. It is suggested that as long as unacceptable mortality does not occur, studies that deviate in this requirement could also be considered *reliable with restrictions*.
- Total organic carbon (TOC) in dilution water is also an important water quality parameter for some substances (especially for highly hydrophobic substances), since excess organic colloids can complex the test substance and reduce the bioavailability of aqueous exposure concentrations (e.g. Muir *et al.*, 1994). OECD and ASTM guidelines indicate that TOC should be below 2 and 5 mg/l, respectively. It is, therefore, suggested that studies with such substances that report TOC above 5 mg/l be considered not reliable (since this can result in an underestimation of the BCF). If no information is available on TOC, a study may be considered reliable with restriction provided that it was conducted under flow-through conditions and that analysis of the substance was for the dissolved concentration. Further support for reliability may be provided where information on TOC can be derived from other sources (e.g. where the test water is from a natural source that is characterised elsewhere).

- The test endpoint should reflect steady-state conditions. The steady-state BCF may be obtained using the *plateau method* (see OECD, 1996; i.e. mean fish concentrations are not significantly different between three sequential sampling points during the uptake phase). Alternatively, the BCF is derived using kinetic models. If neither of these approaches is used, the study should be considered unreliable (or at best reliable with restrictions) unless a case can be made that the exposure duration was sufficiently long to provide or allow correction to reflect steady-state conditions.

<u>Correction factors</u>

The accumulation of hydrophobic substances is often strongly influenced by the lipid content of the organism. Fish lipid content varies according to species, season, location and age, and it can range from around 0.5 to 20% w/w or more in the wild (e.g. Hendriks & Pieters, 1993). Normalisation to lipid content is therefore one way to reduce variability[4] when comparing measured BCFs for different species, or converting BCF values for specific organs to whole body BCFs, or for higher tier modelling.

The first step is to calculate the BCF on a per cent lipid basis using the relative fat content in the fish or organ, and then to calculate the whole body BCF for a small fish assuming a fixed whole body lipid content. A default value of 5% is most commonly used as this represents the average lipid content of the small fish used in OECD 305 (Pedersen *et al.*, 1995; Tolls *et al.*, 2000). Generally, the highest valid wet weight BCF value expressed on this common lipid basis is used for the assessment. In cases where BCFs are specified on tissue types other than whole body (e.g. liver), the results cannot be used unless tissue-specific BCF values can be normalised to lipid content and converted to a whole body BCF based on pharmacokinetic considerations.

Lipid normalisation should be done where data are available, except for cases where lipid is not the main compartment of accumulation (e.g. inorganic substances, certain perfluorosulfonates, etc.). Both OECD 305 and ASTM E1022-94 require determination of the lipid content in the test fish used. If fish lipid content data are not provided in the test report, relevant information may be available separately (e.g. in the test guideline or other literature). If no information is available about the fish lipid content, the BCF has to be used directly based on available wet weight data, recognising the uncertainty this implies.

It should be noted that QSARs generally predict BCFs on a wet weight basis only. Further work would be needed to determine whether any lipid correction is necessary for predicted values.

*Growth dilution* refers to the decline in internal test substance concentration that can occur due to the growth of an organism (which may lead to an underestimation of the BCF). It is especially important for small (juvenile) fish that have the capacity for growth

---

[4] Some residual variation will remain due to the way the lipid is extracted (e.g. extraction using chloroform gives different amounts for aliquots from the same sample than if hexane were used as the solvent) and measured (e.g. colometric versus gravimetric procedures). Also, it makes a difference whether lipids are determined on a sub-sample of the test population, or for an aliquot from each fish. Hence, it can be important to know which lipid determination method was used.

during the duration of a test with substances that have a long depuration half-life (growth has only a negligible effect on the uptake rate constant) (e.g. Hendriks *et al*., 2001). Growth dilution can be taken into account by measuring growth rate during the elimination phase (e.g. by monitoring the weight of the test organisms over time). An exponential growth rate constant ($k_g$) can usually be derived from a plot of natural log(weight) against time. A growth-corrected elimination rate constant can then be calculated by subtracting the growth rate constant from the overall elimination rate constant ($k_2$). Hence:

$$\text{growth-corrected BCF} = k_1/(k_2 - k_g)$$

where $k_1$ is the uptake clearance [rate constant] from water (L/kg/day)

$k_2$ is the elimination rate constant ($day^{-1}$)

$k_g$ is the growth rate constant ($day^{-1}$)

Clearly, the influence of growth correction will be significant if $k_g$ is a similar order of magnitude to $k_2$.

<u>Fish dietary studies</u>

Dietary studies require careful evaluation and in particular the following points should be considered in assessing the data from such a study:

- Was a positive control used and were the data acceptable?
- Were the guts of the fish excised before analysis? The guts can sometimes contain undigested food and thus test chemical, which, for poorly assimilated or highly metabolised chemicals, will lead to erroneous (though precautionary) values being generated.
- Is there any evidence to suggest the food was not palatable due to use of extremely high chemical concentrations in the food? This may be assessed by examining the growth of the fish during the course of the study.

The dietary study yields a number of important data that improve the potential for assessing biomagnification potential, e.g. dietary assimilation efficiency and a depuration rate. They can be used to estimate a biomagnification factor as follows (OECD, 2012):

$$BMF = C_f/C_{diet} = I \times \alpha / k_2$$

where

BMF = biomagnification factor

$C_f$ = substance concentration in fish at steady state (mg/kg, wet weight)

$C_{diet}$ = concentration in food at steady state

$\alpha$ = substance assimilation efficiency (absorption of test substance across the gut)

I = food ingestion rate (g food/g fish/day)

The tentative BCF may also be derived from these data by making some assumptions with respect to the uptake rate:

$$BCF = k_1 / k_2 = (k_1 \times t_{½}) / 0.693$$

and

$$k_1 = (520 \pm 40) \cdot W^{-0.32 \pm 0.03}$$

where:

$k_1$ = uptake rate constant (L/kg/d)

$k_2$ = first-order elimination rate constant

$t_{½}$ = growth corrected half-life from dietary bioaccumulation test (days)

W = fish weight (grams wet weight) at the end of uptake/start of depuration

The equation relating $k_1$ to fish weight is the allometric relationship (n=29, $r^2$=0.85) taken from Sijm *et al*. (1995), based on small fish. The model of Sijm *et al.* (1995) is mentioned in the OECD 305 TG and may provide a reasonable first choice until more detailed guidance on derivation of tentative BCF from dietary BMF becomes available. The scaling factor of around -0.3 seems to apply for a much wider range of aquatic organisms, ranging from microscale phytoplankton to large fish in the kilogram range (Sijm *et al*., 1998). There are a number of assumptions introduced by this method including the degree to which the uptake rate is over- or under-predicted (especially with respect to water-borne exposure) and whether the lipid content of the food impacts the uptake rate. In addition, the method developers have proposed a bioavailability correction term, although this has not been adopted by the TC NES PBT WG (the inclusion of such a term would reduce the BCF obtained, especially for substances with a log $K_{ow}$ >6 (Parkerton *et al*., 2005)). In the majority of cases where aqueous data are also available, the dietary study has been shown to over-estimate the BCF (Anon, 2004b; Parkerton *et al*., 2005). In the context of an individual substance assessment the importance of this needs to be carefully evaluated and whether a BCF derived from a dietary study should be further refined will depend upon the purpose, the values obtained and the extent to which further testing would reduce the underlying uncertainties.

For a fuller discussion refer to Anon (2004b).

Concentrations in both fish and food should be expressed on a per cent lipid weight basis (this is particularly important since predators tend to have significantly higher lipid contents (and hence chemical concentrations) with increasing trophic level).

Invertebrate tests

Data obtained using standard methods are preferred. Similar principles apply as for the evaluation of fish bioaccumulation data (e.g. the test concentration should not cause significant effects; steady-state conditions should be used, the aqueous concentration in the exposure vessels should be maintained, and should be below the water solubility of the substance; if radioanalysis is used it should be supported by parent compound analysis so that the contribution of metabolites can be assessed, etc.). Additional factors to consider include:

- In general, no data will be available to allow the BCF to be lipid normalised and so the BCF will normally be expressed on a whole body wet weight basis.
- For tests with marine species, the solubility of the test substance may be significantly different in salt water than in pure water, especially if it is ionised (for neutral organic chemicals the difference is only a factor of about 1.3).
- Bivalves stop feeding in the presence of toxins (e.g. mussels may remain closed for up to three weeks before they resume feeding (Claudi & Mackie, 1993)). Therefore, the acute toxicity of the substance should be known, and the test report should indicate whether closure has occurred.
- Since most test species tend to feed on particulates (including micro-organisms) or whole sediment, the assessment of exposure concentrations may need careful consideration if the test system is not in equilibrium, especially for hydrophobic substances. Tissue concentrations may also be overestimated if the gut is not allowed to clear.
- Whole sediment tests with benthic organisms tend to provide a B(S)AF, which can be a misleading indicator of bioaccumulation potential since it reflects sorption behaviour as well. A better indicator would be the BCF based on the freely dissolved (bioavailable) sediment pore water concentration. Ideally, this should be done using direct analytical measurement (which may involve sampling devices such as SPME fibres). If no analytical data are available, the pore water concentration may be estimated using suitable partition coefficients, although it should be noted that this might introduce additional uncertainty to the result.
- Many studies have shown that black carbon can substantially affect the strength of particle sorption and hence the bioavailability of a substance (Cornelissen *et al*., 2005). Observed black carbon partition coefficients exceed organic carbon partition coefficients by up to two orders of magnitude. When interpreting data where the exposure system includes natural sediments it is therefore important to account for the possible influence of black carbon partitioning to avoid underestimation of the substance’s bioaccumulation potential from the freely dissolved phase.
- Data on apparent accumulation in small organisms, such as unicellular algae, *Daphnia* and micro-organisms, can be confounded by adsorption to cell or body surfaces leading to higher estimates of bioconcentration than is in fact the case (e.g. cationic substances may adsorb to negatively charged algal cells). Adsorption may also result in apparent deviation from first order kinetics and may be significant for small organisms because of their considerably larger surface/volume ratio compared with that for larger organisms.

The validity of bioaccumulation data obtained from sediment organism toxicity tests must be considered on a case-by-case basis, because the duration of the test might not be sufficient to achieve a steady-state (especially for hydrophobic substances). Also, any observed toxicity (e.g. mortality) may limit the usefulness of the results.

## Non-testing data on aquatic bioaccumulation

The evaluation of the appropriateness of QSAR results should be based on an overall evaluation of different QSAR methods and models. The assessment of the adequacy of a single QSAR requires two main steps, as described below. These concepts are also considered generically in Section R.6.1.

Evaluation of model validity

A number of studies have evaluated the validity of various BCF (Q)SAR models. Important parameters are the correlation coefficient ($R^2$ value), standard deviation (*SD*) and mean error (*ME*). *SD* and *ME* are better descriptors of method accuracy than the $R^2$ value.

Among the QSAR models based on the correlation between BCF and $K_{ow}$, Meylan *et al*. (1999) compared their proposed fragment-based approach with a linear (Veith & Kosian, 1983) and bilinear (Bintein *et al*., 1993) model, using a data set of 610 non-ionic compounds. The fragment method provided a considerably better fit to the data set of recommended BCF values than the other two methods, as shown by the higher $R^2$ value, but more importantly, a much lower *SD* and *ME*.

Some studies have also compared the performance of models based on molecular connectivity indices, $K_{ow}$ and fragments (e.g. Lu *et al*., 2000, Hu. *et al*., 2005). Gramatica and Papa (2003) compared their BCF model based on theoretical molecular descriptors selected by Genetic Algorithm with the molecular connectivity index approach and the BCFWIN model. The use of apparently more complex descriptors was demonstrated to be a valuable alternative to the traditional log $K_{ow}$ approach.

Assessment of the reliability of the individual model prediction

Evaluation of the reliability of a model prediction for a single chemical is a crucial step in the analysis of the adequacy of a QSAR result. Several methods are currently available but none of these provide a measure of overall reliability. It is important to avoid the pitfall of simply assuming that a model is appropriate for a substance just because the descriptor(s) fall with the applicability domain. Several aspects should be considered and the overall conclusion should be documented (e.g. Dimitrov *et al*., 2005b):

- Preliminary analysis of physico-chemical properties that may affect the quality of the measured endpoint significantly, such as molecular weight, water solubility, volatility, and ionic dissociation.
- Molecular structural domain (e.g. are each of the fragments and structural groups of the chemical well enough represented in the QSAR training set?).
- Mechanistic domain (e.g. does the chemical fit in the mechanistic domain of the model?).

- Metabolic domain (relating to information on likely metabolic pathways within the training set, identification of metabolites that might need to be analysed in addition to the parent compound).

Some of the steps for defining the model domain can be skipped depending on the availability and quality of the experimental data used to derive the model, its specificity and its ultimate application.

It should also be noted that BCF models tend to have large uncertainty ranges, and the potential range of a predicted value should be reported. Predictions for substances with log $K_{ow}$ >6 need careful consideration, especially if they deviate significantly from linearity (see Section R.7.10.5).

Table R.7.10—4 lists some commonly used models that can be used to help make decisions for testing or regulatory purposes if a chemical category-specific QSAR is not available. The registrant may also choose other models if they are believed to be more appropriate. The table indicates some of the important considerations that need to be taken into account when comparing predictions between the models.

ECHA's *Practical Guide 5: How to use and report (Q)SARs* provides guidance on how to use and report (Q)SAR predictions under REACH. The Practical Guide also includes a list of QSAR models suitable for predicting bioaccumulation in aquatic species Table R.7.10—3).

#### R.7.10.4.2 Field data on aquatic bioaccumulation

Bioaccumulation data obtained from field studies can differ from those measured in laboratory tests with fish or aquatic invertebrates. This is because the latter are designed to provide data under steady-state conditions, and generally involve water-only exposures, little or no growth of the test species, a consistent lipid content in the organism and its food, constant chemical concentrations, and constant temperature. These conditions are not achievable in field settings, where there are also additional influences such as differences in food diversity and availability, competition, migration, etc. Nevertheless, field biomonitoring data are the ultimate indicator of whether a substance's bioaccumulation potential is expressed in nature.

**Table R.7.10—4 Commonly used QSAR models for predicting fish BCFs**

| Model | Training set log $K_{ow}$ | Chemical domain | Comments | Reference |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Veith *et al.*, 1979 | 1 to 5.5 | Based on neutral, non-ionized chemicals (total of 55 chemicals). | Not applicable to ionic or partly ionized substances, and organometallics. | Veith *et al.*, 1979; EC, 2003 |
| Modified Connell | 6 to ~9.8 | Based mainly on non-metabolisable chlorinated hydrocarbons (total of 43 chemicals). | Claimed log $K_{ow}$ range should be taken with caution: the model accounts for non-linearity above log $K_{ow}$ 6, but is unreliable at log $K_{ow}$ >8.<br><br>Used historically for substances with a log $K_{ow}$ > 6, but other models are now more appropriate (see below). | EC, 2003 |
| EPIWIN© | 1 to ~8 | Wide range of classes included; 694 chemicals in data set used. | Carefully check any automatic assignment of chemical class. Assess if sub-structures of substance are adequately represented in the training set.<br><br>May be unreliable above log $K_{ow}$ of ~6. | Meylan *et al.*, 1999 |
| $BCF_{max}$ | 1 to ~8 | Wide range of classes covered; includes BCF data from dietary tests on hydrocarbons (log $K_{ow}$ <7 only). | Preferred model for highly hydrophobic (log $K_{ow}$ > 6) substances (due to conservatism). Can account for factors that can reduce BCF (e.g. metabolism, ionization and molecular size). | Dimitrov *et al.*, 2005a |

Caution should be used when interpreting bioaccumulation factors measured in studies with mesocosms or caged animals, because key environmental processes that occur in larger systems might not have been known or reported. For example, it should be confirmed whether exposure concentrations in a mesocosm were stable throughout the observation or if bioaccumulation may have taken place before the start of the observation period. Furthermore, sediment-water disequilibrium can be influenced by water column depth and primary production, which will influence chemical bioavailability and uptake in the organisms sampled. Similarly, caged animals may not have the same interactions in the environment as wild animals, leading to differential uptake of the test chemical in food or water. It is also imperative for caged animal studies that sufficient duration be allowed so that the organisms can approach a steady state (e.g. Burkhard *et a.l*, 2003 & 2005).

The precision or uncertainty of a field B(S)AF determination is defined largely by the total number of samples collected and analysed. For practical reasons, precision of the measurements may be balanced against the costs associated with sample collection and analysis, and in many cases, pooling of samples is required to limit costs associated with the analytical analyses. Gathering and reporting too little information is far worse than providing too much information. The adequacy of the data on the intended purpose depends on their quality, and data from a field study that will be used to quantify bioaccumulation should ideally report the following:

- sampling design (site selection, spatial resolution, frequency of determination, etc.) and details of the sampling methodology, sample handling, sample storage and delivery conditions and stability, steps taken to reduce contamination, and of all equipment being used;
- description of analytical methods (including use of field blanks, procedural and instrumental blanks in analysis, laboratory pre-treatment, standard reference materials, etc.), as well as evidence of quality control procedures;
- spatial and temporal gradients in substance concentrations – in particular, care should be taken that the samples used to derive bioaccumulation factors are collected at the same time from the same location, and sufficient details provided to relocate the sampled site. Samples grabbed randomly without consideration of the organism's home range will, in high likelihood, have poor predictive ability for substance residues in the organisms because the water (and/or sediment) data will not be representative of the organism's actual exposure (Burkhard, 2003);
- physical details of the site, including temperature, salinity, direction and velocity of water flow, water/sediment depth and physico-chemical properties (e.g. particulate organic carbon and dissolved organic carbon levels);
- details of the organisms being analysed, including species, sex, size, weight, lipid content and life history pattern (e.g. migration, diet, and food web structure (which may be determined using measurements on nitrogen or carbon isotopes (Kiriluk *et al*., 1995)) and composition). For resident species, the sample collection should be fairly straightforward. Migratory species may present special challenges in determining which food, sediment, or water sample should be used to calculate the BAF;
- information enabling an assessment of the magnitude of sorption coefficients to particulate matter, e.g. whether sorption is controlled by organic carbon or black carbon;
- details of data handling, statistical analysis and presentation; and
- any other detailed information that is important for understanding or interpreting the field data.

The Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP, 2001) has published recommendations with regard to assessing the quality of monitoring data, suggesting that only data from studies with documented quality assurance for all or some stages of the data gathering process should be used for determining spatial and temporal trends and other types of data interpretations. If no information is available on quality assurance procedures, but the results are consistent with other reports concerning the same sample types, the data can be used to show relative trends (assuming that they are internally consistent). If there is no evidence of quality assurance or if the data are incompatible with other studies, the results should not be used. In addition, expert judgement will usually be required on a case-by-case basis.

Burkhard (2003) performed a series of modelling simulations to evaluate the underlying factors and principles that drive the uncertainty in measured B(S)AFs for fish, and to determine which sampling designs minimize those uncertainties. Temporal variability of substance concentrations in the water column, and the metabolism rate and $K_{ow}$ for the substance appear to be dominant factors in the field-sampling design. The importance of temporal variability of concentrations of substances in water increases with increasing rate of metabolism. This is due to the fact that the rate of substance uptake from water (which is independent of the rate of substance metabolism) becomes more important in controlling the total substance residue in the fish with increasing rate of metabolism. Spatial variability of the substance concentrations, food web structure, and the sediment-water column concentration quotient had a lesser importance upon the overall design. The simulations also demonstrated that collection of composite water samples in comparison to grab water samples resulted in reductions in the uncertainties associated with measured BAFs for higher $K_{ow}$ substances, whereas for lower $K_{ow}$ substances the uncertainty in the BAF measurement increases.

Data on biomagnification (TMF, BMF or B-values) should be calculated based on lipid-normalised concentrations (unless lipid is not important in the partitioning process, e.g. for many inorganic compounds).

Chemical concentrations from migratory populations of fish, marine mammals and birds may be available. Because sampling of satellite- or radio-tagged populations is extremely rare, noting the known migration routes and when sampling occurred along those historical timelines can be important for identifying trends in contaminant exposure and cycles of bioaccumulation and release of contaminants from fat stores (Weisbrod *et al*., 2000 & 2001). If the migratory history of the sampled population is unknown, as is frequently the case for fish and invertebrates, stating what is known about the animals' expected duration at the site of collection can be insightful when comparing BAF values from multiple populations or sites.

#### R.7.10.4.3 Other indications of bioaccumulation potential

High-quality experimentally derived $K_{ow}$ values are preferred for organic substances. When no such data are available or there is reasonable doubt about the accuracy of the measured data (e.g. due to problems with analytical methods or surfactant properties), the log $K_{ow}$ value should be calculated using validated QSARs. If this is not possible (e.g. because the substance does not fall within the model domain), an estimate based on individual *n*-octanol and water solubilities may be possible. If multiple log $K_{ow}$ data are available for the same substance, the reasons for any differences should be assessed before selecting a value. Generally, the highest valid value should take precedence. Further details are provided in chapter R.7.1.

Further guidance on the evaluation of mammalian toxicokinetic data is provided in Section R.7.12.

### R.7.10.4.4 Exposure considerations for aquatic bioaccumulation

Column 2 of Annex IX to REACH states that a study is not necessary if direct and indirect exposure of the aquatic compartment is unlikely (implying a low probability of – rather than low extent of – exposure). Opportunities for exposure-based waiving will therefore be limited. Furthermore, it should be noted, that if the registrant cannot derive a definitive conclusion (i) ("The substance does not fulfil the PBT and vPvB criteria") or (ii) ("The substance fulfils the PBT or vPvB criteria") in the PBT/vPvB assessment using the relevant available information, the only possibility to refrain from testing (or generating other necessary information) is to treat the substance "*as if it is a PBT or vPvB*" (see Chapter R.11 for details). Since bioaccumulation is such a fundamental part of the assessment of the hazard and fate of a substance, it may be omitted from further consideration on exposure grounds only under exceptional circumstances. This might include, for example, cases where it can be reliably demonstrated (by measurement or other evidence) that there is no release to the environment at any stage in the life cycle. An example might be a site-limited chemical intermediate that is handled under rigorous containment, with incineration of any process waste. The product does not contain the substance as an impurity, and is not converted back to the substance in the environment. Potential losses only occur from the clean-down of the process equipment, and the frequency and efficiency of cleaning (and disposal of the waste) should be considered.

It should be noted that if bioaccumulation data are only needed to refine the risk assessment (i.e. they will not affect the classification or PBT assessment), other exposure factors should be considered before deciding on the need to collect further data from a vertebrate test. For example, further information on releases or environmental fate (such as persistence) may be useful.

### R.7.10.4.5 Remaining uncertainty for aquatic bioaccumulation

Both the BCF and BMF should ideally be based on measured data. In situations where multiple BCF data are available for the same substance, organism, life stage, test duration and condition, the possibility of conflicting results might arise (e.g. due to differing lipid contents, ratio of biomass/water volume, ratio of biomass/concentration of chemical, timing of sampling, feeding of test fish, etc.). In general, BCF data from the highest quality tests with appropriate documentation should be used in preference, and the highest valid value (following lipid normalisation, if appropriate) should be used as the basis for the assessment. When more reliable BCF values are available for the same species and life stage etc., the geometric mean (of the lipid normalised values, where appropriate) may be used as the representative BCF value for that species for P- and risk assessment. The GHS criteria guidance mention that this is applicable in relation to chronic aquatic hazard classification when four or more such data are available (OECD, 2001).

If measured BCF values are not available, the BCF can be predicted using QSAR relationships for many organic substances. However, consideration should be given to uncertainties in the input parameters. For example, due to experimental difficulties in determining both $K_{ow}$ and BCF values for substances with a log $K_{ow}$ above six, QSAR predictions for such substances will have a higher degree of uncertainty than less hydrophobic substances. Any uncertainty in the derived BCF may be taken into account in a sensitivity analysis.

The availability of measured BMF data on predatory organisms is very limited at present and so the default values given in Table R.7.10—5 should be used as a screening approach designed to identify substances for which it may be necessary to obtain more detailed information. These are based on data published by Rasmussen *et al*. (1990), Clark & Mackay (1991), Evans *et al*. (1991) and Fisk *et al*. (1998), with the assumption of a relationship between the magnitude of the BMF, the BCF and the log $K_{ow}$. It is recognised that the available data are only indicative, and that other more complex intrinsic properties of a substance may be important as well as the species under consideration (e.g. its biology in relation to uptake, metabolism, etc.).

**Table R.7.10—5 Default BMF values for organic substances**

| log $K_{ow}$ of substance | BCF (fish) | BMF |
|---|---|---|
| <4.5 | < 2,000 | 1 |
| 4.5 - <5 | 2,000-5,000 | 2 |
| 5 – 8 | > 5,000 | 10 |
| >8 – 9 | 2,000-5,000 | 3 |
| >9 | < 2,000 | 1 |

The recommended BCF triggers are less conservative than the log $K_{ow}$ triggers because they more realistically take the potential for metabolism in biota (i.e. fish) into account. Due to this increased relevance, the use of measured BCF values as a trigger would take precedence over a trigger based on log $K_{ow}$.

If no BCF or log $K_{ow}$ data are available, the potential for bioconcentration in the aquatic environment may be assessed by expert judgement (e.g. based on a comparison of the structure of the molecule with the structure of other substances for which bioconcentration data are available).

## R.7.10.5 Conclusions for aquatic bioaccumulation

In view of the importance of this endpoint in the assessment of a chemical, and the relatively small number of substances that have been properly tested, a cautious approach is needed. There is a hierarchy of preferred data sources to describe the potential of a substance to bioaccumulate in aquatic species, as follows:

- In general, preference is given to reliable measured fish BCF data on the substance itself. The fish BCF is widely used as a surrogate measure for bioaccumulation potential in a wide range of gill-breathing aquatic species (e.g. crustacea). It should be noted that:
  - Experimental BCF data on highly lipophilic substances (e.g. with log $K_{ow}$ above 6) will have a much higher level of uncertainty than BCF

values determined for less lipophilic substances. In the absence of data on other uptake routes, it is assumed that direct uptake from water accounts for the entire intake for substances with a log $K_{ow}$ below ~4.5 (EC, 2003). For substances with a log $K_{ow}$ ≥4.5, other uptake routes such as intake of contaminated food or sediment may become increasingly important.

- The BCF still only gives a partial picture of accumulation (especially for very hydrophobic substances), and additional data on uptake and depuration kinetics, metabolism, organ specific accumulation and the level of bound residues may also be useful. Such data will not be available for most substances (OECD, 2001).

• Where it is not possible to perfom an aquatic fish bioaccumulation study, preference is also given to results from a reliable fish dietary study. OECD TG 305 III: Dietary Exposure Bioaccumulation Fish Test provides a range of valuable information which can be considered for the bioaccumulation assessment. Paragraph 167 of the test guideline lists all the relevant measured and calculated data from the study which should be reported and considered for the bioaccumulation assessment, including the BMF values, substance assimilation efficiency and overall depuration rate constant.

• Next in order of preference comes reliable measured BCF/BAF data from aquatic invertebrates, which can be used as supplementary data if available. In the absence of a fish result, an invertebrate BCF may be used as a worst case surrogate. Other data that might also be useful at this 'tier', as part of a *Weight-of-Evidence* argument, include:

- field studies (these require careful evaluation and will not be available for the majority of substances), and

- mammalian and/or avian toxicokinetic considerations.

• The third tier of information concerns predicted BCF/BAF/BMF values from validated QSAR models. Models that use measured data as input terms may be preferable to those that require calculated theoretical descriptors. Analogue and category data are also relevant at this level (this may include toxicokinetic evidence as well as actual BCF values).

• The lowest tier concerns indications and rules based on *in vitro* methods and physico-chemical properties. Nevertheless, the log $K_{ow}$ is a useful screening tool for many substances, and it is generally assumed that non-ionised organic substances with a log $K_{ow}$ below 3 (4, GHS) are not significantly bioaccumulative. Similarly, evidence of significant metabolism or reduced uptake in *in vitro* tests may be used to argue that a 'worst case' fish BCF (whether predicted using a conservative model or based on data on an invertebrate species) or default BMF may be unrealistic. At the moment, techniques that permit the quantitative reduction of the BCF or BMF on the basis of such data are still under development. Any proposed reduction must therefore be supported by a detailed justification, and it is likely to be most useful when the BCF/BMF is close to a regulatory cut off criterion.

These ‘tiers’ of information can be assessed together as part of an overall *Weight of Evidence* to decide on the need for additional testing when a fully valid fish test is unavailable. In principal, the available information from testing and non-testing approaches, together with other indications such as physico-chemical properties, must be integrated to reach a conclusion that is fit for the regulatory purpose regarding the bioaccumulation of a substance. The following scheme presents the thought processes that must be considered for substances produced or imported at 100 t/y or above (building on the concepts discussed by de Wolf *et al*., 2006).

## Step 1 – Characterisation of the substance

Verification of the structure:

This information is essential for the potential use of non-testing techniques (e.g. (Q)SAR models). In the case of multi-constituent substances, it may be necessary to consider two or more structures, if a single representative structure is not considered sufficient (see Section R.7.10.7).

Physico-chemical properties of the substance:

Gather information on the physico-chemical properties relevant for assessment of bioaccumulation (see Section R.7.10.3), i.e. vapour pressure, water solubility and log $K_{ow}$ (and, if available, octanol solubility, molecular weight (including size and maximum diameter, if relevant), Henry’s law constant, adsorption ($K_p$) and pKa).

Information about degradation of the substance:

Gather information on degradation (including chemical reactivity, if available) and degradation products formed in environment (see Section R.7.10.3). This may include possible metabolites formed due to metabolism in organisms (e.g. based on available toxicokinetic data in fish or mammalian species, if available). Based on this information, conclude whether degradation products/metabolites should be included in the evaluation of the parent substance or not.

Preliminary analysis of bioaccumulation potential:

Based on the above considerations, make a preliminary analysis of the bioaccumulation potential of the substance (and degradation products/metabolites, if relevant):

- Examine information on log $K_{ow}$. Does this suggest a potential for bioaccumulation at environmentally relevant pH (i.e. $K_{ow}$ > 3)? If so, then:
  - If log $K_{ow}$ <6, estimate a preliminary BCF according to a linear model (e.g. Veith *et al.* (1979) and Meylan *et al.* (1999)).
  - If log Kow >6, the quantitative relationships between BCF and Kow are uncertain. A preliminary BCF of 25,000 (corresponding to a log Kow of 6) should be assumed in the absence of better information (see below).
  - Guidance on ionisable substances is given in Section R.7.10.7.
  - A series of molecular and physico-chemical properties can be used as indicators for a reduced uptake in relation to the PBT assessment (see

Chapter R11 for further guidance). If it is concluded that the B criterion will not be met, a preliminary BCF of 2,000 may be assumed as a worst case (e.g. for the Chemical Safety Assessment).

- Substance characterisation may highlight that the substance is 'difficult' (e.g. it may have a high adsorptive capacity (e.g. log Kp >3), or it might not be possible to measure or predict a Kow value); further guidance on some common problems is given in Section R.7.10.7.

- Identify relevant exposure routes: only via water or by water and oral exposure (e.g. for substances with log $K_{ow}$ >4.5).

**Step 2 – Identification of possible analogues**

Search for experimental bioaccumulation data on chemical analogues, as part of a group approach if relevant (see Section R.7.10.3.2). Justify why the chosen analogues are considered similar (as regards bioconcentration potential). Supplementary questions to be asked at this stage include:

- Does the substance belong to a group of substances that are known to have a potential to accumulate in living organisms (e.g. organotin compounds, highly chlorinated organic substances, etc.)?

- Is log $K_{ow}$ a relevant predictor for bioaccumulation (i.e. based on expected accumulation in lipid)? Experimental evidence or other indications of sorption mechanisms other than partitioning into lipids (e.g. metals) should be thoroughly evaluated. In case there are reasons to believe that the substance may bioaccumulate but not in fat, a BCF study should be performed since there are currently no non-testing methods available to estimate bioaccumulation potential quantitatively for such compounds.

**Step 3a – Evaluation of existing *in vivo* data**

Available *in vivo* data may include invertebrate (including algal) BCFs, fish BCFs, BMFs for fish from dietary studies (which can be converted to a BCF), BSAFs for invertebrates, BMFs for predators from field studies, and toxicokinetic data from mammals (and birds if available). Assess all available results (including guideline and non-guideline tests) for their reliability according to the criteria provided in Section R.7.10.4.1. If data from one or several standard tests are available continue with the evaluation of this type of data in step 4b (below).

Other indications of the substance's biomagnification potential in the field should also be considered. For example, results from field studies (including monitoring data) may be used to support the assessment of risks due to secondary poisoning and PBT assessment. Reliable field data indicating biomagnification may indicate that the BCF of the substance is approximately equal to or greater than the BCF estimated from the $K_{ow}$.

**Step 3b – Evaluation of non-testing data**

(Q)SARs based on $K_{ow}$ are generally recommended if $K_{ow}$ is a good predictor of bioconcentration. Use of (Q)SARs based on water solubility or molecular descriptors may also be considered, although these may be associated with higher uncertainty. The selection of a particular QSAR should always be justified. If several generally reliable QSAR predictions are available, the reason for the difference should be considered. Expert judgement should be used, following the approach outlined in Section R.6.1. In general, a cautious conclusion should be drawn, using the upper range of the predicted BCF values of the most relevant and reliable QSAR model(s).

If analogues with experimental BCF data are available, an indication of the predictability of the selected (Q)SAR(s) for the substance can be achieved by comparing the predicted and experimental results for the analogues. Good correlation for the analogues increases the confidence in the BCF prediction for the substance (the reverse is true when the correlation is not good). When read-across is done it is always necessary to explain and justify why the analogue is assumed to be relevant for the substance under assessment (including how closely related the analogue is in relation to the bioaccumulation endpoint).

See Section R.7.10.4 and the chapter for grouping of substances (Section R.6.2) for further guidance.

### Step 3c – Evaluation of *in vitro* data

If reliable *in vitro* data are available, then depending on the method they may be used to produce either an estimated BCF or a qualitative indication for a reduced BCF due to metabolism. It should be noted that no *in vitro* method has yet been validated for this approach (see Section R.7.10.4).

### Step 4a – *Weight-of-Evidence* assessment

An approach to systematically weigh different types of evidence is presented below. Since the methodology has not been validated it is important that it is used with expert judgement, to allow the possibility to reject unreasonable results.

- Summarise all reliable information. Examine whether there is any single piece of information that by itself merits a conclusion on BCF and/or further testing according to the sequential checklist in Table R.7.10—6.
- If a conclusion cannot be drawn (e.g. no valid experimental fish BCF data are available), the BCF estimated from the $K_{ow}$ is the starting point. The gathered information should be quantitatively evaluated to determine whether a lower BCF is likely, by assigning it into groups of *strong* and *weak* indicators according to Table R.7.10—7.
- Data from invertebrate sediment studies in particular must be used with caution. In general, a BCF will be a more direct measure of bioaccumulation potential than a BSAF (since the latter can be influenced by sorption characteristics). The use of steady-state BSAF data to indicate that accumulation in fish is lower than would be estimated from log $K_{ow}$ might be relevant if it can be shown that partitioning to black carbon can be ruled out (e.g. by measured partition coefficients).

The final step is to come to a conclusion based on Figure R.7.10—1. It is evident that precise rules for how much BCF values may be reduced relative to the cautiously predicted initial value when such a reduction is indicated cannot be set. Scientifically based justification should be provided case-by-case employing expert judgement. Difficulties in reaching a robust conclusion on the BCF relative to regulatory decision points of significance may indicate the need for further testing. However, it may not always be necessary to define a BCF very accurately (e.g. structural analogy may be useful in determining whether a cut off is likely to be exceeded for classification or PBT assessment, while a cautiously set specific BCF value might be set for risk assessment purposes). The BCF concluded should in any case be fit for the regulatory purpose and scientifically justified. The applicability of the BCF estimates is indicated in Table R.7.10—6 and Table R.7.10—7, and also Section R.7.10.5.1 to R.7.10.5.3.

**Table R.7.10—6 Checklist of special cases where a single piece of information is sufficient to reach conclusions**

| Type of evidence | Possible conclusion and required action |
|---|---|
| Results from one or more reliable OECD 305 tests exist. | A reliable fish BCF can be established. |
| Experimental evidence or other indications of strong interaction with biological materials other than lipids. | Further testing warranted. An OECD 305 test is justified. |
| BCF from a fish dietary bioconcentration study. | A reliable fish BCF can be established. |
| Reliable BCF data from invertebrate studies exist, where the freely dissolved fraction has been measured. | An invertebrate BCF can be used in its own right, as well as acting as a worst case value for fish. If a concern remains when using the result in risk assessment, a fish study may be needed. For classification and labelling and PBT-related purposes reliable BCF data from mussel, oyster or scallop may be sufficient. |

## Step 4b Weight of Evidence for multiple experimental BCF data

Studies that do not match evaluation criteria in Section R.7.10.4.1 should be considered unreliable and those data should not be used. If several reliable fish data exist, reasons for any differences should be sought (e.g. different species, sizes, etc. – see Section R.7.10.4.4). Data should be lipid-normalised and corrected for growth dilution where possible (and appropriate) to reduce inter-method variability. If differences still remain (e.g. high quality BCF values for different fish species are available), the highest reliable lipid-normalised BCF value should be selected. Organ-specific BCF data may be used on a case-by-case basis if adequate pharmacokinetic information is available (see Section R.7.10.4.1).

In general, the aim is to use data from experimental studies and other indicators to obtain a quantitative estimate of a fish BCF. However, reliable BCF data on molluscs (and potentially oligochaetes) may also be used directly. It should be noted that invertebrate BCFs are not equivalent to fish BCFs, since the physiological processes that govern bioconcentration in invertebrates differ substantially from those in fish. In particular, body compartmentalization is different and biotransformation systems are less developed. However, a high quality mollusc BCF may be used as a worst case estimate for a fish BCF in the absence of other data. BCF values determined for other invertebrates (e.g. algae) should not be used, since they are prone to high uncertainty (see Section R.7.10.4.1).

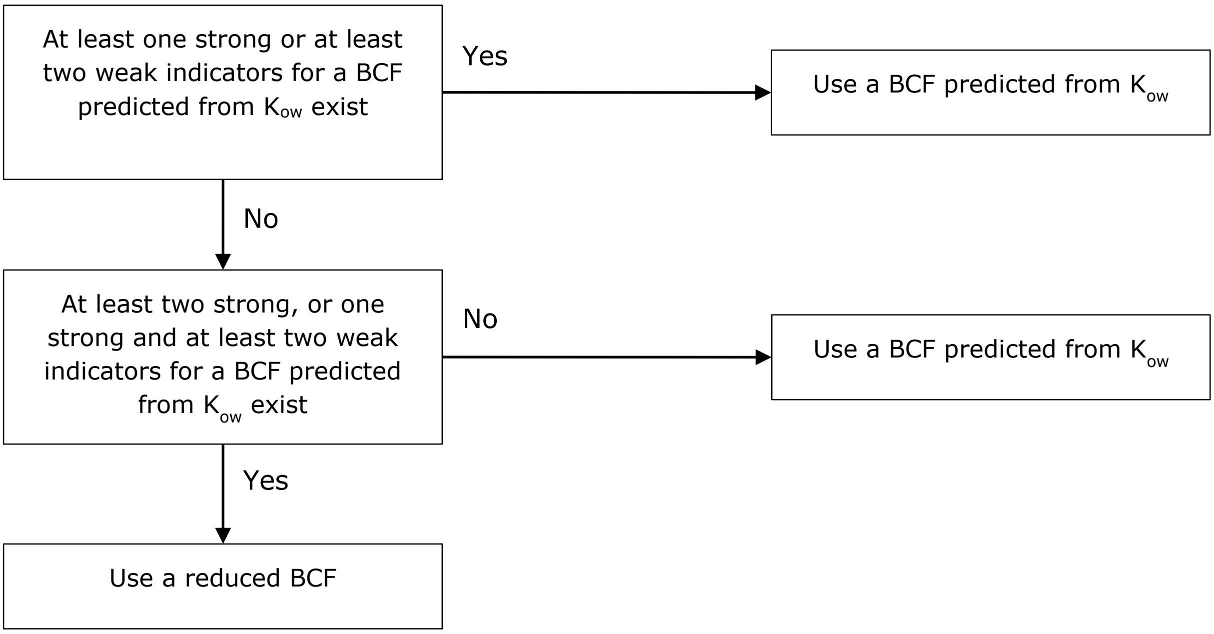
**Table R.7.10—7 Indicators to support or reduce a fish BCF predicted from the $K_{ow}$**

| Indicators to support a fish BCF predicted from $K_{ow}$ | | Indicators to support a lower fish BCF than predicted from $K_{ow}$ | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Strong** | **Weak** | **Strong** | **Weak** |
| - | Mollusc BCF of similar order of magnitude (i.e. the predicted fish BCF is likely to be conservative). | Lower mollusc BCF.<br>*Quantitative estimate* | Quantitative estimates or indications from *in vitro* studies showing metabolism.<br>*Semi-quantitative estimate* |
| Corroboration of BCF with analogue data (including category approach). | Substance belongs to a group of substances that are known to bioaccumulate in living organisms. | Lower BCF predicted from a category approach and/or QSAR estimates corroborated with analogues. This includes QSARs that take biotransformation and/or hindrance for uptake into account.<br>*Quantitative estimate* | - |
| Experimental studies indicating a steady-state BSAF ≥1 (expressed as $C_{lipid}/C_{oc}$). | - | Experimental studies indicating a steady-state BSAF ≤ 0.1 (expressed as $C_{lipid}/C_{oc}$) – see text.<br>*Semi-quantitative estimate* | Field studies indicating a steady-state BSAF ≤0.1 (expressed as $C_{lipid}/C_{oc}$) – see text.<br>*Semi-quantitative estimate* |
| | Evidence from mammalian studies (e.g. efficient uptake, etc.). | | - |
| - | BCF from biomimetic methods of similar order of magnitude or higher. | - | Low BCF based on biomimetic methods.<br>*Semi-quantitative estimate* |
| Reliable field data indicating biomagnification | BCF derived from field data of similar order of magnitude. | - | Low BCF derived from field data.<br>*Semi-quantitative estimate* |

*Quantitative estimate* = BCF may be used quantitatively in risk characterisation.

*Semi-quantitative estimate* = use a BCF corresponding to the nearest higher regulatory criterion in risk characterisation.

**Figure R.7.10—1 Weighting of strong and weak indicators for estimating a fish BCF**




The ITS presented in Section R.7.10.6. builds on these principles.

### R.7.10.5.1 Concluding on suitability for Classification and Labelling

All substances should be assessed for environmental hazard classification. Bioaccumulation potential is one aspect that needs to be considered in relation to long-term effects. For the majority of non-ionised organic substances, classification may be based initially on the log $K_{ow}$ (estimated if necessary) as a surrogate, if no reliable measured fish BCF is available. Predicted BCFs are not relevant for classification purposes because the criteria for long-term aquatic hazard employ a cut off relating to log Kow, when the preferred type of information, measured BCF on an aquatic organism is not available. In cases where the $K_{ow}$ is not a good indicator of accumulation potential (see Section R.7.10.7), an *in vivo* test would usually be needed if a case for limited bioaccumulation cannot be presented based on other evidence (e.g. metabolism, etc.). High quality BCFs determined for non-fish species (e.g. blue mussel, oyster and/or scallop) may be used directly for classification purposes if no fish BCF is available.

### R.7.10.5.2 Concluding on suitability for PBT/vPvB assessment

Guidance on the suitability for PBT/vPvB assessment is provided in Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*.

### R.7.10.5.3 Concluding on suitability for use in Chemical Safety Assessment

Fish BCF and BMF values are used to calculate concentrations in fish as part of the secondary poisoning assessment for wildlife, as well as for human dietary exposure. A BMF for birds and mammals may also be relevant for marine scenarios (in the absence of actual data, a fish BMF measured in a dietary test can be used as a surrogate provided it is higher than the default). An invertebrate BCF may also be used to model a food chain based on consumption of sediment worms or shellfish. An assessment of secondary poisoning or human exposure via the environment will not always be necessary for every substance; triggering conditions are provided in Chapter R.16.

In the first instance, a predicted BCF may be used for first tier risk assessment. If the PEC/PNEC ratio based on worst case BCF or default BMF values indicates potential risks at any trophic level, it should first be considered whether the PEC can be refined with other data (which may include the adoption of specific risk management measures) before pursuing further fish tests. Such data may include:

- release information,
- fate-related parameters such as determination of more reliable log $K_{ow}$ or degradation half-life (any uncertainty in the derived values should be taken into account in a sensitivity analysis).

In some circumstances, evidence from *in vitro* or mammalian tests may be used as part of a *Weight-of-Evidence* argument that metabolism in fish will with a high probability be substantial. This could remove the concern case-by-case, especially if a worst case PEC/PNEC ratio is only just above one. Such evaluations will require expert judgement.

Other issues may be relevant to consider and use in a refinement of secondary poisoning assessment is required. Experience relating to risk assessment of certain data rich chemicals indicate that such issues could relate to bioavailability of the substance in prey consumed by predators, feeding preference of predator in relation to selection of type of prey (e.g. fish, bivalves etc.), feeding range of predators etc. If possible more complex food web models and specific assessment types may be employed if scientifically justified. The inclusion of such considerations may provide a more robust basis for performing secondary poisoning assessment.

Depending on the magnitude of the PEC/PNEC ratio and the uncertainty in the $PNEC_{oral}$, it might also be appropriate in special circumstances to derive a more realistic $NOEC_{oral}$ value from a long-term feeding study with laboratory mammals or birds before considering a new fish BCF test. If further mammalian or avian toxicity testing is performed, consideration could also be given to extend such studies to include satellite groups for determination of the concentration of the substance in the animals during exposure (i.e. to measure BMF values for top predators).

If further data on fish bioaccumulation are considered essential, it may be appropriate in special cases to start with fish dietary studies to determine the assimilation coefficient and the biological half-life of the substance prior to estimating or determining the BCF.

Although field studies can give valuable 'real world' data on bioaccumulation assessments, they are resource intensive, retrospective and have many interpretation problems. Therefore, field monitoring as an alternative or supplementary course of action to laboratory testing is only likely to be necessary in exceptional cases, Active sampling of (top) predators should generally be avoided on ethical grounds. Instead, studies are likely to require non-lethal sampling methods (e.g. collection of animals that are found dead, droppings, infertile birds' eggs or biopsies of mammalian skin or blubber). Consequently, they will need careful design, and the sampled environment must be appropriate to the assessment.

## R.7.10.6 Integrated Testing Strategy (ITS) for aquatic bioaccumulation

### R.7.10.6.1 Objective / General principles

The objective of the testing strategy is therefore to provide information on aquatic bioaccumulation in the most efficient manner so that animal usage and costs are minimised. In general, more information is needed when the available data suggest that the BCF value is close to a regulatory criterion (i.e. for classification and labelling, PBT assessment, and the BCF that may lead to a risk being identified in the chemical safety assessment).

### R.7.10.6.2 Preliminary considerations

The first consideration should be the substance composition, the chief questions being: is the substance a non-ionised organic compound, and does it have well defined representative constituents? If the answer to these is no, then the use of $K_{ow}$- or QSAR-based estimation methods will be of limited help (see Appendix R.7.10—1). It is also important to have sufficient information on physico-chemical properties (such as vapour pressure, water solubility and $K_{ow}$), since these will have a significant impact on test design as well as the potential for aquatic organisms to be exposed (e.g. a poorly soluble gas might not need to be considered further). It may be possible at this stage to decide whether the substance is unlikely to be significantly bioaccumulative (i.e. log $K_{ow}$ <3). Finally, if there is substantiated evidence that direct and indirect exposure of the aquatic compartment is unlikely, then this should be recorded as the reason why further investigation is not necessary.

### R.7.10.6.3 Testing strategy for aquatic bioaccumulation

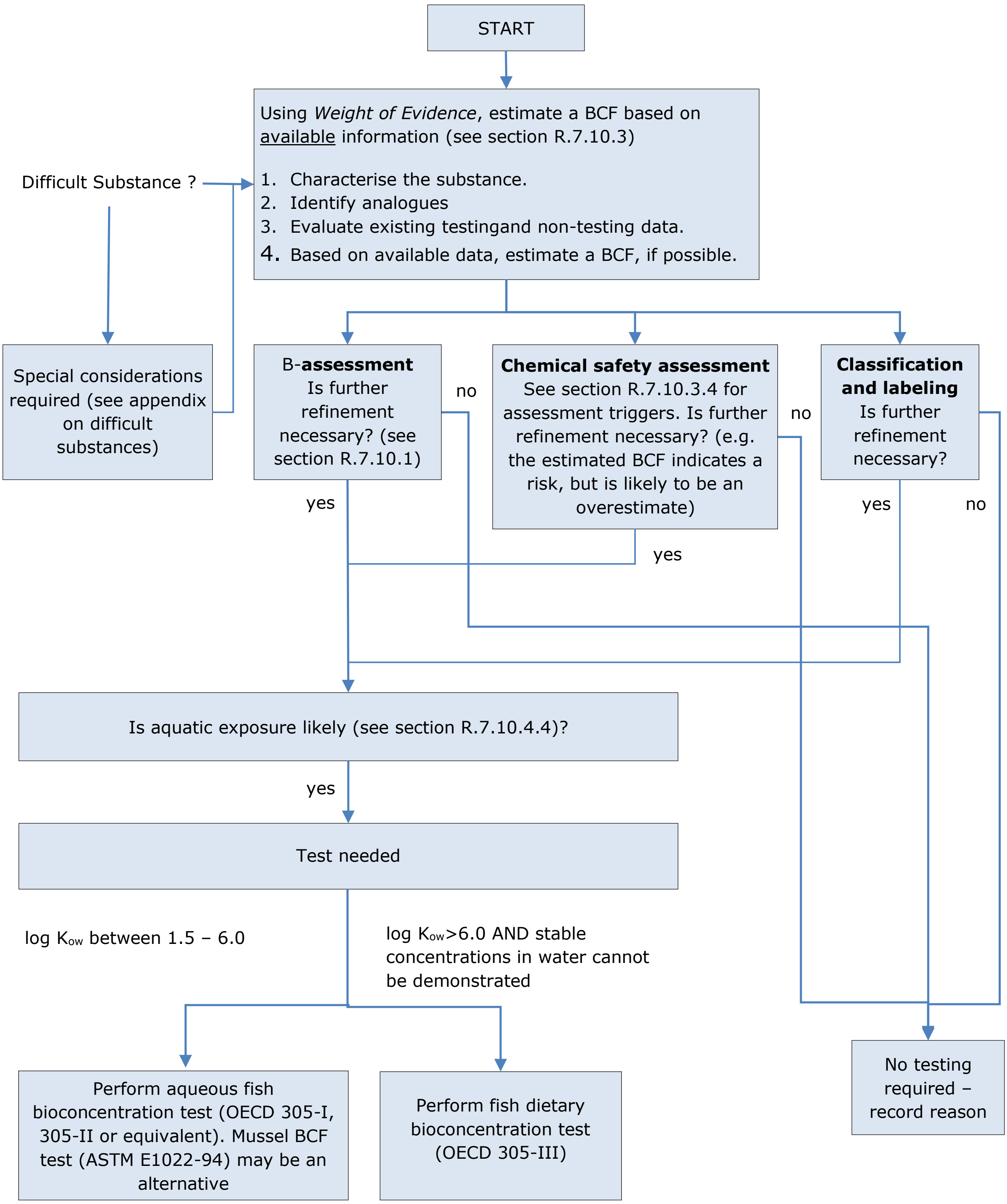
A strategy is presented in Figure R.7.10—2 for substances made or supplied at 100 t/y. References are made to the main text for further information. The collection of bioaccumulation data might be required below 100 t/y to clarify a hazard classification or PBT properties in some cases. Furthermore, collection and/or generation of additional bioaccumulation data is required for the PBT/vPvB assessment in case a registrant carrying out the CSA cannot draw an unequivocal conclusion either (i) ("The substance does not fulfil the PBT and vPvB criteria") or (ii)("The substance fulfils the PBT or vPvB criteria") on whether the bioaccumulation criteria in Annex XIII to REACH are met or not (see Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA* for further details) and the PBT/vPvB assessment shows that additional information on bioaccumulation is needed for deriving one of these two conclusions.

It should be noted that in some cases risk management measures could be modified to remove the concern identified following a preliminary assessment with an estimated BCF. Alternatively, it may be possible to collect other data to refine the assessment (e.g. further information on releases, non-vertebrate toxicity (which could be combined with an accumulation test) or environmental fate). In such cases a tiered strategy could place the further investigation of aquatic bioaccumulation with fish in a subsequent step.

It should also be considered whether an invertebrate test is a technically feasible and cost-effective alternative approach to estimating a worst case fish BCF. If refinement of the BCF is still needed following the performance of such a test, a fish study may still be required.

It should be noted that the ITS does not include requirements to collect *in vitro* or field data. The use of *in vitro* data will continue to be a case-by-case decision until such time that these techniques receive regulatory acceptance. Field data might possibly be of relevance if further information needs to be collected on the biomagnification factor. Related to this is the need to consider the $K_{oa}$ value for high log $K_{ow}$ substances (see Section R.7.10.3.4).

**Figure R.7.10—2 ITS for aquatic bioaccumulation**



### R.7.10.7 References for aquatic bioaccumulation

AMAP [Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme] (2001). Guidelines for the AMAP Phase 2 Assessments. AMAP Report 2001:1 (available from http://www.amap.no/).

Andersson, T., Förlin, L. and Hansson, T. (1983). Biotransformation of 7-ethoxycoumarin in isolated perfused rainbow trout liver. *Drug Metabolism and Disposition*, **11** (5), 494-498.

Ankley, G.T., Cook, P.M., Carlson, A.R., Call, D.J., Swenson, J.A., Corcoran, H.F. and Hoke, R.A. (1992). Bioaccumulation of PCBs from sediments by oligochaetes and fishes: Comparison of laboratory and field studies. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science*, **49**, 2080-2085.

Anon. (2004a). Fish, Dietary Bioaccumulation Study – Basic Protocol, document submitted to the TC-NES WG on PBT.

Anon. (2004b). Background document to the fish dietary study protocol, document submitted to the TC-NES WG on PBT.

Arnot, J.A. and Gobas, F.A.P.C. (2003). A generic QSAR for assessing the bioaccumulation potential of organic chemicals in aquatic food webs. *QSAR & Combinatorial Science*, **22**, 337-345.

Arnot, J.A. and Gobas, F.A.P.C. (2004). A food web bioaccumulation model for organic chemicals in aquatic ecosystems. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **23**, 2343-2355.

Arthur, C.L. and Pawliszyn, J. (1990). Solid phase microextraction with thermal desorption using fused silica optical fibers. *Analytical Chemistry*, **62**, 2145-2148.

ASTM (2000). E1688-00a. Standard Guide for Determination of the Bioaccumulation of Sediment-Associated Contaminants by Benthic Invertebrates. ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA, United States.

ASTM (2003). E1022-94. Standard Guide for Conducting Bioconcentration Tests with Fishes and Saltwater Bivalve Mollusks. ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA, United States.

Banerjee, S., Sugatt, R.H. and O'Grady, D.P. (1984). A simple method for determining bioconcentration parameters of hydrophobic compounds. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **18**, 79-81.

Banerjee, S. and Baughman, G.L. (1991). Bioconcentration factors and lipid solubility. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **25**, 536-539.

Barber, M.C., Suarez, L.A. and Lassiter, R.R. (1991). Modelling Bioaccumulation of Organic Pollutants in Fish with an Application to PCBs in Lake Ontario Salmonids, *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science*, **48**, 318 -337.

Baron MG, Purcell WM, Jackson SK, Owen SF, Jha AN. (2012). Towards a more representative in vitro method for fish ecotoxicology: morphological and biochemical characterisation of three-dimensional spheroidal hepatocytes. Ecotoxicology, 21: 2419-2429.

Barron, M. (1990). Bioconcentration. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **24**,1612-1618.

Barron, M. G., Charron, J. A., Stott, W. T. and Duvall, S. E. (1999). Tissue carboxylesterase activity of rainbow trout. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **18** (11), 2506-2512.

Bernhard, M. J. and Dyer, S. D. (2005). Fish critical cellular residues for surfactants and surfactant mixtures. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **24** (7), 1738-1744.

Bintein, S., Devillers, J. and Karcher, W. (1993). Nonlinear dependence of fish bioconcentration on n-Octanol/water partition coefficients. *SAR and QSAR in Environmental Research*, **1**, 29-39.

Boethling, R.S. and Mackay, D. (2000). Handbook of property estimation methods for chemicals: environmental and health sciences. Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, FL, USA.

Booij, K., Sleiderink, H.M. and Smedes, F. (1998). Calibrating the uptake kinetics of semipermeable membrane devices using exposure standards. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **17** (7), 1236-1245.

Borgå, K., Fisk, A.T., Hargrave, B., Hoekstra, P.F., Swackhamer, D. and Muir, D.C.G. (2005). Bioaccumulation factors for PCBs revisited. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **39**, 4523-4532

Broman, D., Näf, C., Rolff, C., Zebuhr, Y., Fry, B. and Hobbie, J. (1992). Using ratios of stable nitrogen isotopes to estimate bioaccumulation and flux of polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins (PCDDs) and dibenzofurans (PCDFs) in two food chains from the northern Baltic. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **11**, 331-345.

Burkhard, L.P. (2003). Factors influencing the design of BAF and BSAF field studies. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **22**, 351-360.

Burkhard, L.P., Cook, P.M. and Mount, D.R. (2003). The relationship of bioaccumulative chemicals in water and sediment to residues in fish: a visualization approach. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **22**, 2822-2830.

Burkhard, L.P., Cook, P.M. and Lukasewycz, M.T. (2005). Comparison of biota-sediment accumulation factors across ecosystems. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **39** (15), 5716-5721.

Campfens, J. and Mackay, D., (1997). Fugacity-Based Model of PCB Bioaccumulation in Complex Food Webs. *Environmental Science and Technology,* **31** (2), 577-583.

Chiou, C.T., Freed, V.H., Schmedding, D.W. and Kohnert, R.L. (1977). Partition coefficient and bioaccumulation of selected organic chemicals. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **11**, 475-478.

Clark, K.E. and Mackay, D. (1991). Dietary uptake and biomagnification of four chlorinated hydrocarbons by guppies. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **10**, 1205-1217.

Claudi, R. and Mackie, G.L. (1993). *Zebra Mussel Monitoring and Control*. Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, p. 227.

Connell, D.W. and Hawker, D.W. (1988). Use of polynomial expressions to describe the bioconcentration of hydrophobic chemicals by fish. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety*, **16**, 242-257.

Cornelissen, G., Gustafsson, O., Bucheli, T.D., Jonker, M.T., Koelmans, A.A. and van Noort, P.C. (2005). Extensive sorption of organic compounds to black carbon, coal, and kerosene in sediments and soils: mechanisms and consequences for distribution, bioaccumulation, and biodegradation. *Environmental Science & Technology*, **39**, 6881-6895.

Cowan-Ellsberry, C.E., Dyer, S.D., Erhardt, S., Bernhard, M.J., Roe, A.L., Dowty, M.E., Weisbrod, A.V. 2008. Approach for extrapolating in vitro metabolism data to refine bioconcentration factor estimates. Chemosphere 70:1804-1817.

Cravedi, J. P., Perdu-Durand, E. and Paris, A. (1998). Cytochrome P450-dependent metabolic pathways and glucuronidation in trout liver slices. *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology. C: Comparative Pharmacology and Toxicology*, **121**, 267-75.

Cravedi, J. P., Lafuente, A., Baradat, M., Hillenweck, A. and Perdu-Durand, E. (1999). Biotransformation of pentachlorophenol, aniline and biphenyl in isolated rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) hepatocytes: comparison with *in vivo* metabolism. *Xenobiotica*, **29** (5), 499-509.

Cravedi, J. P., Boudry, G., Baradat, M., Rao, D. and Debrauer, L. (2001). Metabolic fate of 2,4-dichloroaniline, prochloraz and nonylphenol diethoxylate in rainbow trout: a comparative *in vivo/in vitro* approach. *Aquatic Toxicology*, **53**, 159-172.

Davies, R.P. and Dobbs, A. (1984). The prediction of bioconcentration in fish. *Water Research*, **18**, 1253-1262.

Dearden, J.C. (2004). QSAR modelling of bioaccumulation. In: Cronin, M.T.D. and Livingstone, D.J., Eds., Predicting Chemical Toxicity and Fate. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 333-355.

De Maagd, P.G.J (1996). Biotransformation of Polyaromatic Hydrocarbons in Fathead Minnow (*Pimephales promelas*): The use of a Static Exposure System and the Biotransformation Inhibitor of Piperonyl Butoxide, Chapter 4, Ph.D dissertation, University of Utrecht, the Netherlands, pp. 69-93.

Devillers, J. and Lipnick, R.L. (1990). Practical applications of regressions analysis in environmental QSAR studies. In, *Practical Application of Quantitative Structure-Activity Relationships (QSAR) in Environmental Chemistry and Toxicology* (W. Karcher and J. Devillers, Eds.). Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, pp.129-143.

De Wolf, W., Seinen, W. and Hermens, J. L. M. (1993). N-acetyltransferase activity in rainbow trout liver and *in vitro* biotransformation of chlorinated anilines and benzenes in fish. *Xenobiotica*, **23** (9), 1045-1056.

De Wolf, W. and Lieder, P.H. (1998). A novel method to determine uptake and elimination kinetics in fish of volatile chemicals. *Chemosphere*, **36**, 1713-1724.

De Wolf, W., Comber, M., Douben, P., Gimeno, S., Holt, M., Léonard, M., Lillicrap, A., Sijm, D., van Egmond, R., Weisbrod, A. and Whale, G. (2007). Animal use replacement, reduction and refinement: development of an integrated testing for bioconcentration of chemicals in fish. *Integrated Environmental Assessment and Management*, **3**, 3-17.

Di, L., Trapa, P., Obach, R.S., Atkinson, K., Bi, Y.-A., Wolford, A.C., Tan, B., McDonald, T.S., Lai, Y., Temaine, L.M. (2012). A novel relay method fo determining low-clearance values. Drug Metab Disposit 40:1860-1865.

Dimitrov, S.D., Mekenyan, O.G. and Walker, J.D. (2002a). Non-linear modelling of bioconcentration using partition coefficients for narcotic chemicals. *SAR and QSAR in Environmental Research*, **13**(1), 177-188.

Dimitrov, S.D., Dimitrova, N.C., Walker, J.D., Veith, G.D. and Mekenyan, O.G. (2002b). Predicting bioconcentration factors of highly hydrophobic chemicals. Effects of molecular size. *Pure and Applied Chemistry*, **74**, 10, 1823-1830.

Dimitrov, S.D., Dimitrova, N.C., Walker, J.D., Veith, G.D. and Mekenyan, O.G. (2003). Bioconcentration potential predictions based on molecular attributes - an early warning approach for chemicals found in humans, birds, fish and wildlife. *QSAR & Combinatorial Science*, **22**, 58-67.

Dimitrov, S.D., Dimitrova, N.C., Parkerton, T.F., Comber, M., Bonnell, M. and Mekenyan, O. (2005a). Base-line model for identifying the bioaccumulation potential of chemicals. *SAR and QSAR in Environmental Research*, **16**(6), 531-554.

Dimitrov, S.D., Dimitrova, G., Pavlov, T., Dimitrova, N. and Patlewicz, G. (2005b). A Stepwise Approach for Defining the Applicability Domain of SAR and QSAR Models. *Journal of Chemical Information and Modelling*, **4**, 839-849.

Doi, A. M., Lao, Z., Holmes, E., Venugopal, C. S., Nyagode, B., James, M. O. and Kleinow, K. M. (2006). Intestinal bioavailability and biotransformation of 3,3′,4,4′-tetrachlorobipheyl (CB 77) in *in situ* preparations of channel catfish following dietary induction of CYP1A. *Aquatic Toxicology*, **77**, 33-42.

Dulfer, W.J. and Govers, H.A.J. (1995). Membrane/water partitioning of polychlorinated biphenyls in small unilamellar vesicles of four saturated phosphatidylcholines. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **29**, 2548-2554.

Dyer, S. D., Bernhard, M. J. and Versteeg, D. J. (2003). Identification of an *in vitro* method for estimating the bioconcentration of surfactants in fish. In *ERASM final report.* Brussels, Belgium, 1-66. www.erasm.org/study.htm

Dyer, S.D., Bernhard, M.J., Cowan-Ellsberry, C., Perdu-Durand, E., Demmerle, S., and Cravedi, J.-P. 2008. In vitro biotransformation of surfactants in fish. Part I: Linear alkylbenzene sulfonate (C12-LAS) and alcohol ethoxylate (C13EO8). Chemosphere 72:850-862.

ECETOC (1996). Technical Report No. 67. The Role of Bioaccumulation in Environmental Risk Assessment: The Aquatic Environment and Related Food Webs. ISNN-0773-8072-67.

ECETOC (2005). Technical Report No. 97. Alternative testing approaches in environmental safety assessment. ISSN-0773-8072-97.

Ellgenhausen, H., Guth, J.A. and Esser, H.O. (1980). Factors determining the bioaccumulation potential of pesticides in the individual compartments of aquatic food chains. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety*, **4**, 134-157.

Embry MR et al., (2015). In Vitro Fish Hepatic Metabolism: Overview of Ring-Trial to Evaluate Transferability, Intra- and Interlaboratory Reproducibility. Abstract TP113, SETAC North America Annual Meeting, Salt Lake City, UT. Available at: https://c.ymcdn.com/sites/www.setac.org/resource/resmgr/Abstract_Books/SETAC-SLC-Abstract-Book.pdf

Escuder-Gilabert, L., Martin-Biosca, Y., Sagrado, S., Villanueva-Camañas, R.M. and Medina-Hernandez, M.J. (2001). Biopartitioning micellar chromatography to predict ecotoxicity. *Analytica Chimica Acta*, **448**, 173-185.

EC [European Commission] (2003). Technical Guidance Document on Risk Assessment in support of Commission Directive 93/67/EEC on Risk Assessment for new notified substances, Commission Regulation (EC) No 1488/94 on Risk Assessment for existing substances, and Directive 98/8/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council concerning the placing of biocidal products on the market.

Evans, M.S., Noguchi, G.E. and Rice, C.P. (1991). The biomagnification of polychlorinated biphenyls, toxaphene, and DDT compounds in a Lake Michigan offshore food web. *Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology*, **20**, 87-93.

Fay, K.A., Fitzsimmons, A.D., Hoffman, A.D., Nichols, J.W. 2014. Optimizing the use of rainbow trout hepatocytes for bioaccumulation assessments with fish. Xenobiotica, 44:345-351.

Fay KA, Mingoia RT, Goeritz I, Nabb DL, Hoffman AD, Ferell BD, Peterson HM, Nichols JW, Segner H, Han X. 2014. Intra- and inter-laboratory reliability of a cryopreserved trout hepatocyte assay for the prediction of chemical bioaccumulation potential. Environ Sci Technol 48: 8170-8178.

Fay KA, Nabb DL, Mingoia RT, Bischof I, Nichols JW, Segner H, Johanning K, Han X. 2015a. Determination of metabolic stability using cryopreserved hepatocytes from rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Curr Protocol Toxicol 65:4.42.1-4.42.29.

Fay KA et al. (2015b). In Vitro to In Vivo Extrapolation of Hepatic Metabolism in Fish: An Inter-laboratory Comparison of In Vitro Methods. Abstract 294, SETAC North America Annual Meeting, Salt Lake City, UT. Available at: https://c.ymcdn.com/sites/www.setac.org/resource/resmgr/Abstract_Books/SETAC-SLC-Abstract-Book.pdf

Fisk, A.T., Norstrom, R.J., Cymbalisty, C.D. and Muir, D.C.G. (1998). Dietary accumulation and depuration of hydrophobic organochlorines: Bioaccumulation parameters and their relationship with the octanol/water partition coefficient. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **17**, 951-961.

Fisk, A.T., Hobson, K.A. and Norstrom, R.J. (2001). Influence of chemical and biological factors on trophic transfer of persistent organic pollutants in the Northwater Polynya marine food web. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **35**, 732-738.

Förlin, L. and Andersson, T. (1981). Effects of clopen A50 on the metabolism of parnitroanisole in an *in vitro* perfused rainbow trout liver. *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology*, **68C**, 239-242.

Geyer, H.J., Sheehan, D., Kotzias, D., Freitag, D. and Korte, F. (1982). Prediction of ecotoxicological behaviour of chemicals: relationship between physico-chemical properties and bioaccumulation of organic chemicals in the mussel. *Chemosphere*, **11**, 1121-1134.

Geyer, H.J., Politzki, G. and Freitag, D. (1984). Prediction of ecotoxicological behaviour of chemicals: relationship between n-octanol/water partition coefficient and bioaccumulation of organic chemicals by algae *Chlorella*. *Chemosphere*, **13**, 269-284.

Geyer, H.J., Scheunert, I., Brüggemann, R., Steingerg, C., Korte, F. and Kettrup, A. (1991). QSAR for organic chemical bioconcentration in Daphnia, algae, and mussels. *Science of the Total Environment*, **109**/**110**, 387-394.

Gobas, F.A.P.C., Shiu, W.Y. and Mackay, D. (1987). Factors determining partitioning of hydrophobic organic chemicals in aquatic organisms. In Kaiser, K.L.E., QSAR in Environmental Toxicology – II. Dordrecht, The Netherlands: D. Reidel Publishing Company. pp. 107-123.

Gobas, F.A.P.C., Lahittete, J.M., Garofalo, G., Shiu, W.Y. and Mackay, D. (1988). A novel method for measuring membrane-water partition coefficients of hydrophobic organic chemicals: Comparison with 1–octanol–water partitioning. *Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences*, **77**, 265-272.

Gobas, F.A.P.C., Clark, K.E., Shiu, W.Y. and Mackay, D. (1989). Bioconcentration of polybrominated benzenes and biphenyls and related superhydrophobic chemicals in fish: Role of bioavailability and elimination into feces. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **8**, 231-245.

Gobas, F.A.P.C. (1993). A Model for Predicting the Bioaccumulation of Hydrophobic Organic Chemicals in Aquatic Food-Webs: Application to Lake Ontario. *Ecological Modelling*, **69**, 1-17.

Gobas, F.A.P.C., Kelly, B.C. and Arnot, J.A. (2003). Quantitative structure activity relationships for predicting the bioaccumulation of POPs in terrestrial food-webs. *QSAR and Combinatorial Science*, **22**, 329-336.

Gomez CF, Constantine L, Huggett DB. 2010. The influence of gill and liver metabolism on the predicted bioconcentration of three pharmaceuticals in fish. Chemosphere 81:1189-1195.

Government of Canada (1999). Canadian Environmental Protection Act, in Canada Gazette Part III.

Gramatica, P. and Papa, E. (2003). QSAR modelling of bioconcentration factor by theoretical molecular descriptors. *QSAR & Combinatorial Science*, **22** (3), 374-385.

Gramatica, P. and Papa, E. (2005). An update of the BCF QSAR model based on theoretical molecular descriptors. *QSAR & Combinatorial Science*, **24**, 953-960.

Hallifax, D, Foster JA, and Houston JB. (2010). Prediction of human metabolic clearance from in vitro systems: Retrospective analysis and prospective view. Pharm Res 27:2150-2161.

Han, X., Nabb, D.L., Mingoia, R.T., and Yang, C.H. (2007). Determination of xenobiotic intrinsic clearance in freshly isolated hepatocytes from rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) and rat and its application in bioaccumulation assessment. *Environmental Science and Technology*. 41: 3269-3276.

Han X, Mingoia RT, Nabb DL, Yang CH, Snajdr SI, Hoke RA. 2008. Xenobiotic intrinsic clearance in freshly isolated hepatocytes from rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss): determination of trout hepatocellularity, optimization of cell concentrations and comparison of serum and serum-free incubations. Aquat Toxicol. 2008 Aug 11;89(1):11-7.

Han, X., Nabb, D.L., Yang, C.H., Snajdr, S.I., and Mingoia, R.T. 2009. Liver microsomes and S9 from rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss): Comparison of basal-level enzyme activities with rat and determination of xenobiotic intrinsic clearance in support of bioaccumulation assessment. Environ. Toxicol. Chem. 28:481-488.

Hawker, D.W. and Connell, D.W. (1986). Bioconcentration of lipophilic compounds by some aquatic organisms. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety*, **11**, 184-197.

Hendriks, A.J. and Pieters, H. (1993). Monitoring concentrations of microcontaminants in aquatic organisms in the Rhine delta: a comparison with reference values. *Chemosphere*, **26**(5), 817-836.

Hendriks, J.A. and Heikens, A. (2001). The power of size. 2. Rate constants and equilibrium ratios for accumulation of inorganic substances related to species weight. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **20**, 1421-1437.

Hendriks, J.A., van der Linde, A., Cornelissen, G. and Sijm, D.T.H.M. (2001). The power of size. 1. Rate constants and equilibrium ratios for accumulation of organic substances related to octanol-water partition ratio and species weight. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **20**, 1399-1420.

Hidalgo, I. J. and Li, J. (1996). Carrier-mediated transport and efflux mechanisms in Caco-2 cells. *Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews*, **22**, 53-66.

Houston, J.B. (1994). Utility of *in vitro* drug metabolism date in predicting *in vivo* metabolic clearance. *Biochemical Pharmacology*, **47**(9), 1469-1479.

Houston, JB, and Carlile DJ. (1997). Prediction of hepatic clearance from microsomes, hepatocytes, and liver slices. Drug Metab Rev 29:891-922.

Howard, P.H., Sage, G.W., La Macchia, A. and Colb, A. (1982). The development of an environmental fate database. *Journal of Chemical Information and Computer Sciences*, **22**, 38-44.

Howard, P.H., Hueber, A.E., Mulesky, B.C., Crisman, J.S., Meylan, W., Crosbie, E., Gray, D.A., Sage, G.W., Howard, K.P., LaMacchia, A., Boethling, R. and Troast, R. (1986). BIOLOG, BIODEG, and FATE/EXPOS: New files on microbial degradation and toxicity as well as environmental fate/exposure of chemicals. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **5**, 977-988

Hu, H., Xu, F.,Li, B., Cao, J., Dawson, R. and Tao, S. (2005). Prediction of the Bioconcentration Factor of PCBs in Fish Using the Molecular Connectivity Index and Fragment Constant Models. *Water Environment Research*, **77** (1), 87-97.

Huckins, J.N., Tubergen, M.W., Manuweera, G.K. (1990). Semipermeable membrane devices containing model lipids: a new approach to monitoring the bioavailability of lipophilic contaminants and estimating their bioaccumulation potential. *Chemosphere*, **20**, 533-552.

Hutzler, J.M., Ring, B.J., Anderson, S.R.  (2015).  Low-turnover drug molecules: A current challenge for drug metabolism studies.  Drug Metab Disposit 43:1917-1925.

Isnard, P. and Lambert, S. (1988). Estimating Bioconcentration factors from octanol-xater partition coefficient and aqueous solubility. *Chemosphere*, **17**, 21-34.

James, M.O., Tong, Z., Rowland-Faux, L., Venugopal, C.S. and Kleinow, K.M. (2001). Intestinal bioavailability and biotransformation of 3-hydroxybenzo(a)pyrene in an isolated perfused preparation from channel catfish, *Ictalurus punctatus*. *Drug Metabolism and Disposition*, **29** (5), 721-728.

James, M.O., Kleinow, K.M., Zhang, Y., Zheng, R., Wang, L. and Faux, L.R. (2004). Increased toxicity of benzo(a)pyrene-7,8-dihydrodiol in the presence of polychlorobiphenylols. *Marine Environmental Research,* **58** (2-5), 343-346.

Jimenez, B.D., Cirmo, C.P. and McCarthy, J.F. (1987). Effects of feeding and temperature on uptake, elimination and metabolism of benzo(a)pyrene in the bluegill sunfish (*Lepomis macrochirus*). *Aquatic Toxicology*, **10**, 41-57.

Johanning K, Hancock G, Escher B, Adekola A, Bernhard MJ, Cowan-Ellsberry C, Domodoradzki J, Dyer S, Eickhoff C, Embry M, Erhardt S, Fitzsimmons P, Halder M, Hill J, Holden D, Johnson R, Rutishauser S, Segner H, Schultz I, Nichols J. 2012a. Assessment of metabolic stability using the rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) liver S9 fraction. Curr Prot Toxicol 53: 14.10.1-14.10.28.

Johanning, K., Hancock, G., Escher, B., Adekola, A., Bernhardt, M., Cowan-Ellsberry, C., Domoradski, J., Dyer, S., Eickhoff, C., Erhardt, S., Fitzsimmons, P., Halder, M., Nichols, J., Rutishauser, S., Sharpe, A., Segner, H., Schultz, I., and Embry, M.   2012b. In vitro metabolism using rainbow trout liver S9.  Summary report of the HESI Bioaccumulation Committee.  Available at: http://www.hesiglobal.org/files/public/Committees/Bioaccumulation/Presentations%20and%20Data%20Resources/S9_report_FINAL_20Nov2012.pdf

Jørgensen, S.E., Halling-Sørensen, B. and Mahler, H. (1998). Handbook of Estimation Methods in Ecotoxicology and Environmental Chemistry (Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, FL). p.65.

Kamlet, M.J., Abbound, J.L.M., Abraham, M.H. and Taft, R.W. (1983). Linear salvation energy relationships 23. A comprehensive collection of the solvatochromic equation parameters □*, □ and □, and some methods for simplyfing the generalized solvatochromic equation. *Journal of Organic Chemistry*, **48**, 2877-2887.

Kane, A. S. and Thohan, S. (1996). Dynamic culture of fish hepatic tissue slices to assess phase I and phase II biotransformation. In 'Techniques in Aquatic Toxicology'. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Kawano, A., Haiduk, C., Schirmer, K., Hanner, R., Lee, L.E.J., Dixon, B., and Bols, N.C. (2011). Development of a rainbow trout intestinal epithelial cell line and its response to lipopolysaccharide. Aquacult Nutr 17:e241-e252.

Kelly, B.C., Gobas, F.A.P.C. and McLachlan, M.S. (2004). Intestinal absorption and biomagnification of organic contaminants in fish, wildlife and humans. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **23**, 2324-2336.

Kenaga, E.E. and Goring, C.A.I. (1980). Relationship between water solubility and soil sorption, octanol-water partitioning and bioconcentration of chemicals in biota. In Aquatic Toxicology, Special Technical Publication 707, Eaton, J.G., Parrish, P.R.P. and Hendricks, A.C., Eds., American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, PA, pp.78-115.

Kiriluk, R.M., Servos, M.R., Whittle, D.M., Cabana, G. and Rasmussen, J.B. (1995). Using ratios of stable nitrogen and carbon isotopes to characterise the biomagnification of DDE, Mirex, and PCB in a Lake Ontario pelagic food web. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science*, **52**, 2660–2674

Kleinow, K. M., James, M. O., Tong, Z. and Vengopalan, C. S. (1998). Bioavailability and biotransformation of benzo(a)pyrene in a perfused *in situ* catfish intestinal preparation. *Environmental Health Perspectives*, **106** (3), 155-166.

Kolanczyk, R., Schmieder, P., Bradbury, S. and Spizzo, T. (1999). Biotransformation of 4-methoxyphenol in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) hepatic microsomes. *Aquatic Toxicology*, **45**, 47-61.

Könemann, H. and van Leeuwen, C. (1980). Toxicokinetics in fish: accumulation and elimination of six chlorobenzenes in guppies. *Chemosphere*, **9**, 3-19.

Kristensen, P. and Tyle, H. (1991). The Assessment of Bioaccumulation in "Bioaccumulation in Aquatic Systems" (Eds. R. Nagel & R. Loskill), VCH, Berlin, p. 189-227.

Kubinyi, H. (1976). Quantitative structure-activity relationships. IV. Non-linear dependence of biological activity on hydrophobic character: a new model. *Arzneimittel-Forschung- Drug Research*, **26**, 1991-1997.

Kubinyi, H. (1977). Quantitative structure-activity relationships. 7. The bilinear model, a new model for nonlinear dependence of biological activity on hydrophobic character. *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **20**, 625-629.

Kubinyi, H. and Kehrhalm, O.H. (1978). Quantitative structure-activity relationships VI. Non-linear dependence of biological activity on hydrophobic character: calculation procedures for the bilinear model. *Arzneimittel-Forschung- Drug Research,* **28**, 598-601.

Kubinyi, H. (1979). Nonlinear dependence of biological activity: on hydrophobic character: the bilinear model. *Il Farmaco,* **34**, 247-276.

Laue H, Gfeller H, Jenner KJ, Nichols JW, Kern S, Natsch A. 2014. Predicting the bioconcentration of fragrance ingredients by rainbow trout using measured rates of in vitro intrinsic clearance. Environ Sci Technol 48:9486-9495.

Lee, Y.S., Otton, S.V., Campbell, D.A., Moore, M.M., Kennedy, C.J., Gobas, F.A.P.C. (2012). Measuring in-vitro biotransformation rates of super hydrophobic chemicals in rat liver S9 fractions using thin-film sorbent-phase dosing. Environ Sci Technol 46:410-418.

Lee, Y.S., Lee, D.H., Delaoulhouze, M., Otton, S.V., Moore, M.M., Kennedy, C.J., Gobas, F.A.P.C. (2014). In-vitro biotransformation rates in fish liver S9: Effect of dosing techniques. Environ Toxicol Chem 33:1885-1893.

Leo, A.J. (1975). Symposium on Structure-Activity Correlations in Studies of Toxicity and Bio-Concentration with Aquatic Organisms. Great Lakes research Advisory Board, Burlinghton, Ontario, p 151.

Leslie, H.A., Oosthoek, A.J.P., Busser, F.J.M., Kraak, M.H.S. and Hermens, J.L.M. (2002). Biomimetic solid-phase microextraction to predict body residues and toxicity of chemicals that act by narcosis. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **21** (2), 229-234.

Lu, X.X., Tao, S., Cao, J. and Dawson, R.W. (1999). Prediction of fish bioconcentration factors of nonpolar organic pollutants based on molecular connectivity indices. *Chemosphere,* **39**, 987-999.

Lu, X., Tao, S., Hu, H. and Dawson, R.W. (2000). Estimation of bioconcentration factors of nonionic organic compounds in fish by molecular connectivity indices and polarity correction factors. *Chemosphere*, **41**, 1675-1688.

Ma, W.C. (1994). Methodological principles of using small mammals for ecological hazard assessment of a chemical soil pollution, with examples on cadmium and lead. In: Ecotoxicology of soil organisms. Donker MH, Eijsackers H, Heimbach F (Eds.), SETAC Special Publication Series, Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, FL, USA.

Mackay, D. (1982). Correlation of bioconcentration factors. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **16**, 274-278.

Mackay, D., Shiu, W.Y. and Ma, K.C. (2000). Physico-chemical Properties and Environmental Fate and Degradation Handbook. CRCnetBASE 2000, Chapman & Hall CRCnetBASE, CRC Press LLC., Boca Raton, FL. (CD-ROM.)

Meylan, W.M., Howard, P.H., Boethling, R.S., Aronson, D., Printup, H. and Gouchie, S. (1999). Improved method for estimating bioconcentration/bioaccumulation factor from octanol/water partition coefficient. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **18**, 664-672.

Mingoia, R.T., Glover, K.P., Nabb, D.L., Yang, C.-H., Snajdr, S.I., and Han, X. 2010. Cryopreserved Hepatocytes from Rainbow Trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss): A Validation Study to Support Their Application in Bioaccumulation Assessment. Environ. Sci. Technol. 44:3052-3058.

Morrison, H.A., Gobas, F.A.P.C., Lazar, R., Whittle, D.M. and Haffner, D.G. (1997). Development and Verification of a Benthic/Pelagic Food Web Bioaccumulation Model for

PCB Congeners in Western Lake Erie. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **31**(11), 3267 -3273.

Muir, D.C.G., Hobden, B.R. and Servos, M.R. (1994). Bioconcentration of pyrethroid insecticides and DDT by rainbow trout: uptake, depuration, and effect of dissolved organic carbon. *Aquatic Toxicology*, **29** (3-4), 223-240.

Neely, W.B., Branson, D.R. and Blau, G.E. (1974). Partition coefficients to measure bioconcentration potential of organic chemicals in fish. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **8**, 1113-1115.

Nendza, M. (1998). Structure – Activity Relationships in Environmental Sciences, Chapman & Hall, London.

Nichols, J.W., McKim, J.M., Andersen, M.E., Gargas, M.L., Clewell III, H.J. and Erickson, R.J. (1990). A physiologically based toxicokinetic model for the uptake and disposition of waterborne organic chemicals in fish. *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology*, **106**, 433-447.

Nichols, J.W., Fitzsimmons, P.N., Whiteman, F.W., Dawson, T.D., Babeu, L. and Junemann, J. (2004). A physiologically based toxicokinetic model for dietary uptake of hydrophobic organic compounds by fish. *Toxicological Sciences*, **77**, 206-213.

Nichols, J.W., Schultz, I.R. and Fitzsimmons, P.N. (2006). *In vitro-in vivo* extrapolations of quantitative hepatic biotransformation data on fish I. A review of methods, and strategies for incorporating intrinsic clearance estimates into chemical kinetic models. *Aquatic Toxicology*, **78**, 74-90.

Nichols JW, Fitzsimmons, PN, Burkhard LP. (2007). *In vitro-in vivo* extrapolation of hepatic biotransformation data for fish: II. Modeled effects on chemical bioaccumulation. Environ Toxicol Chem 26:1304-1319.

Nichols JW, Huggett DB, Arnot JA, Fitzsimmons PN, Cowan-Ellsberry CE. (2013a). Towards improved models for predicting bioconcentration of well-metabolized compounds by rainbow trout using measured rates of in vitro intrinsic clearance. Environ Toxicol Chem 32:1611-1622.

Nichols JW, Hoffman AD, ter Laak TL, Fitzsimmons PN. (2013b). Hepatic clearance of 6 polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons by isolated perfused trout livers: Prediction from in vitro clearance by liver S9 fractions. Toxicol Sci 6:359-372.

OECD (1981). Bioaccumulation. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), OECD Guideline for the Testing of Chemicals No. 305 A-E, Paris, France.

OECD (1996). Bioaccumulation: Flow-through Fish Test. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), OECD Guideline for the Testing of Chemicals No. 305, Paris, France.

OECD (2001). Guidance Document on the Use of the Harmonised System for the Classification of Chemicals which are Hazardous for the Aquatic Environment. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), OECD Environmental Health and Safety Publications, Series on Testing and Assessment, No. 27, Paris, France.

OECD (2006). Guidance Document on Simulated Freshwater Lentic Field Tests (Outdoor Microcosms and Mesocosms). OECD Environmental Health and Safety Publications, Series on Testing and Assessment, No. 53, Paris, France.

OECD (2008). Bioaccumulation in Sediment-dwelling Benthic Oligochaetes. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), OECD Guideline for the Testing of Chemicals No. 315, Paris, France.

OECD (2012). Bioaccumulation in Fish: Aqueous and Dietary Exposure. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), OECD Guideline for the Testing of Chemicals No. 305, Paris, France.

OECD (2015). Work plan for the Test Guidelines Programme (TGP). July 2015. Available at: https://www.oecd.org/env/ehs/testing/TGP%20work%20plan_declassification_July%202015.pdf

Park, J.H. and Lee, H.J. (1993). Estimation of bioconcentration factor in fish, adsorption coefficient of soils and sediments and interfacial tension with water for organic nonelectrolytes based on the linear solvation energy relationships. *Chemosphere*, **26** (10), 1905-1916.

Parkerton *et al.* (2001). A practical testing approach for assessing bioaccumulation potential of poorly water soluble organic chemicals. Presentation at the SETAC Europe annual meeting, Madrid, Spain. Manuscript No. 00.7014. Annandale NJ: ExxonMobil Biomedical Sciences Inc.

Parkerton, T., Letinski, D., Febbo, E., Blattenberger, R., Connelly, M. and Comber, M. (2005). An Assessment of the Bioconcentration of Isoalkanes by Fish, SETAC, Lille.

Parkerton, T.F., Woodburn, K.B., Arnot, J.A., Weisbrod, A.V., Burkard, L., Hoke, R.A. and Traas T. (2007). Guidance for evaluating *in-vivo* fish bioaccumulation data. Submitted for publication.

Pärt, P. (1990). The perfused fish gill preparation in studies of the bioavailability of chemicals. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety*, **19** (1), 106-115.

Pärt, P., Saarikoski, J., Tuurala, H. and Havaste, K. (1992). The absorption of hydrophobic chemicals across perfused rainbow trout gills: methodological aspects. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety*, **24** (3), 275-286.

Pavan, M., Netzeva, T.I. and Worth, A.P. (2006). EUR Technical Report 22327 EN. *Review of QSAR Models for Bioconcentration*. Ispra, Italy.

Pedersen, F., Tyle, H., Niemelä, J.R., Guttmann, B., Lander, L. and Wedebrand, A. (1995). Environmental Hazard Classification – data collection and interpretation guide (2nd edition). TemaNord 1995:581.

Petty, J.D., Poulton, B.C., Charbonneau, C.S., Huckins, J.N., Jones, S.B., Cameron, J.T., Prest, H.F. (1998). Determination of bioavailable contaminants in the Lower Missouri River following the flood of 1993. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **32** (7), 837-842.

Rane, A., Wilkinson, G.R., Shand, D.G., 1977. Prediction of hepatic extraction ratio from in vitro measurement of intrinsic clearance. J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther. 200, 420–424.

Rasmussen, J.B., Rowan, D.J., Lean, D.R.S. and Carey, J.H. (1990). Food chain structure in Ontario lakes determine PCB levels in lake trout (*Salvelinus namaycush*) and other pelagic fish. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquaculture Science*, **47**, 2030-2038.

Riley RJ, McGinnity DF, Austin RP. 2005. A unified model for predicting human hepatic, metabolic clearance from in vitro intrinsic clearance data in hepatocytes and microsomes. Drug Metabolism and Distribution. 33: 1304-1311.

Rodrigues AD. 1997. Preclinical drug metabolism in the age of high-throughput screening: an industrial perspective. Pharm Res. 14(11):1504-10.

Sabljic, A. and Protic, M. (1982). Molecular connectivity: a novel method for prediction of bioconcentration factor of hazardous chemicals. *Chemico-Biological Interactions,* **42**, 301-310.

Sabljic, A. (1987). The prediction of fish bioconcentration factors of organic pollutants from the molecular connectivity model. Prediction. *Zeitschrift für die gesamte Hygiene und ihre Grenzgebiete*, **33**, 493 – 496.

Schrap, S.M. and Opperhuizen, A. (1990). Relationship between bioavailability and hydrophobicity: reduction of the uptake of organic chemicals by fish due to the sorption of particles. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **9**, 715-724.

Schultz, I.R. and Hayton, W.L. (1999). Interspecies scaling of the bioaccumulation of lipophilic xenobiotics in fish: an example using trifluralin. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **18** (7), 1440-1449.

Schüürmann, G. and Klein, W. (1988). Advances in bioconcentration prediction. *Chemosphere*, **17**, 1551-1574.

Segner, H. and Cravedi, J. P. (2001). Metabolic activity in primary cultures of fish hepatocytes. *ATLA*, **29**, 251-257.

Sharpe, S. and Mackay, D. (2000). A framework for evaluating bioaccumulation in food webs. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **34**, 2373-2379.

Sibley, P.K., Benoit, D.A., Balcer, M.D., Phipps, G.L., West, C.W., Hoke, R.A. and Ankley, G.T. (1999). *In situ* bioaassay chamber for assessment of sediment toxicity and bioaccumulation using benthic invertebrates *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **18**, 2325–2336.

Sijm, D.T.H.M. (1991). Extrapolating the laboratory results to environmental conditions. In: Bioaccumulation in Aquatic Systems. Contributions to the Assessment. Proceedings of an International Workshop, Berlin, 1990 (Eds. R. Nagel and R. Loskill), VCH Publishers, Weinheim, pp. 151-160.

Sijm, D.T.H.M., Broersen, K.W., de Roode, D.F. and Mayer, P. (1998). Bioconcentration kinetics of hydrophobic chemicals in different densities of *Chlorella pyrenoidosa*. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry,* **17**, 1695-1704.

Sijm, D., de Bruijn, J., de Voogt, P. and de Wolf, W. (1997). Biotransformation in environmental risk assessment. SETAC-Europe, Brussels, p. 130.

Sijm, D.T.H.M. and Opperhuizen, A. (1989). Biotransformation of organic chemicals by fish: a review of enzyme activities and reactions. In: Handbook of Environmental Chemistry, Volume 2 Part E: Reactions and Processes (Ed. O. Hutzinger), Springer-Verlag, Heidelberg, pp. 163-235.

Sijm, D. T. H. M., Verberne, M. E., Dejonge ,W. J., Pärt, P. and Opperhuizen, A. (1995). Allometry in the uptake of hydrophobic chemicals determined *in vivo* and in isolated perfused gills. *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology,* **131** (1), 130-135.

Sijm, D.T.H.M., van Wezel, A.P. and Crommentuijn, T. (2001). Environmental risk limits in The Netherlands. In Posthuma, L., Suter, G.W. II & Traas, T.P., Eds., *Species Sensitivity Distributions in Ecotoxicology*, CRC Press.

Södergren, A. (1987). Solvent filled dialysis membranes simulate uptake of pollutants by aquatic organisms. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **21**, 855-859.

Spacie, A. and Hamelink, J.L. (1982). Alternative models for describing the bioconcentration of organics in fish. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **1**, 309-320.

Springer, T.A. (2006). A Proposal for a Screening Bioconcentration Study. Wildlife International Ltd., Easton, USA.

Stadnicka, J.; Schirmer, K.; Ashauer, R., Predicting Concentrations of Organic Chemicals in Fish by Using Toxicokinetic Models. Environ. Sci. Technol. 2012, 46, (6), 3273-3280.

Stadnicka-Michalak J, Tanneberger K, Schirmer K, Ashauer R. 2014. Measured and modeled toxicokinetics in cultured fish cells and application to in vitro – in vivo toxicity extrapolation. PLoS ONE 9, e92303.

Stewart, S., Aronson, D., Meylan, W., Howard, P., Comber, M. and Parkerton, T. (2005). Improved BCF Prediction for Hydrocarbons, SETAC North America 26th Annual Meeting, 13-17 November 2005, Baltimore.

Stott LC, Schnell S, Hogstrand C, Owen SF, Bury NR. 2015. A primary fish gill cell culture model to assess pharmaceutical uptake and efflux: Evidence for passive and facilitated transport. Aquat Toxicol 159:127-37.

Syracuse Research Corporation, Bioconcentration Factor Data Base. (http://www.syrres.com/esc/default1.htm).

Syracuse Research Corporation, Bioconcentration Factor Program (BCFWIN), Version 2.15. downloadable at http://www.epa.gov/oppt/exposure/docs/episuitedl.htm.

Tao, S., Hu, H., Xu, F., Dawson, R., Li, B. and Cao, J. (2000). Fragment constant method for prediction of fish bioconcentration factors of non-polar chemicals. *Chemosphere*, **41**(10), 1563-1568.

Tao, S., Hu, H., Xu, F., Dawson, R., Li, B. and Cao, J. (2001). QSAR modelling of bioconcentration factors in fish based on fragmental constants and structural correction factors. *Journal of Environmental Science and Health*, **B36**(5), 631-649.

Thomann, R.V., Connolly, J.P. and Parkerton, T.F. (1992). An equilibrium model of organic chemical accumulation in aquatic food webs with sediment interaction. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry,* **11**(5), 615 - 629.

Tolls, J., Haller, M., Labee, E., Verweij, M. and Sijm, D.T.H.M. (2000). Experimental determination of bioconcentration of the nonionic surfactant alcohol ethoxylate. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **19**, 646–653.

Traas, T.P., van Wezel, A.P., Hermens, J.L.M., Zorn, M., Van Hattum, A.G.M. and Van Leeuwen, C.J. (2004). Prediction of environmental quality criteria from internal effect concentrations for organic chemicals with a food web model. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, 23, 2518-2527.

US-EPA [U.S. Environmental Protection Agency]. ECOTOX Database (www.epa.gov/ecotox).

US-EPA [U.S. Environmental Protection Agency] (1995). Aquatic Toxicity Information Retrieval AQUIRE Database. Duluth, MN, USA.

US-EPA [U.S. Environmental Protection Agency] (1996a). *Ecological Effects Test Guidelines. OPPTS 850.1730 Fish BCF. Public Draft*. Office of Prevention, Pesticides and Toxic Substances. Washington, D.C., USA.

US-EPA [U.S. Environmental Protection Agency] (1996b). *Ecological Effects Test Guidelines. OPPTS 850.1710 Oyster BCF. Public Draft*. Office of Prevention, Pesticides and Toxic Substances. Washington, D.C., USA.

US-EPA [U.S. Environmental Protection Agency] (1999). Category for persistent, bioaccumulative and toxic new chemical substances. Feb Reg 64:60194-60204.

US-EPA [U.S. Environmental Protection Agency] (2000a). Bioaccumulation Testing and Interpretation for the Purpose of Sediment Quality Assessment: Status and Needs. Washington, D.C., USA.

US-EPA [U.S. Environmental Protection Agency] (2000b). Methodology for deriving ambient water quality criteria for the protection of human health. EPA-822-B-00-004. Washington, D.C., USA.

Vaes, W.H.J., Hamwijk, C., Urrestarazu Ramos, E., Verhaar, H.J.M. and Hermens, J.L.M. (1996). Partitioning of organic chemicals to polyacrylate coated solid phase microextraction (SPME) fibers: Kinetic behavior and quantitative structure-property relationships. *Analytical Chemistry*, **68**, 4458-4462.

Vaes, W.H.J., Urrestarazu Ramos, E., Hamwijk, C., van Holsteijn, I., Blaauboer, B.J., Seinen, W., Verhaar, H.J.M. and Hermens, J.L.M. (1997). Solid Phase Microextraction as a tool to determine membrane/water partition coefficients and bioavailable concentrations in *in vitro* systems. *Chemical Research in Toxicology*, **10**, 1067-1072.

Vaes, W.H.J., Urrestarazu Ramos, E., Verhaar, H.J.M., Cramer, C.J. and Hermens, J.L.M. (1998a). Understanding and estimating membrane-water partition coefficients: Approaches to derive quantitative structure property relationships. *Chemical Research in Toxicology*, **11**, 847-854.

Vaes, W.H.J., Urrestarazu Ramos, E., Verhaar, H.J.M. and Hermens, J.L.M. (1998b). Acute toxicity of non-polar versus polar narcosis: Is there a difference? *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **17**, 1380-1384.

Van Wezel, A.P., Cornelissen, G., Van Miltenburg, J.K. and Opperhuizen, A. (1996). Membrane burdens of chlorinated benzenes lower the main phase transition temperature in dipalmitoyl-phosphatidylcholine vesicles: Implications for toxicity by narcotic chemicals. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **15**, 203-212.

Vasiluk, L., Pinto, L.J. and Moore, M.M. (2005). Oral bioavailability of glyphosate: studies using two intestinal cell lines. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **24** (1), 153-160.

Verhaar, H.J.M., De Jongh, J. and Hermens, J.L.M. (1999). Modeling the bioconcentration of organic compounds by fish: A novel approach. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **33** (22): 4069-4072.

Veith, G.D., DeFoe, D.L. and Bergstedt, B.V. (1979). Measuring and estimating the bioconcentration factor of chemicals on fish. *Journal of Fisheries Research Board of Canada*, **36**, 1040-1048.

Veith, G.D. and Kosian, P. (1983). Estimating bioconcentration potential from octanol/water partition coefficients. In: Mackay, D., Paterson, S., Eisenreich, S.J., Simons, M.S. (Eds.). Physical behavior of PCBs in the Great Lakes, Ann Arbor Sciences Publishers, Ann Arbor, pp. 269-282.

Verbruggen, E.M.J. (1999). Predicting hydrophobicity, bioconcentration and baseline toxicity of complex organic mixtures. Utrecht University (PhD thesis). Utrecht, The Netherlands.

Verbruggen, E.M.J., Vaes, W.H.J., Parkerton, T.F., and Hermens, J.L.M. (2000). Polyacrylate-coated SPME fibers as a tool to simulate body residues and target concentrations of complex organic mixtures for estimation of baseline toxicity. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **34** (2), 324-331.

Versonnen, B., Arijs, K., Jeliazkova, N. and Vangheluwe, M. (2006). Development of a fish bioconcentration factor (BCF) gold standard database - Excel Database Manual. CEFIC-LRI project.

Voutsas, E., Magoulas, K. and Tassios, D. (2002). Prediction of the bioaccumulation of persistent organic pollutants in aquatic food webs. *Chemosphere*, **48**, 645-651.

Walker, P.A., Bury, N.R., and Hogstand, C.  (2007).  Influence of culture conditions on metal-induced responses in a cultured rainbow trout gill epithelium.  Environ Sci Technol 41:6505-6513.

Wei, D., Zhang, A., Wu, C., Han, S. and Wang, L. (2001). Progressive study and robustness test of QSAR model based on quantum chemical parameters for predicting BCF of selected polychlorinated organic compounds (PCOCs).*Chemosphere*, **44**, 1421-1428.

Weisbrod, A., Shea, D., LeBlanc, G., Moore, M. and Stegeman, J.J. (2000). Organochlorine bioaccumulation and risk for whales in a northwest Atlantic food web. *Marine Environmental Research*, **50** (1-5), 440-441.

Weisbrod, A.V., Shea, D., Moore, M.J. and Stegeman, J.J. (2001). Species, tissue and gender-related organochlorine bioaccumulation in white-sided dolphins, pilot whales and their common prey in the northwest Atlantic. *Marine Environmental Research*, **51** (1), 440-441.

Weisbrod, A.V., Burkhard, L.P., Arnot, J., Mekenyan, O., Howard, P.H., Russom, C., Boethling, R., Sakuratani, Y., Traas, T., Bridges, T., Lutz, C., Bonnell, M., Woodburn, K., Parkerton, T. (2006). Workgroup Report: Review of Fish Bioaccumulation Databases used to identify Persistent, Bioaccumulative, Toxic Substances. *Environmental Health Perspectives Online* (ehponline.org) 30 October 2006.

Wood, C.M., and Pärt, P. (1997). Cultured branchial epithelia from freshwater fish gills. *Journal of Experimental Biology,* **200**, 1047-1059.

Wood, C.M., Kelly, S.P., Zhou, B., Fletcher, M., O'Donnell, M., Eletti, B. and Pärt, P. (2002). Cultured gill epithelia as models for the freshwater fish gill. *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) - Biomembranes,* **1566** (1-2), 72-83.

Yalkowsky, S.H., Orr, R.J. and Valvani, S.C. (1979). Solubility and Partitioning 3. The solubility of halobenzenes in water. *Industrial and Engineering Chemistry Fundamentals*, **18**, 351-53.

Zok, S., Görge, G., Kalsch, W. and Nagel, R. (1991). Bioconcentration, metabolism, and toxicity of substituted anilines in the zebrafish (*Brachydanio rerio*). *Science of the Total Environment*, **109**/**110**, 411-421.

# Appendices to Section R.7.10

| | |
|---|---|
| Appendix R.7.10—1 | Considerations for difficult substances |
| Appendix R.7.10—2 | Databases |
| Appendix R.7.10—3 | Quality criteria for data reliability of a (flow-through) fish bioaccumulation study |

# Appendix R.7.10—1 Considerations for difficult substances

The estimation methods presented in Section R.7.10.3.2 were generally derived for non-ionised organic substances. They are therefore of limited usefulness for a large number of other substances, including complex mixtures and chemicals that are charged at environmental pH (such as inorganic compounds). These may be collectively termed *difficult substances*, and this appendix provides guidance on their assessment.

## Inorganic substances

The availability of inorganic substances for uptake may vary depending on factors such as pH, hardness, temperature and redox conditions, all of which may affect speciation. BCF values will therefore be influenced by water chemistry. In general, only dissolved ions are potentially available for direct uptake.

Whilst some organo-metallic substances (e.g. methyl-mercury) behave like non-polar organics and are taken up across cell membranes by passive diffusion, the uptake of many types of dissolved inorganic ions (particularly metals) largely depend on the presence of specific active transport systems (e.g. copper ATPases regulate the uptake and excretion of copper in cells, and occur in a wide range of species from bacteria to humans (Peña *et al*., 1999; Rae *et al*., 1999)). These systems are regulated by saturable kinetics, and the degree of uptake of a particular ion will also be strongly influenced by ligand binding and competitive interactions at the receptor site (e.g. Campbell, 1995; Mason and Jenkins, 1995). Once in the organism, the internal ion concentration may be maintained through a combination of active regulation and storage, which generally involves proteins or specific tissues rather than lipid (Adams, *et al*., 2000; McGeer, *et al*., 2003). Such homeostatic mechanisms allow the maintenance of total body levels of substances such as essential metals within certain limits over a range of varying external concentrations.

As a result of these processes, organisms may actively accumulate some inorganic substances to meet their metabolic requirements if environmental concentrations are low (leading to a high BCF). At higher concentrations, organisms with active regulation mechanisms may even limit their intake and increase elimination and/or storage of excess substance (leading to lower BCFs). There may therefore be an inverse relationship within a certain exposure concentration interval between exposure concentration and BCF value (McGeer, *et al*., 2003). Active body burden regulation has been shown to occur in many aquatic species. Other species will, however, tend to accumulate metals and store these in detoxified forms (e.g. calcium or phosphate based granules, methallothionein-like protein binding, etc.), thereby homeostatically regulating the toxic body burdens (Rainbow, 2002; Giguère *et al*., 2003). It must be recognized[5] however that in some cases the homeostatic regulation capacity may be exceeded at a given external concentration beyond which the substance will accumulate and become

[5] For some metals evidence indicates variation in BCF of around one order of magnitude when the water concentration varies over three orders of magnitude. The highest BCF values occur at the lowest exposure concentrations and generally BCF values at environmentally realistic concentrations should be used.

toxic. The relationship between accumulation and toxic effects for inorganic substances is complex, but is determined by the relative balance between the rates of uptake and depuration/detoxification (Rainbow, 2002).

The observed variability in bioaccumulation and bioconcentration data due to speciation and especially homeostatic regulation can therefore complicate the evaluation of data (Adams & Chapman, 2006). The data may be used for assessments of secondary poisoning and human dietary exposure. However, special guidance is required for classification of metals and inorganic substances are currently outside the scope of PBT assessments.

The octanol-water partition coefficient ($K_{ow}$) is not a useful predictive tool to assess the bioaccumulation potential for inorganic substances. Some indication may be given by read-across of bioaccumulation and toxicokinetic information from similar elements or chemical species of the same element. Factors such as ionic size, metabolism, oxidation state, etc., should be taken into account if sufficient data exist. This may limit the potential for read-across between different chemical species.

The OECD 305 is generally appropriate for determining a fish BCF, provided that the exposures are carried out under relevant environmental conditions and concentrations. Experimental bioaccumulation data should be assessed carefully on a case-by-case basis, paying particular attention to the dissolved exposure concentration. Based on the assessment of available data using expert judgement, there are two possibilities:

- A case may be made that the substance is unlikely to pose a risk to predatory organisms or humans exposed via the environment either:
  - based on the absence of food web biomagnification and information showing that organisms in higher trophic levels are not more sensitive than those in lower trophic levels after long-term exposure, or
  - because it is an essential element and internal concentrations will be well-regulated at the exposure concentrations anticipated.

Any such claims should be made on a case-by-case basis and substantiated with evidence (e.g. from field studies). It should be remembered that while a substance may be essential for a particular organism, it might not be essential for others.

- In the absence of the information mentioned above, bioconcentration factors for fish and other aquatic organisms are derived from the available data and taken into account in the CSA in the usual way. In the absence of suitable data, new studies must be performed. Considering the issues discussed above, an approach that allows the straightforward interpretation of BCF/BAF values has not been developed yet. Biomagnification factors may be more useful, although care must be taken in assessing trophic transfer potential. For example, the bioavailability of an inorganic substance to a bird or mammal may vary from that in aquatic species because of differences in detoxification mechanisms and digestive physiology, and this should be taken into account. Information may be obtained from field studies, although data may also be obtained from aquatic or terrestrial laboratory food chain transfer experiments.

## Complex mixtures (including petroleum substances)

Complex mixtures pose a special challenge to bioaccumulation assessment, because of the range of individual substances that may be present, and the variation in their physico-chemical and toxicological properties. It is generally not recommended to estimate an average or weighted BCF value because:

- the composition of the constituents in the aqueous phase may vary in a non-linear fashion with substance loading rate, so that the BCF will also vary as a function of loading;
- differences in analytical methods used to quantify the total substance may introduce significant uncertainties in interpreting results; and
- this approach fails to identify specific constituents that could exhibit a much higher bioconcentration potential than the overall mixture.

In principle, therefore, it is preferable to identify one or more constituents for further consideration that can be considered representative of other constituents in the mixture in terms of bioaccumulation potential (acting as a worst case in terms of read-across between the constituents – see Section R.7.10.3.2 in the main text for further guidance). This could include the establishment of *blocks* of related constituents (e.g. for hydrocarbon mixtures). The BCF would be established for each selected constituent in the usual way (whether by prediction or measurement), and these data can then be used to evaluate the likely range of BCF values for the constituents of a given mixture. The OECD 305 method should be used if possible (i.e. provided that the constituents can be monitored for separately). If a further confirmatory step is needed, the most highly bioaccumulative constituent(s) should be selected for bioaccumulation testing (assuming this can be extracted or synthesised).

It should be noted that branching or alkyl substitution sometimes enhances bioconcentration potential (e.g. due to a reduction in the biotransformation rate and/or an increase in the uptake clearance). Care should be taken to consider such factors when choosing a representative constituent. A form of *sensitivity analysis* may be useful in confirming the selection of constituents to represent a particular complex mixture. The logic/relevance behind selection of certain constituents for further testing may also depend on regulatory needs (e.g. for hazard classification the particular % cut off values for classification).

If it is not possible to identify representative constituents, then only a broad indication of bioaccumulation potential can be obtained. For example, it might be possible to derive a range of $K_{ow}$ values from a HPLC method, or a biomimetic approach could be used (based on measurement of total organic carbon). If a potential concern is triggered for bioaccumulation potential, expert advice will be needed to refine the results.

## Ionisable substances

In general, ionised organic substances do not readily diffuse across respiratory surfaces, although other processes may play a role in uptake (e.g. complex permeation, carrier-mediated processes, ion channels, or ATPases). Dissociated and neutral chemical species can therefore have markedly different bioavailabilities. It is therefore essential to know or estimate the pKa to evaluate the degree of ionization in surface waters and under physiological conditions (pH 3-9) (see Section R.7.1. for further details of the pKa and how to predict log $K_{ow}$ at different pH).

Fish BCFs of ionised substances can be estimated using appropriate QSARs (e.g. Meylan *et al*., 1999). In addition, the log BCF of an ionized substance may be estimated at any pH by applying a correction factor to the log BCF of the unionized form, based on the relationship between BCF and $K_{ow}$. This factor would be derived from the Henderson-Hasselbach equation as $\log(10^{pH-pKa}+1)$. However, this may lead to underestimates of the BCF in some circumstances, since the ionised form may be more accumulative than suggested by its $K_{ow}$ alone. For example, a correction factor of $\log(4^{pH-pKa}+1)$ was found to be more appropriate for a group of phenolic compounds by Saarikoski and Viluksela (1982). Escher *et al*. (2002) also showed that the $K_{ow}$ is not always a good indicator of biological membrane-water partitioning for ionised organic chemicals when there is reactivity with cell constituents.

It is therefore apparent that assumptions about the bioaccumulation behaviour of ionised substances may lead to underestimates of the BCF. Where this is likely to be a significant factor in an assessment, a bioconcentration test with fish may be needed. This should preferably be carried out at an ecologically relevant pH at which the substance is at its most hydrophobic (i.e. non-ionised form, as either the free acid or free base) using an appropriate buffer (e.g. for an acid this would be at a pH below its pKa; for a base, this would be at a pH above its pKa).

Where a quantitative estimate of the BCF of the ionised form is not possible, the role of pH should at least be discussed qualitatively in the assessment.

### Surface active substances (surfactants)

A chemical is *surface active* when it is enriched at the interface of a solution with adjacent phases (e.g. air). In general, surfactants consist of an apolar and a polar moiety, which are commonly referred to as the hydrophobic tail and the hydrophilic headgroup, respectively. According to the charge of the headgroup, surfactants can be categorised as anionic, cationic, non-ionic or amphoteric (Tolls & Sijm, 2000). This structural diversity means that bioaccumulation potential should be considered in relation to these subcategories rather than the group as a whole (see Tolls *et al.* (1994) for a critical review).

Surfactants may form micelles or emulsions in water, which can reduce the bioavailable fraction even though it appears that the substance is dissolved. This can cause data interpretation problems for fish BCF tests, and means that the $K_{ow}$ might not be measurable using the shake-flask or slow stirring methods (see Section R.7.1 for further details of how the $K_{ow}$ can be measured or estimated).

The quality of the relationship between log $K_{ow}$ estimates and bioconcentration depends on the category and specific type of surfactant involved. Other measures of hydrophobicity such as the critical micelle concentration (CMC) might be more appropriate in some cases (e.g. Roberts & Marshall, 1995; Tolls & Sijm, 1995). Indeed, a general trend of increasing bioconcentration with decreasing values of the CMC can be observed, confirming that bioconcentration increases with hydrophobicity as for other chemicals. Nevertheless, many straight alkyl chain surfactants are readily metabolised in fish, so that predicted BCFs may be overestimated (e.g. Tolls & Sijm, 1999; Tolls *et al.*, 2000; Comber *et al*., 2003). Therefore, the classification of the bioconcentration potential based on hydrophobicity measures (such as log $K_{ow}$) should be used with caution. Correlations of the bioconcentration behaviour with physico-chemical parameters can be expected only if:

a. the rate of biotransformation is the same across a surfactant series, or

b. biotransformation does not play a role (e.g. for branched alkyl chains, where bioconcentration will increase with increasing chain length) (Tolls & Sijm, 2000).

Measured BCF values are preferred.

An additional factor to consider is that commercial surfactants tend to be mixtures of chain lengths, each with its own BCF (e.g. Tolls, *et al.*, 1997 & 2000). The guidance for complex mixtures is therefore also applicable for commercial surfactants. If tests are needed it is recommended that they should be done with a single chain length where possible.

### Organic substances that do not partition to lipid

Bioconcentration is generally considered as a partitioning process between water and lipid, and other distribution compartments in the organism can usually be neglected (the water fraction may play a role for water-soluble substances (de Wolf *et al.*, 1994)). However, proteins have been postulated as a third distribution compartment contributing to bioconcentration (SCHER, 2005), and may be important for certain types of chemicals (e.g. perfluorosulphonates, organometallic compounds such as alkyl- or glutathione-compounds, for instance methyl mercury, methyl arsenic, etc.). Evidence for such a role may be available from mammalian toxicokinetics studies.

Protein binding in biological systems performs a number of functions (e.g. receptor binding to activate and/or provoke an effect; binding for a catalytical reaction with enzymes; binding to carrier-proteins to make transport possible; binding to obtain/sustain high local concentrations above water solubility, such as oxygen binding to haemoglobin, etc.). In some circumstances, binding may lead to much higher local concentrations of the ligand than in the surrounding environment.

Nevertheless, the picture may be complicated because the process is not necessarily driven purely by partitioning (binding sites may become saturated and binding could be either reversible or irreversible). Indeed, it has been postulated that measured BCFs may be concentration dependant due to protein binding (SCHER, 2004). In other words, bioconcentration is limited by the number of protein binding sites rather than by lipid solubility and partitioning. Further work is needed to conceptualize how protein binding might give rise to food chain transfer across trophic levels, and assess its relative contribution compared with other (lipids and water) distribution mechanisms.

In the absence of such studies, elimination studies can be useful for comparing half-lives of chemicals that may accumulate via proteins with those for other chemicals that are known to be bioaccumulative.

## References for Appendix R.7.10-1

Adams, W.J. and Chapman, P.M. (2006). Assessing the Hazard of Metals and Inorganic Metal Substances in Aquatic and Terrestrial Systems. SETAC.

Adams, W.J., Conard, B., Ethier, G., Brix, K.V., Paquin, P.R., Di Toro, D.M. (2000). The challenges of hazard identification and classification of insoluble metals and metal substances for the aquatic environment. *Human and Ecological Risk Assessment*, **6**, 1019-1038.

Campbell, P.G.C. (1995). Interactions between trace metals and aquatic organisms: A critique of the free-ion activity model. In Tessier, A. & Turner, A., Eds., Metal Speciation and Bioavailability in Aquatic Systems. John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, UK, pp 45-102.

Comber, M.H.I., de Wolf, W., Cavalli , L., van Egmond, R., Steber, J., Tattersfield, L. and Priston, R.A. (2003). Assessment of bioconcentration and secondary poisoning of surfactants. *Chemosphere*, **52**, 23-32.

de Wolf ,W., Mast, B., Yedema, E.S.E., Seinen, W. and Hermens, J.L.M. (1994). Kinetics of 4-chloroaniline in guppy *Poecilia reticulata*. *Aquatic Toxicology*, **28**, 65-78.

Escher, B.I., Eggen, R.I.L., Schreiber, U., Schreiber, Z., Vye, E., Wisner, B. and Schwarzenbach, R.P. (2002). Baseline toxicity (narcosis) of organic chemicals determined by *in vitro* membrane potential measurements in energy transducing membranes. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **36**, 1971-1979.

Giguère, A., Couillard, Y., Campbell, P.G.C., Perceval, O., Hare, L., Pinel-Alloul, B. and Pellerin, J. (2003). Steady-state distribution of metals among metallothionein and other cytosolic ligands and links to cytotoxicity in bivalves living along a polymetallic gradient. *Aquatic Toxicology*, **64**, 185-203.

Mason, A.Z. & Jenkins, K.D. (1995). Metal detoxification in aquatic organisms. In Tessier, A. & Turner, A., Eds., Metal Speciation and Bioavailability in Aquatic Systems. John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, UK, pp 479-608.

McGeer, J.C., Brix, K.V., Skeaff, J.M., DeForest, D.K., Brigham, S.I., Adams, W.J., Green, A. (2003). Inverse relationship between bioconcentration factor and exposure concentration for metals: implications for hazard assessment of metals in the aquatic environment. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **22**, 1017-1037.

Peña, M.M.O., Lee, J.and Thiele, D.J. (1999). A delicate balance: homeostatic control of copper uptake and distribution. *The Journal of Nutrition*, **129**, 1251-1260.

Rae, T.D., Schmidt, P.J., Pufahl, R.A., Culotta, V.C. and O'Halloran, T.V. (1999). Undetectable intracellular free copper: the requirement of a copper chaperone for superoxide dismutase. *Science*, **284**, 805-808.

Rainbow, P.S. (2002). Trace metal concentrations in aquatic invertebrates: why and so what? *Environmental Pollution*, **120**, 497-507.

Saarikoski, J. and Viluksela, M. (1982). Relation between physico-chemical properties of phenols and their toxicity and accumulation in fish. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety*, **6**, 501-512.

Roberts, D.W. and Marshall, S.J. (1995). Application of hydrophobicity parameters to prediction of the acute aquatic toxicity of commercial surfactant mixtures. *SAR and QSAR in Environmental Research*, **4**, 167-176.

SCHER (2005). Opinion on RPA´s report "Perfluorooctane Sulphonates Risk reduction strategy and analysis of advantages and drawbacks" (Final report - August 2004). Opinion adopted 4th plenary of 18 March 2005.

Tolls, J., Haller, M., De Graaf, I., Thijssen, M.A.T.C. and Sijm, D.T.H.M. (1997). Bioconcentration of LAS: experimental determination and extrapolation to environmental mixtures. *Environmental Science & Technology*, **31**, 3426-3431.

Tolls, J. and Sijm, D.H.T.M. (1995). A preliminary evaluation of the relationship between bioconcentration and hydrophobicity for surfactants. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **14**, 1675-1685.

Tolls, J. and Sijm, D.T.H.M. (1999). Bioconcentration and biotransformation of the nonionic surfactant octaethylene glycol monotridecyl ether $^{14}$C-C13EO8. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **18**, 2689-2695.

Tolls, J. and Sijm, D.T.H.M. (2000). Estimating the properties of surface-active chemicals. In: R.S. Boethling and D. Mackay, Handbook of property estimation methods for chemicals. Environmental and health sciences. Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, FL, USA.

Tolls, J., Sijm, D.T.H.M. and Kloepper-Sams, P. (1994). Surfactant bioconcentration - a critical review. *Chemosphere*, **29**, 693-717.

# Appendix R.7.10—2 Databases

Several BCF databases are available and the most widely used are described in this appendix (see Weisbrod *et al*. (2006) for additional details). Many of the earlier studies recorded in databases suffer from a number of potentially serious flaws, which are gradually being better understood. For example, the methodology may not always be consistent with the current OECD 305 test guideline. It is therefore important that the version of the database being interrogated is recorded, because the content may change over time. For example, following a quality control of the Syracuse database, a number of values were amended or removed. In a number of cases, the data quality might not have been checked, and in these circumstances the original source should also be sought so that the quality can be confirmed.

## AQUIRE / ECOTOX Database

A very well known and widely used database is the AQUatic toxicity Information REtrieval (AQUIRE) (US-EPA, 1995) system, which is a part of the United States Environmental Protection Agency's ECOTOX Database (US-EPA ECOTOX Database). In 2005 more than 480,000 test records, covering 6,000 aquatic and terrestrial species and 10,000 chemicals, were included. The primary source of ECOTOX data is the peer-reviewed literature, with test results identified through comprehensive searches of the open literature. The bioconcentration factor sub-file includes 13,356 aquatic chemical records and 19 terrestrial chemical records, collected from over 1,100 publications, and encompassing approximately 700 distinct chemicals. The use of the on-line database is free and can be accessed through the Internet at http://cfpub.epa.gov/ecotox/.

## Japan METI – NITE Database

The METI database is a collection of around 800 BCF values collected by the Japanese National Institute of Technology and Evaluation (NITE). The database collects bioconcentration values obtained according to the OECD 305C method (older data) as well as the more recent version of the OECD TG. The test fish (carp) is exposed to two concentrations of the test chemical substance in water under flow-through conditions. All tests are conducted by Good Laboratory Practice (GLP) laboratories and their test results are reviewed by the joint council of 3 ministries (METI: Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry; MHLW: Ministry of Health, Labour and Welfare; MoE: Ministry of the Environment). The BCF data on about 800 existing chemicals are available at the Chemical Risk Information Platform (CHRIP) of the NITE's web site (http://www.safe.nite.go.jp/ english/index.html). Maximum and minimum BCFs at two different exposure concentrations for the test species (Carp, *Cyprinus carpio*) are reported. The duration of exposure and exposure method (usually flow through) and lipid content are usually provided and occasionally the analytical method (e.g. gas chromatography) is included. However, it has to be highlighted that earlier studies were not conducted in accordance with the current OECD 305 method. Some used high levels of solvents/dispersants (which may give unreliable BCF values) and others were conducted far in excess of the test substance's water solubility limit (which may produce an underestimate of the BCF value).

## US National Library of Medicine's Hazardous Substances Database

The Hazardous Substances Database (HSDB) is a toxicology database on the National Library of Medicine's (NLM) Toxicology Data Network (TOXNET®). HSDB focuses on the toxicology of potentially hazardous chemicals. It includes over 4800 chemical records. All data are referenced and peer-reviewed by a Scientific Review Panel composed of expert toxicologists and other scientists (U.S. NLM 1999). Although the data are primary source referenced there is little information about the details of the experiments used o measure BCF. The Hazardous Substances Database is accessible, free of charge, via TOXNET at: http://toxnet.nlm.nih.gov.

## Environmental Fate Database

The Environmental Fate Database (EFDB) database (Howard *et al*., 1982, Howard *et al*., 1986) was developed by the Syracuse Research Corporation (SRC) under the sponsorship of the US-EPA. This computerized database includes several interconnected files, DATALOG, CHEMFATE, BIOLOG, and BIODEG. DATALOG is the largest file and it contains over 325,000 records on over 16,000 chemicals derived from the literature. The bioaccumulation and bioconcentration information is available only for a small fraction of the chemicals in the database. The database does not differentiate between BCF values that are derived experimentally based on testing the substance in question in a bioconcentration test or mathematically without such testing. A large number of reported BCF data is based on calculated values. The database can be accessed via the Internet at http://www.srcinc.com/what-we-do/efdb.aspxand is free of charge.

## Syracuse BCFWIN Database

The Syracuse BCFWIN database (http://esc.syrres.com/esc/bcfwin.htm) was developed by Meylan and co-workers to support the BCFWIN program (Syracuse Research Corporation, Bioconcentration Factor Program BCFWIN). The database development is described in Meylan *et al*. (1999). Experimental details captured in the database included fish species, exposure concentration of test compound, percent lipid of the test organism, test method (equilibrium exposure *versus* kinetic method), test duration if equilibrium method, and tissue analysed for test compound (whole body, muscle fillet, or edible tissue). Data obtained by the kinetic method were preferred to data from the equilibrium method, especially for compounds with high log $K_{ow}$ values, which are less likely to have reached equilibrium in standard tests. Where BCF data were derived from the equilibrium method, and steady state may not have been reached, especially for chemicals with high log $K_{ow}$ values, the data chosen was in the middle of the range of values with the longest exposure times. Low exposure concentrations of test compound were favoured in order to minimize the potential for toxic effects and maximize the likelihood that the total concentration of the substance in water was equivalent to the bioavailable fraction. Warm-water fish were preferred to cold-water fish because more data were available for warm-water species. Fish species were preferred in the order fathead minnow > goldfish > sunfish > carp > marine species (this list is not all inclusive). Fathead minnow data were generally selected over data from other species because such data were available for a large number of chemicals, and because they have been used to develop log $K_{ow}$-based BCF estimation methods. The database contains 694 discrete compounds. BCFWIN database was recently updated (Stewart *et* *al*., 2005) to improve prediction for hydrocarbons. The current BCFWIN hydrocarbons database contains BCF data on 83 hydrocarbons.

### Handbook of Physico-chemical Properties & Environmental Fate

The Handbook of Physico-chemical Properties & Environmental Fate (Mackay *et al*., 2000), published by CRC, consists of several volumes, each covering a set of related organic chemical substances. It is available in book form and in a CD ROM format. The database provided in the book includes data on bioconcentration factors, octanol-water partition coefficient and several other physical chemical properties relevant for environmental fate assessments. Details about the BCF data have not been retrieved.

### Canadian database

Environment Canada has developed an empirical database of bioconcentration factor (BCF) and bioaccumulation factor (BAF) values to assess the bioaccumulation potential of approximately 11,700 organic chemicals included on Canada's Domestic Substances List (DSL) as promulgated by The Canadian Environmental Protection Act 1999 (Government of Canada, 1999). These data were collected for non-mammalian aquatic organisms, i.e. algae, invertebrates and fish, from approximately October 1999 until October 2005. The BCF data were compiled from a Canadian in-house database, the peer-reviewed literature and the above mentioned databases. Dietary feeding studies were not included in the data compilation. Values were compiled only if the test chemical and test organism could clearly be identified. BCF data were evaluated for quality according to a developed set of criteria based on standard test protocols (e.g. OECD 305E). The database includes approximately 5,200 BCF and 1,300 BAF values for approximately 800 and 110 chemicals, respectively. A data confidence evaluation is included based on the data quality criteria and methods. The database is available on request through the Environment Canada-Existing Substances branch.

### ESIS Database

The European chemical Substances Information System (ESIS) is an IT System which provides information on chemicals related to EINECS (European Inventory of Existing Commercial chemical Substances), ELINCS (European List of Notified Chemical Substances), NLP (No-Longer Polymers), HPVCs (High Production Volume Chemicals) and LPVCs (Low Production Volume Chemicals). ESIS includes more than 2600 records. Chemicals can be searched by chemical name, CAS number, and molecular formula. The use of the on-line database is free and can be accessed via the Internet (http://ihcp.jrc.ec.europa.eu/our_databases/esis/). Summary information on species, chemicals, test methods and test results are abstracted but no data quality control is provided. The data are available for downloading as pdf files.

### CEFIC – LRI bio-concentration factor (BCF) Gold Standard Database

A research project has been funded by the CEFIC-LRI (www.cefic-lri.org/) to establish a BCF Gold Standard Database. The development of a database holding peer reviewed high quality BCF is considered a valuable resource for future development of alternative tests. In addition, having such a database – into which new data points could also be added – would considerably ease the potential to develop and begin the process for validation of alternative BCF studies. For example the database could act as a validation set of chemicals, for alternatives. The project will develop quality criteria, gather fish bioconcentration data, and critically review them. To prevent duplication of work, close contacts are held with other related projects, the HESI-ILSI bioaccumulation group, the SETAC advisory group and other interested parties.

.

## Appendix R.7.10—3 Quality criteria for data reliability of a (flow-through) fish bioaccumulation study

Preliminary information on test substance

Water solubility:

Vapour pressure:

Log $K_{ow}$:

Acute fish toxicity $LC_{50}$:

Stability/biodegradability:

Other comments:

| Item | Relevant criteria | Check |
|---|---|---|
| GLP certificate | - | |
| Test substance identity | Difficult substance? | |
| Test species and selection of test animals | Of single stock of similar length & age. Held for minimum of 14 d under conditions described in the *Note* below. | |
| Water quality | Total hardness 10-250 mg/l $CaCO_3$, pH 6 – 8.5, PM < 5 mg/l, TOC 2 mg/l. See guideline for other parameters. | |
| Test media preparation | Vehicle used? The use of solvents and dispersants is not recommended. | |
| Test duration | Uptake phase 28 d or until steady-state is reached. Must be < 60 d. Is % of steady state indicated?<br><br>Depuration phase half uptake phase (< twice length of uptake phase) | |
| Test concentration range | Minimum 2 concentrations with the highest ~1% of $LC_{50}$ and > 10 times higher than detection limit. Ten-fold difference between concentrations. | |
| Number of animals/replicates | Minimum four fish/sampling for each concentration. Weight of smallest > 2/3 largest. One control. | |
| Loading | 0.1 – 1 g/l (as long as dissolved oxygen is > 60% saturation) | |

| Item | Relevant criteria | Check |
|---|---|---|
| Feeding | 1 – 2% body weight/d. | |
| Light-dark cycle | 12-16 h illumination/day | |
| Test temperature | ± 2°C (as appropriate for the test species) | |
| pH deviation | No variation > 0.5 unit | |
| Dissolved oxygen concentration | > 60% saturation | |
| Maintenance of concentration | To within 80% of initial in water. Explanation of losses? | |
| Analytical method used? | May use radio-labelled test substance if substance-specific analysis is difficult. High radio-labelled BCFs may require identity of degradation products. | |
| Appropriate analysis interval? | Fish – at least 5 times during uptake and 4 times during depuration.<br>Water – as fish.<br>Both may need higher frequency depending on kinetics. | |
| Mortality | Mortality/adverse effects in control and treated fish must be < 10% (or <5%/month if test is extended, not > 30% overall) | |
| Results & statistical treatment | Steady-state or kinetic BCF based both on whole body weight and, for log $K_{ow}$ > 3, lipid content. Growth correction considered? | |

Additional comments (e.g. do results need correction for lipid or growth)/test satisfactory?:

Test Result:

Note: Recommended fish species

| Species | Test temperature, °C | Total length, cm |
|---|---|---|
| *Danio rerio* | 20 - 25 | 3 ± 0.5 |
| *Pimephales promelas* | 20 - 25 | 5 ± 2 |
| *Cyprinius carpio* | 20 - 25 | 5 ± 3 |
| *Oryzias latipes* | 20 - 25 | 4 ± 1 |
| *Poecilia reticulate* | 20 - 25 | 3 ± 1 |
| *Lepomis macrochirus* | 20 - 25 | 5 ± 2 |
| *Oncorhynchus mykiss* | 13 - 17 | 8 ± 4 |
| *Gasterosteus aculeatus* | 18 – 20 | 3 ± 1 |

Fish must be held for at least 14 days under the following conditions:

- Fed regularly on a similar diet to that employed in the test.
- Mortalities recorded after 48 hours settling-in period; if (i) deaths occur in >10% of population in 7 d, reject entire batch, (ii) 5 – 10 % acclimate for additional 7 d, (iii) < 5 % accept the batch.

Free from diseases and abnormalities and should not receive veterinary treatment 14 d prior to the test and during the test)

## R.7.10.8 Terrestrial Bioaccumulation

Information on chemical accumulation in terrestrial organisms is important for wildlife and human food chain exposure modelling as part of the chemical safety assessment. This report considers the data that can be gathered from test and non-test methods for earthworms and plants, since these can be related to a clear strategy and standardised test guidelines. Further, the accumulation in terrestrial food chains is addressed briefly. Information on accumulation in earthworms is used for the assessment of secondary poisoning, and it can also be a factor in decisions on long-term soil organism toxicity testing. Information on plant uptake is used to estimate concentrations in human food crops and fodder for cattle. Information on terrestrial food chains can be used in expanding the food chain for secondary poisoning and can be used in the bioaccumulation assessment in the PBT assessment.

Accumulation in other relevant media (e.g. transfer of a substance from crops to cattle to milk) is considered in Chapter R.16.

It is further noted that the concept of terrestrial bioaccumulation builds where relevant on the same one for the aquatic compartment, but the database underpinning the former is much smaller. Bioaccumulation assessments in the terrestrial compartment are more uncertain than similar ones for the aquatic compartment.

### Metrics used in terrestrial bioaccumulation

Uptake of a chemical by a soil-dwelling organism is a complex process determined by the properties of both the substance and the soil, the biology of the organism and climatic factors (UBA, 2003). For risk assessment, this complexity tends to be ignored, and the process is expressed in terms of simple ratios.

The bioaccumulation from soil to terrestrial species is expressed by the biota-to-soil accumulation factor, defined as:

$$\mathrm{BSAF} = \frac{C_o}{C_s}$$

where BSAF is the biota-soil accumulation factor (dimensionless), $C_o$ is the chemical concentration in the whole organism (mg/kg wet weight), $C_s$ is the chemical concentration in whole soil (i.e. pore water and soils) (mg/kg wet weight). Often the BSAF values are normalised to the lipid content of the organisms and the organic carbon content of the soil to obtain more informative results.

Alternatively, the concentration in the organism may be related to the concentration in soil pore water. The resulting ratio is a bioconcentration factor and is defined as:

$$\mathrm{BCF} = \frac{C_o}{C_{pw}}$$

where BCF is the bioconcentration factor (L/kg), $C_o$ is the chemical concentration in the whole organism (mg/kg wet weight), $C_{pw}$ is the chemical concentration in soil pore water (mg/L).

These partition coefficients can be used to estimate the concentration of a chemical in an organism living in contaminated soil.

The biomagnification factor (BMF) and the trophic magnification factor (TMF) are factors that are used to express the transfer of a substance in the terrestrial food chain. The biomagnification factor is defined as:

$$\mathrm{BMF} = \frac{C_{predator}}{C_{prey}}$$

where BMF is the biomagnification factor ($kg_{prey}/kg_{predator}$), $C_{predator}$ and $C_{prey}$ are the chemical concentration in the whole organism (mg/kg wet weight) of a predator and its prey. To obain comparable results, the BMF is often normalized to the lipid content of both predator and prey.

The trophic magnification factor is obtained from the slope of the log-transformed normalised concentrations of organisms in the entire food chain as a function of trophic level of those organisms. The TMF is calculated as:

$$\mathrm{TMF} = 10^{Slope}$$

#### R.7.10.8.1 Objective of the guidance on terrestrial bioaccumulation

The aim of this document is to provide guidance to registrants on the assessment of all available data on a substance related to terrestrial bioaccumulation, to allow a decision to be made on the need for further testing (with earthworms or, where appropriate, plants).

### R.7.10.9 Information requirements for terrestrial bioaccumulation

Data on terrestrial bioaccumulation are not explicitly referred to in REACH, but it assumed that an exposure assessment for secondary poisoning and indirect exposure to humans via the environment will be a standard element of the chemical safety assessment at the level of 10 t/y or higher. The need to perform such an assessment will depend on a) substance properties and b) relevant emission and exposure (see Chapter R.16 for more details). If an assessment is required, this will involve an estimate of accumulation in earthworms and plants.

Section 9.3.4 of Annex X to REACH indicates that further information on environmental fate and behaviour may be needed for substances manufactured or imported in quantities of 1,000 t/y or higher, depending on the outcome of the chemical safety assessment. This may include a test for earthworm and/or plant accumulation.

Furthermore, if a registrant carrying out the chemical safety assessment (CSA) identifies in the PBT/vPvB assessment that a definitive conclusion cannot be derived, and the PBT/vPvB assessment shows that additional information on bioaccumulation is needed for deriving a conclusion, the necessary additional information must be generated by the registrant. This obligation applies for all ≥ 10 t/y registrations (see Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA* for further details). In such a case, the only possibility to refrain from testing or generating other necessary information is to treat the substance "*as if it is a PBT or vPvB*" (see Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA* for details).

#### R.7.10.9.1 Available information on terrestrial bioaccumulation earthworms

Earthworm bioaccumulation test

OECD TG 317 (OECD, 2010) is a standard test guideline for earthworms, which is applicable to stable neutral organic chemicals, metallo-organics, metals, and other trace elements. In principle, worms (e.g. *Eisenia fetida*) are exposed to the test substance in a well-defined artificial soil substrate or natural soil at a single test concentration that is shown to be non-toxic to the worms. After 21 days' (earthworms) or 14 days' (enchytraeids) exposure, the worms are transferred to a clean soil for a further 21 days (earthworms) or 14 days (enchytraeids). In both the uptake and elimination phases the concentration of the test substance in the worms is monitored at several time points.

When steady state is reached, the steady state biota-soil accumulation factor ($BSAF_{ss}$) is calculated, while the kinetic biota-soil accumulation factor ($BSAF_k$) is calculated from the uptake and depuration rate constants.

The contribution of the gut contents to the total amount of substance accumulated by the worms may be significant, especially for substances that are not easily taken up in tissues but strongly adsorb to soil. The worms are therefore allowed to defecate before analysis, which gives more information on the real uptake of the substance (although trace amounts sorbed to soil may still remain in the worms even after defecation). This is to obtain a measure of real uptake of the substance by the worms, which is important for a bioaccumulation assessement. However, if secondary poisoning is considered worms are ingested with gut content and this should be accounted for in the exposure assessment.

This is especially important for worms sampled during the uptake phase, which have contaminated soil as gut contents. As soon as the contaminated gut contents are replaced by clean soil in the depuration phase, defecation is no longer necessary before chemical analysis (in that case, the weight of the gut contents is estimated to account for dilution of the test item concentration by uncontaminated soil).

ASTM E1676-04 describes a similar method for bioaccumulation testing with the annelids *Eisenia fetida* and *Enchytraeus albidus* over periods up to 42 days (ASTM, 2004).

Relevant data might also be available from field studies or earthworm toxicity studies (e.g. if tissue concentrations are measured). The suitability of data derived from such studies to provide meaningful information on a substance's bioaccumulation potential, has to be assessed on a case-by-case basis.

(Q)SAR models for earthworms

The model of Jager (1998) is recommended as a reasonable worst case for an initial assessment of the earthworm bioconcentration factor, and provides a description of this tool. The only input term required is the octanol-water partition coefficient ($K_{ow}$), and an application range of log $K_{ow}$ 0-8 is advised. It was developed for a data set containing chlorobenzenes, pesticides. PCBs, PAHs, and chlorophenols. The equilibrium partitioning model is limited to mostly neutral organic compounds and does not explicitly consider biomagnification or biotransformation. With due consideration it may be applicable to certain ionisable organics.

In cases where the $K_{ow}$ is not a good indicator of bioconcentration (e.g. for ionic organic substances, metals or other substances that do not preferentially partition to lipids), either an alternative model for that specific substance or class of substances should be used, or an empirical BCF estimated from structural analogues. For example, Smit *et al*. (2000) provide a review of different equations for a limited number of metals.

Comparison of earthworms with benthic organisms

The results of bioaccumulation tests with suitable sediment-dwelling invertebrate species (e.g. the oligochaete *Lumbriculus variegatus*) may provide useful comparative information that can be used in a *Weight-of-Evidence* approach, if available. Further information on this test is given in the aquatic accumulation chapter. However, caution is warranted as a thorough comparison of bioaccumulation data for terrestrial and benthic species is currently lacking.

Terrestrial plants

Plants and crops can be contaminated by the transfer of chemicals from:

- soil (including solids and pore water) via the roots and translocation,
- air via the gas phase or particle deposition, and
- soil particles that splatter and stick on the foliage.

The need to assess these routes is determined by the approach adopted for the chemical safety assessment (see Chapter R.16).

Plant uptake test

Currently, no standardized test guidelines are specifically designed to develop bioaccumulation metrics (e.g., BCF, BAF) in plants (Gobas et al 2016). For simplicity in the discussion that follows, the term BAF will be used as a surrogate to represent all potential measures of bioaccumulation that have been used with plants.

A guideline that addresses plant uptake, translocation, and metabolism of chemicals (e.g. USEPA 2012) could provide data useful in determining whether a chemical accumulates in plants. The USEPA test guideline (2012) OCSPP 850.4800 outlines procedures for conducting a mass balance study of the distribution of a chemical in environmental matrices and different components of the plant under root or foliar exposure for use in determining human and livestock food safety. Although these guidelines were not specifically designed to assess bioaccumulation in plants, they do evaluate the ability of pesticides to be taken up by and translocate throughout plants, using a maximum exposure scenario, or characterize metabolic or degradation pathways to identify residues of concern.

The data collected could allow for the calculation of a bioaccumulation metric(s) based on the ratio of the concentration of the chemical in the plant relative to the concentration in the relevant environmental matrices, provided steady-state conditions are approximated. During the conducting of the test, the method of exposure (i.e. spraying, dusting, biosolids-amended soil, soil spiking), route of exposure (i.e. leaf and/or root), quantification of exposure, and characteristics of plant growth matrices would need to be considered carefully for the determination of a realistic bioaccumulation metric.

The guideline permits exposure via foliage as well as roots (and consequently provides advice on how to handle gaseous and volatile substances). Three test concentrations are recommended, with the number of replicates depending on the method of chemical analysis (fewer being required if radioanalysis is used). The test duration and number of plants selected are not specified, but should provide sufficient biomass for chemical analysis. Several species are suggested, including food crops and perennial ryegrass.

In principle, in case the test chemical concentrations are measured in the environmental matrices, the collected data could allow for the calculation of a bioaccumulation metric(s). In order for this metric to be realistic, the method, route and quantification of exposure as well as characteristics of plant growth matrices have to be considered carefully.

Relevant data might also be available from non-guideline studies, field studies or plant toxicity studies (e.g. if tissue concentrations are measured), as well as from guideline toxicity studies with terrestrial plants, for which additional chemical analysis in the plants has been performed, e.g. according to OECD TG 208 (OECD, 2006).

(Q)SAR models for plants

Several models are possibly useful for estimating chemical accumulation in plants. A review of these models has been made. The validation of all models is hampered by the lack of experimental standardised data in plants (Gobas *et al.*, 2016).

For most of the models, the only input required is the $K_{ow}$, but additional simple physico-chemical properties (e.g. molecular weight, vapour pressure and water solubility) are needed for some. As discussed in Gobas *et al.* (2016) and elsewhere, the applicability domain of the current plant models may be limited due to insufficient test data for a broad range of chemistry (i.e. range of $K_{OW}$, pKa, MW) and non-standardised testing.

Biomagnification in the terrestrial food chain

Similarly to the aquatic food chain, in the terrestrial food chain, accumulation in higher trophic levels may occur as well, where small birds and mammals serve as prey for terrestrial predators, such as raptors and mustelids (Jongbloed *et al*., 1994, Armitage et al., 2007). This would lead to a default example terrestrial food chain that is defined as:

soil → earthworm/plant → worm or plant-eating birds or mammal → predator

Usually, to assess this type of information only field data or modelling data are available that assess the accumulation in birds and mammals in the terrestrial environment. More information on the interpretation of field data or modelling data is given below.

QSAR for terrestrial food chain

Several models exist to estimate the biomagnification in terrestrial avian and mammalian species and food webs. Models have been developed for neutral, nonionic substances undergoing passive transport. These models are based on the $K_{ow}$ and $K_{oa}$ of the chemical. Depending on the food web modelled, substances have the potential to biomagnify if the log $K_{oa}$ > ~5-6 in combination with a log $K_{ow}$ > ~2. Models for ionogenic substances and substances that are not accumulating by hydrophobic partitioning are lacking. There is further need to develop estimation methods for the rate of biotransformation and dietary assimilation efficiencies for all levels of the terrestrial food web (Gobas *et al*., 2016).

### R.7.10.10 Evaluation of available information on terrestrial bioaccumulation

### Test data on terrestrial bioaccumulation

Experience with the evaluation of specific earthworm and plant bioaccumulation tests is limited, since they are rarely requested for industrial and consumer chemicals. Jager *et al*. (2005) provide some information on earthworm bioassays. Data obtained using standard methods are preferred. Non-guideline studies in particular need to be evaluated with care. Factors to be considered in general include:

- Where possible, the exposure duration should be sufficient to enable steady state to be achieved, in particular for highly hydrophobic substances (e.g. log $K_{ow}$ >6). However, for most root crops, and most hydrophobic compounds, it may take much longer than the growth period to reach steady state. In such cases, crops should be monitored over their entire growing season.

- The test concentration should be ecologically relevant and should not cause significant toxic effects on the organism, while it also needs to be above the limits of quantification.

- Tissue sampling for plants should be relevant for the substance of interest (in terms of its expected distribution in root, foliage, etc.), and the requirement of the exposure assessment (e.g. vegetables should be considered whole rather than peeled, etc.).

- If plant root is the tissue of interest, there are several factors to consider. Pot sizes should not restrict root development. The surface area-volume ratio may be important (i.e. is the surface area large in relation to the volume of the root?) (Trapp, 2002).

- Sometimes plants are grown hydroponically to allow for simplified uptake and elimination phase logistics. However, this is not an environmentally relevant mode of exposure and a chemical's ability to bioaccumulate can vary significantly as compared with a natural growth substrate (Hoke *et al.*, 2015; Karnjanapiboonwong *et al.*, 2011).

- In addition to organic carbon content, pH and soil texture are additional parameters that have been shown to cause variability in bioaccumulation in plants. As such, these have to be taken into account when selecting the type and number of test soils (Hoke *et al.*, 2015).

- Bioaccumulation also varies across plant species (e.g. Huelster *et al.*, 1994) and plant cultivars (Inui *et al.*, 2008).

- It is important to ensure that the organism is cleaned and (for worms) allowed to void its gut contents prior to analysis (since small amounts of retained contaminated soil could give false results). The inclusion of a elimination phase with clean soil as prescribed in OECD TG 317 will help to assess the influence of gut content on the organism's concentration.

- Analytical methods should be sensitive enough to detect the substance in both the soil and the organism tissue, and may require radiolabelled substances. It should be noted that radioanalysis does not by itself give information about the amount of intact chemical within the organism, and preferably it should be supported by parent compound analysis so that the contribution of metabolites can be assessed.

- Whole soil tests tend to provide a BSAF, which is not very informative as indicator of bioaccumulation potential since it also reflects sorption behaviour.

A better indicator would be the BCF based on the freely dissolved (bioavailable) soil pore water concentration. Ideally, this should be done using direct analytical measurement (which may involve sampling devices such as SPME fibres (e.g. Van der Wal *et al*., 2004)). If no analytical data are available, the pore water concentration may be estimated using suitable partition coefficients, although it should be noted that this might introduce additional uncertainty to the result.

- The data may need to be transformed for use in a standardised way in the exposure assessment. For example:
  - Where possible, accumulation data should be normalised to the default lipid content of the organism. If lipid is not expected to play an important role in partitioning behaviour, such normalisation might not be appropriate. If applicable a different kind of normalisation could be considered (e.g. on dry weight or protein content).
  - If data are available regarding the variation in accumulation with soil type, etc., this should be described. If the organic carbon content of the test soil differs from the default soil used to derive the PEC (e.g. if the soil has been amended with sewage sludge), data should be normalised to the default organic matter/carbon content, if valid. This is relevant for neutral organic compounds; for metals and ionic or polar organic substances, soil parameters other than organic carbon may be more important and the validity of normalisation should be investigated first.

In the case of worms, the total amount of the substance present in the worm (i.e. tissue plus gut contents) is still a relevant parameter for secondary poisoning, because a predator will consume the whole worm. The fraction of the substance that is sorbed to the gut content can be estimated by assuming a fixed weight percentage of the gut content. The fraction of the gut content is by default set to 0.1 $kg_{dry\ weight\ soil}/kg_{wet\ weight\ worm}$ (Jager *et al.*, 2003; Jager, 2004).

An ILSI/HESI terrestrial bioaccumulation workshop was held in January 2013 and a publication by Hoke *et al.* (2016) presents a review of the application of laboratory-based approaches for terrestrial bioaccumulation assessment of organic chemicals.

## Non-testing data on terrestrial bioaccumulation

The use of QSARs will be mainly determined by the guidance for the chemical safety assessment as described by the report on exposure tools, which provides an evaluation of the recommended models, including their applicability domain. If a substance is outside of the applicability domain, then the results should be used with caution in the assessment. The use of any model should be justified on a case-by-case basis.

The 2013 ILSI/HESI terrestrial bioaccumulation workshop resulted in a publication by Gobas *et al.* (2016) which presents a review of the current terrestrial bioaccumulation models and their merits and limitations. In this review models for accumulation in terrestrial food chains are presented next to the above mentioned models for terrestrial invertebrates and plants. It should noted that also the models for assessing accumulation through the terrestrial food chain are mainly restricted to neutral, nonionic organic chemicals. In addition to $K_{ow}$ another important physicochemical property for terrestrial bioaccumulation in air-breathing organisms is the octanol-air partition coefficient ($K_{oa}$).

General guidance on read-across and categories is provided in the report on aquatic accumulation (see Section R.7.10.3.2).

### R.7.10.10.1 Field data

General guidance for the evaluation of data from field studies is provided in the report on aquatic accumulation (see Section R.7.10.3.2). The exposure scenario for the chemical safety assessment considers spreading of sewage sludge to land over a 10-year period, and consequently the exposure history of the soil should be described. Some of the factors described in Section R.7.10.4.2 are also relevant.

As noted previously, a terrestrial bioaccumulation workshop was sponsored by ILSI/HESI in 2013 and a publication by van den Brink (2016) discusses the use of field studies to examine the potential bioaccumulation of chemicals in terrestrial organisms. In this review a comparison with aquatic bioaccumulation is made. The differences with the aquatic environment and the special points of attention for the terrestrial environment with regard to the derivation and use of experimentally derived endpoints from field data are highlighted.

### R.7.10.10.2 Exposure considerations for terrestrial bioaccumulation

An assessment of secondary poisoning or human exposure via the environment is part of the chemical safety assessment. Triggering conditions are provided in Chapter R.16 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*.

## R.7.10.11 Conclusions for terrestrial bioaccumulation

There is a hierarchy of preferred data sources to describe the potential of a substance to bioaccumulate in terrestrial species, as follows:

- In general, preference is given to reliable measured BCF data on the substance itself in terrestrial plants or earthworms. It should be noted that experimental data on highly lipophilic substances (e.g. with log $K_{ow}$ above 6) will have a much higher level of uncertainty than BCF values determined for less lipophilic substances. A BSAF might be an alternative measure.
- Next in order of preference comes reliable measured BCF data from the sediment worm *Lumbriculus variegatus* as a surrogate for earthworm data. Although differences are not expected to be large in principle, comparative information is lacking. Read-across on BCF data from a sediment organism to a terrestrial organism should therefore be made on a case-by-case basis,

taking account of any differences in organic carbon and pore water contents between sediment and soil.

- Field data might also be useful at this *tier*, as part of a *Weight-of-Evidence* argument (these require careful evaluation and will not be available for the majority of substances). Apart from field data on accumulation in terrestrial plants and invertebrates also data on biomagnification in terrestrial food chains should be taken into account.

- The third tier of information concerns data from non-testing methods.

- The lowest tier concerns indications and rules based on physico-chemical properties. Nevertheless, the log $K_{ow}$ is a useful screening tool for many substances, and it is generally assumed that non-ionised organic substances with a log $K_{ow}$ below 3 (4, GHS) are not significantly bioaccumulative for the aquatic environment. No such triggers can be given for the terrestrial environment. In additition, log $K_{oa}$ >5 is a useful trigger to assess whether biomagnification in the terrestrial food chain might occur.

In principle, the available information from testing and non-testing approaches, together with other indications such as physico-chemical properties, must be integrated to reach a conclusion that is fit for the regulatory purpose regarding the bioaccumulation of a substance. A scheme is presented in the report for aquatic accumulation, and the broad principles are the same for terrestrial species. In summary:

- Make a preliminary analysis of bioaccumulation potential based on the structure and physico-chemical properties of the substance, as well as information about its degradation products in the environment. It may be possible at this stage to decide that the substance is unlikely to be significantly bioaccumulated.

- Evaluate any existing *in vivo* data, including field data if available.

- Identify possible analogues, as part of a group approach if relevant.

- Evaluate non-testing data (e.g. QSARs, including whether $K_{ow}$ and $K_{ow}$-based models are relevant, and read-across, etc.).

- Weigh the different types of evidence and examine whether there is any single piece of information that by itself merits a conclusion on terrestrial bioaccumulation. Difficulties in reaching a conclusion on the BAF, and/or BMF may indicate the need for further testing.

| |
|---|
| ADME and dissociation should be addressed here as well. |

It should be noted that if a substance has a measured fish BCF that is significantly lower than predicted by QSAR, it cannot be concluded that the earthworm BCF will also be lower than the predicted value. This is because biotransformation processes in particular are more extensive in fish than earthworms (few compounds are appreciably biotransformed by earthworms).

| |
|---|
| References needed for this |

#### R.7.10.11.1 Concluding on suitability for Classification and Labelling

Data on accumulation in earthworms and plants are not used for classification and labelling.

#### R.7.10.11.2 Concluding on suitability for PBT/vPvB assessment

For judging the suitability of the information for PBT/vPvB assessment, see guidance in Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*.

#### R.7.10.11.3 Concluding on suitability for use in Chemical Safety Assessment

In general, predicted BSAF (or pore water BCF) and BMF values (whether from QSAR or read-across) can be used for the initial assessment of secondary poisoning and human dietary exposure. If a prediction is not possible, measured BSAF (e.g. OECD TG 317) data will be necessary at the 1,000 t/y level.

### R.7.10.12 Integrated testing strategy (ITS) for terrestrial bioaccumulation

#### R.7.10.12.1 Objective / General principles

The objective of the testing strategy is to provide information on terrestrial bioaccumulation in the most efficient manner so that costs are minimised. In general, test data will only be needed at the 1,000 t/y level, if the chemical safety assessment identifies the need for further terrestrial bioaccumulation information. Furthermore, collection and/or generation of additional terrestrial bioaccumulation data are required for the PBT/vPvB assessment in all cases where a registrant carrying out the CSA cannot derive a definitive conclusion based on aquatic accumulation data, either (i) ("The substance does not fulfil the PBT and vPvB criteria") or (ii) ("The substance fulfils the PBT or vPvB criteria") in the PBT/vPvB assessment, and the PBT/vPvB assessment shows that additional information on terrestrial bioaccumulation would be needed for deriving one of these two conclusions. This obligation applies for all ≥ 10 t/y registrations (see Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA* for further details).

#### R.7.10.12.2 Preliminary considerations

If predicted BSAF and BMF values indicate potential risks for either wildlife or humans, the need for further terrestrial bioaccumulation testing should be considered as part of an overall strategy to refine the PEC with better data, including:

- more realistic release information (including risk management considerations);
- other fate-related parameters such as determination of more reliable soil partition coefficients (which may allow a better estimate of the soil pore water concentration) or degradation half-life.

These data might also be needed to clarify risks for other compartments, and a sensitivity analysis may help to identify the most relevant data to collect first.

In addition, if further sediment organism bioaccumulation or soil organism toxicity tests are required, it may be possible to gather relevant data from those studies.

Depending on the magnitude of the risk ratio and the uncertainty in the effects data, it might also be appropriate in some circumstances to derive a more realistic NOAEL value from a long-term feeding study with laboratory mammals or birds, although this would not usually be the preferred option.

### R.7.10.12.3 Testing strategy for terrestrial bioaccumulation

In general, the octanol-air partition coefficient ($K_{oa}$) and octanol-water partition coefficient ($K_{ow}$) can be used as the initial input for terrestrial bioaccumulation models at a screening level for most neutral organic substances.

If the substance is outside the domain of the models, and a BSAF and BMF cannot be established by other methods (such as analogue read-across or derived from field data), a test may be needed at the 1,000 t/y level. Similarly, if a risk is identified that is not refinable with other information, a test will usually be necessary.

Standard test guideline studies are preferred. The choice of test will depend on the scenario that leads to a risk, and the test species should reflect the specific route of uptake that may be expected from the properties of the individual substance under consideration. For example, where a model predicts the highest concentration to be in roots, the test species would be a relevant food crop.

Field monitoring might be an alternative or supplementary course of action to laboratory testing in special cases, especially for more hydrophobic substances that may take a long time to reach steady state. This will not be a routine consideration, because of the difficulty in finding soils that may have had an adequate exposure history.

## R.7.10.13 References for terrestrial bioaccumulation

ASTM (2004). E1676-04. Standard Guide for Conducting Laboratory Soil Toxicity or Bioaccumulation Tests with the Lumbricid Earthworm *Eisenia fetida* and the Enchytraeid Potworm *Enchytraeus albidus*. ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA, United States.

Environment Agency (2006). Evaluation of models for predicting plant uptake of chemicals from soil. Science Report – SC050021/SR. Environment Agency, Bristol, UK.

Gobas FAPC, Burkhard LP, Doucette WJ, Sappington KG, Verbruggen EMJ, Hope BK, Bonnell MA, Arnot JA, Tarazona JV. 2016. Review of existing terrestrial bioaccumulation models and terrestrial bioaccumulaiotn modelling needs for organic chemicals. IEAM 12: 123-134.

Hoke R, Huggett D, Brasfield S, Brown B, Embry M, Fairbrother A, Kivi M, Leon-Paumen M, Rrosser R, Salvita D, Scroggins R. 2016. Review of laboratory-based terrestrial bioaccumulation assessment approaches for organic chemicals: Current status and future possibilities. IEAM 12: 109-122.

Huelster, A., Muller, J.F., Marschner, H. (1994) Soil-plant transfer of polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins and dibenzofurans to vegetables of the cucumber family (Cucurbitaceae). *Environmental Science and Technology* 28, 1110-1115.

Inui, H., Wakai, T., Gion, K., Kim, Y., Eun, H. (2008) Differential uptake for dioxin-like compounds by zucchini species. *Chemosphere* 73, 1602-1607.

Jager, T. (1998). Mechanistic approach for estimating bioconcentration of organic chemicals in earthworms (*Oligochaeta*). *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **17**(10), 2080-2090.

Jager T, Fleuren RHLJ, Roelofs W, de Groot A (2003) Feeding activity of the earthworm Eisenia andrei in artificial soil. Soil Biology & Biochemistry **35**, 313–322.

Jager T (2004) Modeling ingestion as an exposure route for organic chemicals in earthworms (Oligochaeta). Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety **57**, 30–38

Jager, T., Van der Wal, L., Fleuren, R.H.L.J., Barendregt, A. and Hermens, J.L.M. (2005). Bioaccumulation of organic chemicals in contaminated soils: evaluation of bioassays with earthworms. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **38**, 293-298.

Karnjanapiboonwong, A., Chase, D.A., Canas, J.E., Jackson, W.A., Maul, J.D., Morse, A.N., Anderson, T.A. (2011) Uptake of 17 alpha-ethynylestradiol and triclosan in pinto bean, *Phaseolus vulgaris*. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety* **74**, 1336-1342.

Kelly, B.C. and Gobas, F.A.P.C (2003). An Arctic terrestrial food-chain bioaccumulation model for persistent organic pollutants. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **37**, 2966-2974.

OECD (2006). OECD Guidelines for the testing of chemicals TG 208, Terrestrial Plant Test: Seedling Emergence and Seedling Growth Test. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, Paris, France.

OECD (2010). OECD Guidelines for the testing of chemicals, TG 317, Bioaccumulation in Terrestrial Oligochaetes. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, Paris, France.

Samsøe-Peterson L., Rasmussen, D. and Trapp, S. (2003). Modelling af optagelse af organiske stoffer I grøntsager og frugt. Miljøprojekt Nr. 7652003, Report to the Danish EPA, Denmark.

Smit, C.E., van Wezel, A.P., Jager, T. and Traas, T.P. (2000). Secondary poisoning of cadmium, copper and mercury: implications for the Maximum Permissible Concentrations and Negligible Concentrations in water, sediment and soil. RIVM Report 601501009, Bilthoven, The Netherlands (www.rivm.nl).

Trapp, S. and Matthies, M. (1995). Generic one-compartment model for uptake of organic chemicals by foliar vegetation. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **29**(9), 2333-2338.

Trapp, S. (2002). Dynamic root uptake model for neutral lipophilic organics. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, **21**(1), 203-206.

Travis, C.C. and Arms, A.D. (1988). Bioconcentration of organics in beef, milk, and vegetation. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **22**, 271-274.

UBA (2002). UBA-Texte 07/02: Standardisierung und Validierung eines Bioakkumulationstests mit terrestrischen Oligochaeten. Anhang Richtlinienentwurf "Bioaccumulation: Soil test using terrestrial oligochaetes". Umweltbundesamt, Berlin, Germany.

UBA (2003). UBA-Texte 66-03: Assessing the bioavailability of contaminants in soils: a review on recent concepts. Research Report 201 64 214. Umweltbundesamt, Berlin, Germany.

US-EPA (2012). Ecological Effects Test Guidelines. OCSPP 850.4800 Plant Uptake and Translocation Test. United States Environmental Protection Agency, Office for Prevention, Pesticides and Toxic Substances.

Van den Brink NW, Arblaster JA, Bowman SR, Condre JM, Elliot JE, Johnson MS, Muir DCG, Natal-da-Luz T, Rattner BA, Sample BE, Shore RF. 2016. Use of terrestrial field studies in the derivation of bioaccumulation potential of chemicals. IEAM 12: 135-145.

Van der Wal, L., Jager, T., Fleuren, R.H.L.J., Barendregt, A., Sinnige, T.L., Van Gestel, C.A.M. and Hermens, J.L.M. (2004). Solid-phase microextraction to predict bioavailability and accumulation of organic micropollutants in terrestrial organisms after exposure to a field-contaminated soil. *Environmental Science and Technology*, **38**, 4842-4848.

## R.7.10.14 Avian Toxicity

Information on (long-term) avian toxicity only needs to be considered for substances supplied at 1,000 t/y or more (Section 9.6.1 of Annex X to REACH). The data are used to assess the secondary poisoning risks to predators following chronic exposure to a substance via the fish and earthworm food chains[6]. Given that mammalian toxicity is considered in detail for human health protection, the need for additional data for birds must be considered very carefully – new tests are a last resort in the data collection process. However, birds are fundamentally different from mammals in certain aspects of their physiology (e.g. the control of sexual differentiation, egg laying, etc.), and so mammalian toxicity data are of limited predictive value for birds. This document describes how to assess information that already exists, and the considerations that might trigger new testing with birds.

It should be emphasised that there is a marked lack of relevant data available for industrial and consumer substances, and further research could be performed to:

- establish relative sensitivities of birds and mammals following chronic exposures,
- establish the validity of read-across arguments between structurally related substances,
- investigate *in vitro* approaches for birds, and
- identify structural alerts for chronic avian toxicity.

The guidance should therefore be reviewed as more experience is gained.

Readers should also refer to guidance related to the mammalian toxicokinetics (see Section R.7.12), repeated dose toxicity (see Section R.7.5) and reproductive toxicity (see Section R.7.6) endpoints for further relevant information.

### R.7.10.14.1 Definition of avian toxicity

The aim of an avian toxicity test is to provide data on the nature, magnitude, frequency and temporal pattern of effects resulting from a defined exposure regime (Hart *et al.*, 2001). The three standard avian tests typically measure:

- lethal and delayed effects of short-term oral exposures (lasting minutes to hours, representing gorging behaviour, diurnal peaks in feeding (e.g. dawn and dusk) and products which depurate or dissipate very rapidly);
- lethal effects of medium-term dietary exposures (lasting hours to days, representing scenarios with relatively high exposures over several days); or

[6] Inhalation tests with birds are not considered necessary for industrial and consumer chemicals, since outdoor air concentrations are unlikely to exceed limits that will be set to protect human health (and other vertebrates by assumption). Dermal toxicity tests do not need to be considered for similar reasons.

- chronic lethal and reproductive effects of long-term dietary exposures (lasting up to 20 weeks).

Exposures are expressed in terms of either a:

- *concentration* of the substance in the food consumed by the birds (e.g. milligrams (mg) of test substance per kilogram (kg) of food[7]), or
- *dose* expressed relative to body weight (e.g. mg test substance/kg body weight (per day, if more than a single exposure)).

The main results from an avian toxicity study include:

- the limit dose at which no mortality occurs ($LD_0$);
- a median lethal dose or concentration, at which 50% of birds die ($LD(C)_{50}$);
- a 'no observed effect' level, at which no effects of specified type occur, or a concentration at which either a defined level of effect is seen in x% of tested individuals, or an average deviation of x% is seen when compared to the untreated control ($EC_x$); and
- a statement of the type and frequency of effects observed in a specified exposure scenario (e.g. in a field study).

Other types of information may include the slope of a dose-response relationship, 95% confidence limits for the median lethal level and/or slope, and the time at which effects appear.

### R.7.10.14.2 Objective of the guidance on avian toxicity

Avian toxicity data are used in the assessment of secondary poisoning[8] risks for the aquatic and terrestrial food chains in the CSA. In the context of PBT/vPvB assessment (see Section R.7.10.18), avian toxicity data cannot be directly (numerically) compared with the T criterion (see Section 1.1.3 of Annex XIII to REACH). However, reprotoxicity studies or other chronic data on birds, if they exist, should be used in conjuction with other evidence of toxicity as part of a weight-of-evidence determination to conclude on substance toxicity (a NOEC ≤ 30 mg/kg food in a long term bird study should in this context be considered as a strong indicator of fulfilment of the T criterion).

## R.7.10.15 Information requirements for avian toxicity

Annex X to REACH indicates that information on long-term or reproductive toxicity to birds should be considered for all substances manufactured or imported in quantities of

[7] Units of mg/kg may also be expressed as parts per million (ppm).

[8] Secondary poisoning concerns the potential toxic impact of a substance on a predatory bird or mammal following ingestion of prey items (i.e. fish and earthworms) that contain the chemical. Accumulation of chemicals through the food chain may follow many different pathways along different trophic levels. This assessment is required for substances for which there is an indication for bioaccumulation potential (Appendix R.7.10—1).

1,000 t/y or more. Since this endpoint concerns vertebrate testing, Annex XI to REACH also applies, encouraging the use of alternative information. Although not listed in column 2 of Annex X to REACH, there are also exposure considerations (see Section R.7.10.17.4).

Although not specified at lower tonnages, existing data may be available for some substances. These are most frequently from acute studies, and this document provides guidance on their interpretation and use. Nevertheless, data from long-term dietary studies are the most relevant because:

- Few (if any) scenarios are likely to lead to acute poisoning risks for birds, and
- Evidence from pesticides suggests that chronic effects cannot be reliably extrapolated or inferred from acute toxicity data (Sell, undated).

**PBT/vPvB assessment:**

In the context of the PBT/vPvB assessment, if the registrant cannot derive a definitive conclusion (i) ("The substance does not fulfil the PBT and vPvB criteria") or (ii) ("The substance fulfils the PBT or vPvB criteria") in the PBT/vPvB assessment using the relevant available information, he must, based on Section 2.1 of Annex XIII to REACH, generate the necessary information, regardless of his tonnage band (for further details, see Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*).

The general presumption is that avian toxicity testing will not normally be necessary. At the same time, care must be taken not to underestimate the potential hazard to birds. New studies should only be proposed following careful consideration of all the available evidence.

### R.7.10.16 Available information on avian toxicity

The following sections summarise the types of data that may be available from laboratory tests.

Avian toxicity tests are often carried out for substances with intentional biological activity as a result of regulatory approval requirements (especially active substances used in plant protection products, but also veterinary medicines and biocides). They are rarely performed for most other substances. Although REACH does not apply to such products, they are relevant in this context as a source of analogue data.

There are currently no European databases for pesticides, biocides or veterinary medicines, although some are in development (e.g. the Statistical Evaluation of available Ecotoxicology data on plant protection products and their Metabolites (SEEM) database). Current pesticide data sources include:

- the British Crop Protection Council Pesticide Manual (BCPC, 2003),
- the German Federal Biological Research Centre for Agriculture and Forestry (BBA) database (http://www.bba.de/english/bbaeng.htm),
- the Institut National de la Recherche Agronomique (INRA) AGRITOX database (www.inra.fr/agritox/php/fiches.php),
- the footprint database (http://sitem.herts.ac.uk/aeru/iupac/, and

- several US-EPA databases (http://www.epa.gov/pesticides/).

General searches might retrieve documents from regulatory agencies or the EXTOXNET project (a co-operative project by the University of California-Davis, Oregon State University, Michigan State University, Cornell University, and the University of Idaho, http://extoxnet.orst.edu/). Finally, IUCLID contains unvalidated data sheets for high production volume substances, a few of which might include data on avian toxicity (http://esis.jrc.ec.europa.eu/).

### R.7.10.16.1 Laboratory data on avian toxicity

#### Testing data on avian toxicity

*In vitro* data

No specific avian *in vitro* methods are currently available or under development. A number of *in vitro* tests for assessing embryotoxic potential and endocrine disrupting properties in mammals have become available in recent years, and these are discussed in the specific guidance on reproductive and developmental toxicity (see Section R.7.6).

*In vivo* data

Table R.7.10—8 summarises the main existing test methods, as well as those proposed as draft OECD test guidelines. The guidelines for all three principal avian tests – acute, dietary and reproduction – are currently under review. Further details can be found in a Detailed Review Paper for Avian Two Generation Tests (OECD 2006a). It should be noted that acute tests will not be relevant to exposure scenarios normally considered for industrial and consumer chemicals, but they are included since the data might already be available for some substances.

A number of reviews of avian toxicity testing issues have been produced over the last decade, and these should be consulted if further details are required. All have a pesticide focus. The most up-to-date reviews are Hart *et al*. (2001), Mineau (2005), Bennett *et al*. (2005) and Bennett & Etterson (2006). Other useful sources of information include US-EPA (1982a, 1982b and 1982c), SETAC (1995), OECD (1996), EC (2002a and 2002b) and EPPO (2003).

Non-guideline toxicity studies may be encountered occasionally (e.g. egg exposure studies involving either injection or dipping). Such studies can be difficult to interpret due to the lack of standardised and calibrated response variables with which to compare the results. In addition, the exposure route will usually be of limited relevance to the dietary exposure route considered in the CSA. Metabolism in eggs may also be very different to that in the body. Such studies are therefore unlikely to provide information on use in quantitative risk assessment, although they might provide evidence of toxicity that requires further investigation.

#### Non-testing data on avian toxicity

(Q)SAR models

Toxicity to Bobwhite Quail following both 14-day oral and 8-day dietary exposure can be predicted for pesticides and their metabolites using a free web-based modelling tool called “DEMETRA” (Development of Environmental Modules for Evaluation of Toxicity of pesticide Residues in Agriculture) (http://www.demetra-tox.net/; Benfenati, *in press*). The model was developed using experimental data produced according to official guidelines, and validated using external test sets. A number of quality criteria have been addressed according to the OECD guidelines[9]. It is unclear at the moment whether this model will be useful for other types of substance.

No other Q(SAR) models are currently available.

[9] The ECB may wish to produce a QRF to provide details on domain, no. of chemicals in training set, etc.

**Table R.7.10—8 Summary of existing and proposed standardised avian toxicity tests**

| Test | Guideline | Summary of the test | Information derived |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Acute oral toxicity[10] | Draft OECD TG 223 (OECD, 2002)<br><br>USEPA/ OPPTS 850.2100 (US-EPA, 1996a) | The test involves direct exposure of birds to measured single oral doses of the test substance, followed by observation for a number of days. Administration is by gavage either in a suitable solvent vehicle or in gelatine capsules. The highest dose need not exceed 2,000 mg/kg bw.<br><br>Regurgitation should be avoided because it compromises the evaluation of toxicity. Lowering dose volume or changing carriers may reduce the incidence of regurgitation. | The test provides a quantitative measurement of mortality ($LD_{50}$ value), which acts as a standard index of inherent toxicity, since bird behaviour (i.e. dietary consumption) cannot influence the dose received. It is therefore useful as a general guide for range finding for other studies, and for comparative studies.<br><br>The results are relevant to very short timescale exposures, and cannot be used to indicate chronic toxicity. This test is therefore of low relevance for the assessment of food chain risks. |
| Dietary toxicity | OECD TG 205 (1984a)<br><br>USEPA/ OPPTS 850.2200 (US-EPA, 1996b) | This is a short-term test, in which groups of 10-day old birds are exposed to graduated concentrations (determined in a range-finding test) of the test substance in their diet for a period of 5 days, followed by a recovery period. Multiple oral dosing may be necessary for very volatile or unstable compounds.<br><br>The test is not designed to simulate realistic field conditions, or provide a good characterisation of sub-lethal effects. Other drawbacks include:<br><br>food avoidance[11], and lack of replication (which limits the power of the test to detect effects). | The test provides a quantitative measurement of mortality (e.g. 5-day $LC_{50}$ value) and can act as a range-finder for the chronic reproduction test (a full test is not necessary if the range-finding test shows that the $LC_{50}$ is above 5,000 mg/kg diet). |

[10] Efforts to combine these two test methods into one internationally harmonized test guideline are currently ongoing in the OECD Test Guideline Programme

[11] Food avoidance responses can influence a substance's hazard and also risk potential by restricting exposure, although this will vary between species. A draft OECD Guidance Document on Testing Avian Avoidance Behaviour is under development (OECD 2003). In the current revision of TG 205 the method will be revised to generate information that also can be used for the assessment of avoidance behaviour. There are no international protocols on avian repellency yet available. However a purpose of such a test i.e. the screening of repellent substances could be achieved by using the results of a revised dietary guideline (OECD, 2006b). Repellency is of limited

| Test | Guideline | Summary of the test | Information derived |
|---|---|---|---|
| Reproduction [12] | OECD TG 206 (1984b)<br><br>USEPA/ OPPTS 850.2300 (US-EPA, 1996c) | Breeding birds are exposed via the diet over a long-term (sub-chronic) period to at least three concentrations of the test substance. The highest concentration should be approximately one half of the acute dietary $LC_{10}$; lower concentrations should be geometrically spaced at fractions of the highest dose. An upper dose limit should be set at 1,000 ppm (unless this would cause severe parental toxicity).<br><br>The test substance should possess characteristics that allow uniform mixing in the diet. The test guideline cannot be used for highly volatile or unstable substances. | The test enables the identification of adverse effects on reproductive performance linked to gonadal functionality at exposure levels lower than those that cause serious parental toxicity.<br><br>The most important endpoint is the production of chicks that have the potential to mature into sexually viable adults. Other intermediate parameters are also measured (e.g. mortality of adults, onset of lay, numbers of eggs produced, eggshell parameters, fertility, egg hatchability and effects on young birds). These can give information on the mechanisms of toxicity that contributes to overall breeding success.<br><br>The test should provide a NOEC value (i.e. the concentration in adult diet that shows no reduction in the production of viable chicks) along with the statistical power of the test.<br><br>It is critical that all endpoints be taken into account when using the results from the test for risk assessment. The weight given to intermediate endpoints in the absence of a problem in overall chick production is a case-by-case decision which must be made after consideration of the possible or likely consequences in the wild. The ecological significance of effects on each of the parameters measured may differ. |

relevance for long-term endpoints involving only low concentrations of test substance. Further guidance, if needed, can be found in the references cited in the main text.

[12] Some work has been done to develop a one-gen test OECD draft TG (2000) Avian Reproduction Toxicity Test in the Japanese Quail or Northern Bobwhite) but this is not yet at a suitable stage to be discussed further.

| Test | Guideline | Summary of the test | Information derived |
|---|---|---|---|
| OECD TG 206 was not designed to accurately reflect a bird's full breeding cycle, and some ecologically important endpoints are not covered (e.g. the onset of laying, parental competence in incubation, and feeding of young birds). Although these might not always be significant gaps, further work is underway to develop a test that will be able to detect all the potential effects of endocrine disrupting chemicals, and this is described briefly below. | | | |
| Two-generation avian reproduction toxicity | Draft OECD TG proposal (OECD, 2006) | The proposed guideline aims to examine the effects of a chemical on a broad set of reproductive fitness and physiological endpoints in a quail species over two generations. However, several research areas have been identified, and an agreed test guideline is unlikely to be available for some time. | The test is designed to determine whether effects are a primary disturbance (with direct impacts on the endocrine system) or a secondary disturbance (with impacts on other target organs that cause endocrine effects) of endocrine function. Currently, endpoints to be covered include egg production and viability, hatching success, survival of chicks to 14 days of age, genetic sex, onset of sexual maturation, body weight, and male copulatory behaviour, gross morphology and histology of specific organs, as well as levels of sex hormones, corticosterone, and thyroid hormones. |

Read-across and categories

Experience of read-across approaches for avian toxicity is very limited for industrial and consumer chemicals. The same approach should therefore be adopted as for mammalian tests (see Section R.7.6 for specific guidance on reproductive and developmental toxicity).

In addition, it should be considered whether the chemical has any structural similarity to other substances to which birds are known to be especially sensitive, such as organophosphates, certain metals and their compounds (e.g. cadmium, lead, selenium) and certain pesticide or veterinary medicine active substances (e.g. DDT). Further research is needed to identify structural alerts for chronic avian toxicity.

### R.7.10.16.2 Field data on avian toxicity

Field data will not usually be available, and it is unlikely that a registrant will ever need to conduct a specific field study to look for bird effects (as sometimes required for pesticides). Recommendations on methodology are given in EC (2002a) and further discussion is provided in Hart *et al*. (2001) and SETAC (2005). The kind of data that result from such studies varies according to the test design, although they tend to focus on short-term impacts and are therefore of limited use for risk assessment of long-term effects.

Wildlife incident investigation or other monitoring schemes might rarely provide some evidence that birds are being affected by exposure to a specific substance. Interpretation is often complicated and it may be difficult to attribute the observed effects to a specific cause. However, such data can be used to support the assessment of risks due to secondary poisoning on a case-by-case basis.

## R.7.10.17 Evaluation of available information on avian toxicity

### R.7.10.17.1 Laboratory data on avian toxicity

#### Testing data on avian toxicity

*In vitro* data

No specific avian methods are currently available. The specific guidance on reproductive and developmental toxicity (see Section R.7.6) provides guidance on evaluation of some types of test that are relevant to mammalian reproduction. It should be noted that these are only relevant for one – albeit very important – aspect of long-term toxicity. In addition, these tests do not take metabolism into account, and metabolic rates and pathways may differ significantly between birds and mammals.

*In vivo* data

Ideally, test results will be available from studies conducted to standard guidelines with appropriate quality assurance, reported in sufficient detail to include the raw data. Data from other studies should be considered on a case-by-case basis. For example, expert judgement is needed to identify any deviations from modern standards and assess their influence on the credibility of the outcome. A non-standard test might provide an indication of possible effects that are not identified in other studies or evidence of very low or high toxicity. If the data are used, this must be scientifically justified.

For tests involving dietary exposure, stability and homogeneity of the substance in the food must be maintained. Results of studies involving highly volatile or unstable substances therefore need careful consideration, and it might not be possible to adequately test such substances or those that otherwise cannot be administered in a suitable form in the diet. In such cases, it is unlikely that birds would be exposed to the substance in the diet either, for similar reasons. If a vehicle is used, this must be of low toxicity, and must not interfere with the toxicity of the test substance. Validity criteria are given in the OECD guidelines.

Acute/short-term tests

Existing acute test data can be useful if no other avian data are available, although they are not preferred. Regurgitation/emesis can substantially reduce the dose absorbed in acute oral toxicity tests, and therefore affect the interpretation of the test results. Similarly, food avoidance in dietary tests may lead to effects related to starvation rather than chemical toxicity. Tests should therefore be interpreted carefully for any evidence of such responses - the test may not be valid if regurgitation occurs at all doses.

Long-term tests

A number of issues should be considered in the evaluation of long-term tests, as listed in Table R.7.10—9. In principle, only endpoints related to survival rate, reproduction rate and development of individuals are ecotoxicologically relevant.

**Table R.7.10—9 Summary of interpretational issues for long-term toxicity tests**

| Long-term testing issue | Comment |
|---|---|
| Category of endpoint | Reproduction tests include parental and reproductive endpoints. An endpoint relating to overall reproductive success should normally be selected to define the long-term NOEC. Depending on the individual case and the availability of data, this could be the reproduction rate, the survival or growth rate of the offspring, or behavioural parameters in adults or young.<br><br>In some cases, other endpoints (e.g. certain biochemical responses) may be more sensitive, although they might not be ecologically relevant. Guidance on interpretation of such data, if they are available, is provided in OECD (1996). In summary, any conclusions of biological significance must be based on changes that:<br><br>Occur in a dose-response fashion (i.e. more abundant or pronounced in higher exposure groups);<br><br>Are accompanied by confirmatory changes (i.e. differences in a biochemical parameter or organ weight, or histologically observable changes in tissue structure); and,<br><br>Most importantly, are related to an adverse condition that would compromise the ability of the animal to survive, grow or reproduce in the wild (e.g. pronounced effects on body weight and food consumption (if this is a toxic response and not caused by avoidance)). |

| Long-term testing issue | Comment |
|---|---|
| Statistical power | The NOEC is based on the most sensitive endpoint of the test as determined by the lack of statistical significance compared with the control. This does not necessarily equate to biological significance. For example, in a high quality (low variation coefficient, high power) avian reproduction test it may be possible to prove that a 5% deviation in hatchling weight is statistically significant, although this would not be detectable in normal tests. If the chick weight at day 14 is normal, such an effect should not be considered as biologically relevant.<br><br>The NOEC may therefore be used as a worst case value for risk assessment, but it may be possible to refine this if necessary by considering the ecological relevance of the effects seen at doses above the NOEC (e.g. see Bennett *et al*., 2005). |
| Time course of effects | Sublethal effects that are transient or reversible after termination of exposure are less relevant than continuous or irreversible effects (this may depend on how fast the reversal takes place). If reproductive effects in a multigeneration study are more pronounced in the second generation whereas in practice exposure will be restricted to a short time period then the reproductive NOEC after the first generation should be used as a possible refinement step (unless in exceptional cases, e.g. with suspected endocrine disrupters, where effects in the second generation may be attributable to a brief exposure period in the first generation). |
| Parental toxicity | Parental toxicity should be avoided if possible. Effects that are only observed in the concentration range that leads to clear parental toxicity need careful consideration. For example, a decline in egg laying may be the result of reduced feeding by the adult birds, and would therefore not be a reproductive effect. |
| Exposure considerations | For highly hydrophobic substances, or substances that are otherwise expected to be significantly accumulative, measurements of the substance in tissues should be considered as an additional endpoint to determine whether concentrations have reached a plateau before the end of the exposure period. |

## Non-test data on avian toxicity

(Q)SAR models

If QSAR models that have been developed for pesticides are used, their relevance for a particular substance should be considered and explained (especially in relation to the applicability domain). It is likely that QSAR approaches will not be suitable for the majority of substances for the foreseeable future, in terms of both the endpoints covered (i.e. acute effects only) and the chemical domain.

Read-across and categories

The same principles apply as for mammalian acute toxicity (see Section R.7.4), repeated dose toxicity (Section R.7.5) and reproductive toxicity studies (Section R.7.6). Ideally, the substances should have similar physico-chemical properties and toxicokinetic profiles, and information will be available about which functional groups are implicated in any observed avian toxicity. The comparison should take account of reproductive or other chronic effects observed in fish and mammals as well as birds. The absolute toxicity of a substance cannot be directly extrapolated from fish or mammals to birds, but relative sensitivities might provide enough evidence in some circumstances.

### R.7.10.17.2 Field data on avian toxicity

It will be very unusual for field studies to indicate chronic effects in wild birds, and these need to be considered case-by-case. Results should be interpreted with caution, and confounding factors addressed before deciding what level of any particular substance is linked to the observed effect. The relevance and statistical power of the study should also be assessed. Further discussion is provided in Hart *et al*. (2001) and OECD (1996).

### R.7.10.17.3 Remaining uncertainty for avian toxicity

Avian toxicity data are not available for the majority of substances. Assessments of secondary poisoning are therefore usually reliant on mammalian toxicity data. The relative sensitivities of birds and mammals following chronic exposures require further research. For example, there is some evidence from pesticide data that birds may be an order of magnitude more sensitive in some cases. The validity of read-across between analogue substances is also untested.

Even when studies are available, there are still many sources of uncertainty that need to be taken into account in the assessment of avian effects. Only a very few species are tested in the laboratory, and it is important to be aware that there is significant variation in response between species and individuals, and differences between laboratory and field situations (e.g. diet quality, stressors, differing exposures over time). Further details are provided in Hart *et al*. (2001). These issues are assumed by convention to be accounted for collectively using an extrapolation or assessment factor (see Section R.7.10.18). It should be noted that these factors have not been calibrated against the uncertainties.

In addition, it should be remembered that the model food chain for the screening assessment of secondary poisoning risks is relatively simplistic and reliant on a number of assumptions (see Section R.7.10.8 for further details). It may often be possible to refine the exposure scenario (e.g. by more sophisticated modelling, including use of more specific information about the most significant prey and predator organisms of the food chain considered concerning for example bioavailability of the substance in food and feeding habits and/or gathering better exposure information such as emission, degradation or monitoring data). Regardless of the calculations that are performed, it is always useful to perform a sensitivity analysis, i.e. list those items that have some associated uncertainty, and discuss whether these uncertainties can be quantified together with their overall impact on the conclusions of the assessment.

For complex mixtures, the toxicity test result is likely to be expressed in terms of the whole substance. However, the exposure concentration may be derived for different representative components, in which case the PEC/PNEC comparison will require expert judgement to decide if the toxicity data are appropriate for all components, and whether further toxicity data are needed for any specific component.

### R.7.10.17.4 Exposure considerations for avian toxicity

No specific exposure-related exclusion criteria are provided in column 2 of Annex X.

In pesticide risk assessment, decisions on the need for reproduction tests may depend on whether adult birds are exposed during the breeding season (EC, 2002a). However, it is highly unlikely that the use of an industrial or consumer chemical would be so restricted as to exclude breeding season exposure. In some cases, the use pattern might limit exposure to birds. For example, production and use might only take place at a small number of industrial sites with very low releases, with low probability of any significant release from products (an example might be a sealant additive). In cases where the exposure is considered negligible, an appropriate justification should be given, taking care that this covers all stages of the substance's life cycle.

If releases to air, water and/or soil can occur, then the need to perform a new avian toxicity test at the 1,000 t/y level should be decided following a risk assessment for secondary poisoning. It should be noted that the exposure of birds is generally only considered for the fish and earthworm food chains following the release of a substance via a sewage treatment works[13]. The need to conduct a secondary poisoning assessment is triggered by a number of factors (see Section R.16.4.3.5 for further guidance). If these criteria are not met, then further investigation of chronic avian toxicity is unnecessary. For example, it is unlikely that a secondary poisoning risk will be identified for substances that:

- are readily biodegradable, and
- have a low potential for bioaccumulation in fish and earthworms (e.g. a fish BCF below 100, or in the absence of such data on neutral organic substances a log $K_{ow}$ below 3).

These properties may therefore be used as part of an argument for demonstrating low exposure potential for birds, although care may be needed (e.g. high local concentrations could still be reached in some circumstances, for example due to widespread continuous releases).

## R.7.10.18 Conclusions for avian toxicity

The aim is to derive a PNEC for birds based on the available data. Given the absence of reliable QSARs and *in vitro* methods, in most cases it is expected that an initial attempt to estimate avian toxicity can be made by read-across from suitable analogue substances (possibly as part of a category). The preferred value must be scientifically justified for use in the assessment.

### R.7.10.18.1 Concluding on suitability for PBT/vPvB assessment

In the context of PBT/vPvB assessment, avian toxicity data should be used in conjuction with other evidence of toxicity as part of a weight-of-evidence determination to conclude on substance toxicity. If the existing avian toxicity study is of poor quality, or the effect is unclear or based on only minor symptoms, an additional study might be needed if the decision is critical to the overall assessment, in which case a limit test would be preferred. The ecological significance of the effect should also be considered (e.g. how

[13] It may sometimes be appropriate to model exposure of marine predators, in which case the scenario might not involve a sewage treatment stage.

important is a sub-lethal effect compared to those of natural stressors, and what would be their effect on population stability or ecosystem function?). Further guidance is provided in Bennett *et al*. (2005).

Further guidance on criteria is provided in Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*.

#### R.7.10.18.2 Concluding on suitability for use in chemical safety assessment

Data obtained from species used in standard test methods are assumed to be representative of all species (including marine). Since the scenario under consideration concerns the effects of a chemical on birds via their diet, only toxicity studies using oral exposure are relevant. Dietary studies are preferred, since these are most relevant to the exposure route under investigation. Oral gavage studies might provide some evidence of very high or low acute toxicity in some cases, which could be used as part of a *Weight-of-Evidence* argument provided that a reasoned case is made. Egg dipping studies are not relevant, although they might indicate an effect that requires further investigation.

### R.7.10.19 Integrated testing strategy (ITS) for avian toxicity

#### R.7.10.19.1 Objective / General principles

In general, a test strategy is only relevant for substances made or supplied at levels of 1,000 t/y or higher (although there may be a need for further investigation if a risk is identified at lower tonnage based on existing acute data). Furthermore, collection and/or generation of additional avian toxicity data are required for the PBT/vPvB assessment in all cases where a registrant, while carrying out the CSA, has identified is substance as P and B but cannot draw an unequivocal conclusion on whether the T criterion in Annex XIII to REACH is met or not and avian toxicity testing would be needed to draw a definitive conclusion on T. This obligation applies for all ≥ 10 tpa registrations (see Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA* for further details).

The general presumption is that avian toxicity testing will not normally be necessary. At the same time, care must be taken not to underestimate the potential risks faced by birds. New studies should only be proposed following careful consideration of all the available evidence, and the objective of the testing strategy is therefore to ensure that only *relevant* information is gathered.

#### R.7.10.19.2 Preliminary considerations

The need for chronic avian toxicity testing is explicitly linked to the secondary poisoning assessment. A decision on the need to conduct avian testing may be postponed if other actions are likely to result from the rest of the environmental (or human health) assessment. For example:

- No further testing on birds is necessary if the substance is a potential PBT or vPvB substance on the basis of other data (the relevant PBT test strategy should be followed first). If such properties were confirmed, then further animal testing would be unnecessary since long-term effects can be anticipated.

- The exposure assessment may need to be refined if risks are initially identified for the aquatic or terrestrial environments. This may include the recommendation of improved risk management measures.
- A test with birds can await the outcome of any further chronic mammalian testing proposed for the human health assessment (unless it is already suspected that birds may be more sensitive, e.g. because of evidence from analogue substances).

Three main cases can be distinguished where further testing may be an option:

- **Only acute avian toxicity data are available**. A decision on the need for further chronic testing will depend on the outcome of the risk assessment using a PNEC based on these data, in comparison to the conclusions for mammalian predators. For example, if a risk is identified for birds but not mammals, a chronic test will allow the $PNEC_{bird}$ to be refined.
- **Only a poor quality chronic study is available**. If the risk is borderline (e.g. the PEC is only just greater or less than the resulting PNEC), a replacement study might be necessary to provide more confidence in the conclusion.
- **No avian toxicity data are available**. A decision must be made as to whether this represents a significant data gap or not. It is assumed that a risk characterisation based on the available mammalian toxicity data set will give an indication of the possible risks of the chemical to higher organisms in the environment (care should be taken to consider any effects that have been excluded as irrelevant for human health). However, given the lack of information on relative sensitivities between birds and mammals, avian testing may be required if:
  - the substance has a potential for contaminating food chains – for example, because it is not readily biodegradable and is accumulative (e.g. fish BCF above 100, or other indications of bioaccumulation from mammalian tests such as low metabolic rate, high affinity for fat tissues, long period to reach a plateau concentration in tissues, or slow elimination rate), and
  - there is evidence of toxicity in mammalian repeat dose or reproduction tests.
    As a toxicity testing trigger *only*, it is suggested that the $PNEC_{mammal}$ is reduced by a factor of 10 to derive a *screening* $PNEC_{bird}$: if the subsequent risk characterisation ratio is above 1, and the exposure assessment cannot be refined further, then avian toxicity data should be sought (see Section R.7.10.19.3).

In all cases before a new toxicity test is performed, efforts should first be made to refine the PEC (including consideration of risk management measures) because the exposure scenario is based on a number of conservative assumptions. If avian testing is necessary, a limit test might be appropriate.

### R.7.10.19.3 Testing strategy for avian toxicity

This assumes that chronic avian toxicity needs to be addressed. If no suitable analogue data exist (which will often be the case), or there is some doubt about the validity of the read-across, further testing is required on the substance itself. This may also be the case if the substance is part of a larger category for which avian toxicity data are limited (in which case it might be possible to develop a strategy to provide data on several related substances, based on a single (or few) test(s). The substance that appears the most toxic to mammals and fish should be selected for further testing with birds in the first instance).

The avian reproduction test (OECD TG 206) should be conducted to provide a reliable chronic NOEC. It may be possible to conduct a limit test (based on the highest PEC multiplied by 30): if no effects are observed at this limit concentration then no further investigation is necessary. A judgment will be needed as to whether this approach is likely to offer any disadvantage compared to a full test (e.g. the substance may be part of a category, where further information on dose-response may be needed). Exceptions to this test may be as follows:

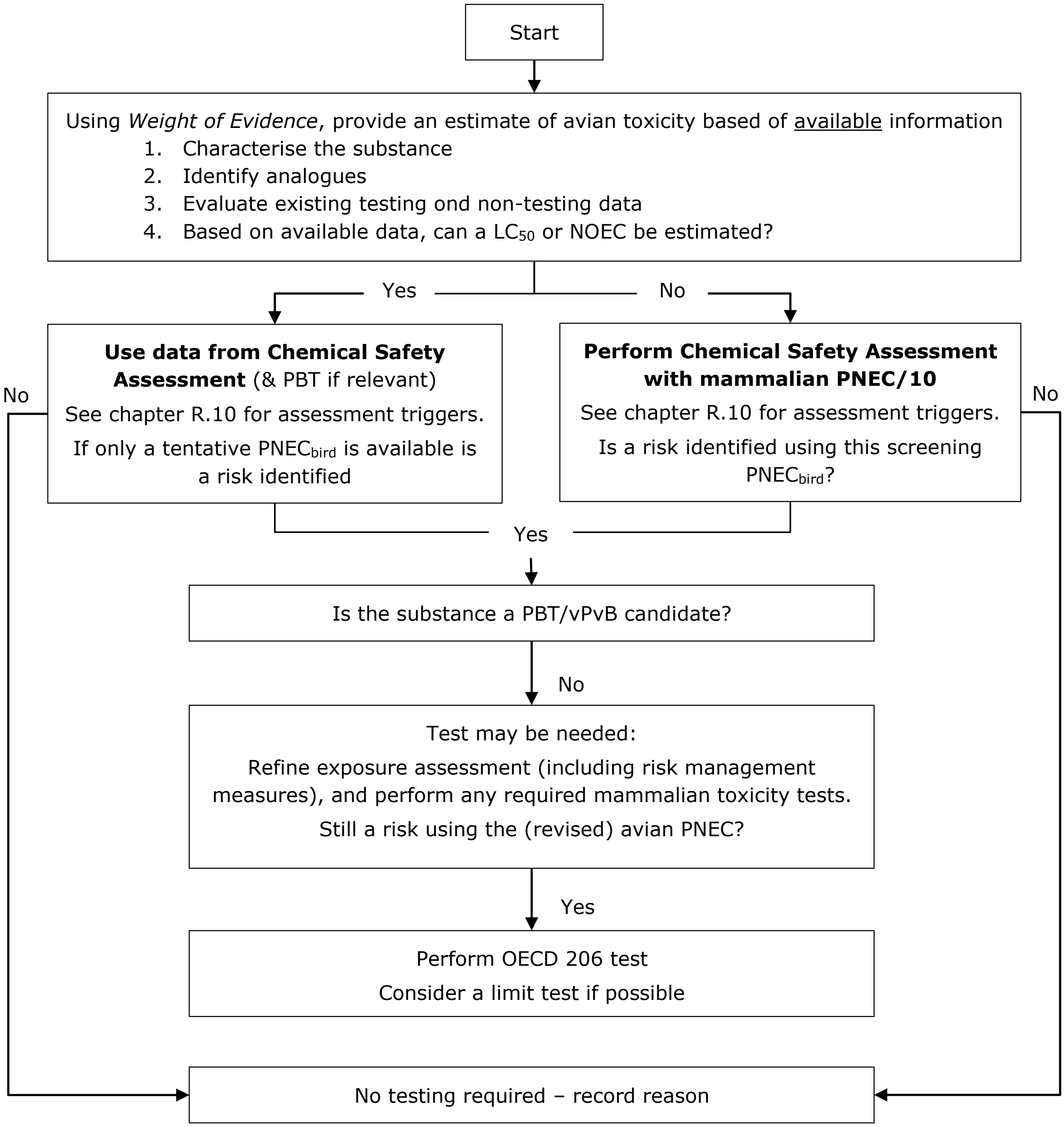
- In some cases, it might be appropriate to conduct an acute test to provide a preliminary indication of avian toxicity. For example, this could be useful if several related substances have no avian toxicity data, and some comparative data are needed to test the appropriateness of a read-across argument when only one is subject to a reproduction test. This could be a limit test in the first instance, since it is not necessary to establish a full dose-response relationship. A tentative $PNEC_{oral}$ can be derived from the result of a dietary test (OECD TG 205), in which case the limit could be either 5,000 mg/kg diet or the highest PEC multiplied by 3,000 (whichever is the lowest). However, given the uncertainties in extrapolating from acute to chronic effects, a chronic test will usually be preferred.

- If the substance clearly shows an endocrine disrupting effect in mammals with a high potency (i.e. acting at doses well below the threshold for other endpoints), it may be appropriate to conduct a multi-generation test instead. Since the protocols for such tests have not been internationally agreed, these would need to be discussed with the relevant regulatory bodies before embarking on a study. In addition, it is likely that such substances would be authorised and so the sacrifice or more vertebrates might not be justified.

It should be noted that this scheme does not include requirements to collect field data. This should only be considered in exceptional circumstances.

The ITS is presented as a flow chart in Figure R.7.10—3.

**Figure R.7.10—3 ITS for avian toxicity[14]**




[14] In the figure the reference to Chapter R10 corresponds to Section R.7.10.8 on secondary poisoning

### R.7.10.20 References for avian toxicity

BCPC (British Crop Protection Council) (2003). The Pesticide Manual: a World Compendium, Thirteenth Edition. Editor: C D S Tomlin. ISBN 1 901396 13 4.

Benfenati, E. (in press). Quantitative Structure-Activity Relationships (QSAR) for Pesticide Regulatory Purposes, Elsevier, Amsterdam, The Netherlands.

Bennett, R.S., Dewhurst, I.C., Fairbrother, A., Hart, A.D.M., Hooper, M.J., Leopold, A., Mineau, P., Mortensen, S.R., Shore, R.F. and Springer, T.A. (2005). A new interpretation of avian and mammalian reproduction toxicity test data in ecological risk assessment. *Ecotoxicology*, **14**(8), 801-816.

Bennett, R.S. and Etterson, M.A. (2006). Estimating pesticide effects on fecundity rates of wild birds using current laboratory reproduction tests. *Human and Ecological Risk Assessment*, **12**(4), 762-781.

CCME (1998). Protocol for the Derivation of Tissue Residue Guidelines for the Protection of Wildlife that Consume Aquatic Biota. Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment (CCME), Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada.

EC [European Commission] (2002a). Draft Working Document: Guidance Document on Risk Assessment for Birds and Mammals Under Council Directive 91/414/EEC, SANCO/4145/2000. European Commission, 25 September 2002.

EC [European Commission] (2002b). Draft Working Document: Guidance Document on Terrestrial Ecotoxicology Under Council Directive 91/414/EEC, SANCO/10329/2002 rev 2 final. European Commission, 17 October 2002.

EPPO [European and Mediterranean Plant Protection Organization] (2003). EPPO Standards - Environmental risk assessment scheme for plant protection products. *EPPO Bulletin,* **33**, 147–238.

Everts, J.W., Eys, Y., Ruys, M., Pijnenburg, J., Visser, H. and Luttik, R. (1993). Biomagnification and environmental quality criteria: a physiological approach. *ICES Journal of Marine Science*, **50**, 333-335.

Hart, A., Balluff, D., Barfknecht, R., Chapman, P.F., Hawkes, T., Joermann, G., Leopold, A. and Luttik, R. (2001). Avian effects assessment: A framework for contaminants studies. Pensacola, FL. Society of Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry (SETAC).

Mineau, P. (2005). A review and analysis of study endpoints relevant to the assessment of "long-term" pesticide toxicity in avian and mammalian wildlife. *Ecotoxicology*, **14** (8), 775-800.

OECD (1984a). Avian Dietary Toxicity Test. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), Guideline for the Testing of Chemicals No. 205, Paris, France.

OECD (1984b). Avian Reproduction Test. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), Guideline for the Testing of Chemicals No. 206, Paris, France.

OECD (1996). Series on Testing and Assessment No. 5: Report of the SETAC/OECD Workshop on Avian Toxicity Testing. Environmental Health and Safety Publications. Organisation for Cooperation and Development (OECD), Paris, France.

OECD (2002). Proposal (A&B) for a new guideline 223: Avian Acute Oral Toxicity Test. October 2002. Organisation for Cooperation and Development (OECD), Paris, France.

OECD (2003) Series on Testing and Assessment No XX. Draft Guidance Document on Testing Avian Avoidance Behaviour (to be completed)

OECD (2006a). Series on Testing and Assessment No. XX: Detailed Review Paper for Avian Two-generation Toxicity Test. Environment Directorate. Draft Final June 2006. Organisation for Cooperation and Development (OECD), Paris, France.

OECD 2006b) WNT 18 INF 3 status of work on Avian Toxicity testing. A paper provided for the meeting of the WG of NC of the TGP 16-18 May 2006.

Sell, C. (undated). Predicting the Reproductive Toxicity of Pesticides to Birds: Can Avian Acute Oral or Dietary Studies, or Mammalian Reproduction Studies be Used in Lieu of Specific Avian Reproduction Studies. Master of Research in Ecology & Environmental Management Dissertation. University of York in conjunction with the Ecotoxicology Branch, Pesticide Safety Directorate, UK.

SETAC (1995). Procedures for Assessing the Environmental Fate and Ecotoxicity of Pesticides. Society of Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, ISBN 90-5607-002-9.

SETAC (2005). Effects of Pesticides in the Field. EU & SETAC Europe Workshop (October 2003, Le Croisic, France), Society of Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Berlin, Germany.

US-EPA (1982a). OPP 71–1 Avian Single-Dose LD50 Test (Pesticide Assessment Guidelines). Federal Insecticide, Fungicide and Rodenticide Act (FIFRA) Subdivision E - Hazard Evaluation; Wildlife and Aquatic Organisms. EPA report 540/09-82-024.

US-EPA (1982b). OPP 71–2 Avian Dietary LC50 Test (Pesticide Assessment Guidelines). Federal Insecticide, Fungicide and Rodenticide Act (FIFRA) Subdivision E - Hazard Evaluation; Wildlife and Aquatic Organisms. EPA report 540/09-82-024.

US-EPA (1982c). OPP 71–4 Avian Reproduction Test (Pesticide Assessment Guidelines). Federal Insecticide, Fungicide and Rodenticide Act (FIFRA) Subdivision E - Hazard Evaluation; Wildlife and Aquatic Organisms. EPA report 540/09-82-024.

US-EPA (1996a). Ecological effects test guidelines: Avian acute oral toxicity test. OPPTS 850.2100. United States Environmental Protection Agency. Available from: http://www.epa.gov/opptsfrs/publications/OPPTS_Harmonised/850_Ecological_Effects_Test_Guidelines/Drafts/850-2100.pdf.

US-EPA (1996b). Ecological effects test guidelines: Avian dietary toxicity test. OPPTS 850.2200. United States Environmental Protection Agency. Available from: http://www.epa.gov/opptsfrs/publications/OPPTS_Harmonised/850_Ecological_Effects_Test_Guidelines/Drafts/850-2200.pdf.

US-EPA (1996c). Ecological effects test guidelines: Avian reproduction test. OPPTS 850.2300. United States Environmental Protection Agency. Available from: http://www.epa.gov/opptsfrs/publications/OPPTS_Harmonised/850_Ecological_Effects_Test_Guidelines/Drafts/850-2300.pdf.

US-EPA (2003). Revised draft detailed review paper for avian two-generation toxicity test. EPA Contract number 68-W-01-023, Work assignment 2-16 (April 23, 2003).

# R.7.11 Effects on terrestrial organisms

## R.7.11.1 Introduction

Substances introduced into the environment may pose a hazard to terrestrial organisms and as such potentially have deleterious effects on ecological processes within natural and anthropogenic ecosystems. Due to the complexity and diversity of the terrestrial environment, a comprehensive effect assessment for the whole compartment can only be achieved by a set of assessment endpoints covering (i) the different routes by which terrestrial organisms may be exposed to substances (i.e. air, food, pore water, bulk-soil) and (ii) the most relevant taxonomic and functional groups of terrestrial organisms (micro-organism, plants, invertebrates, vertebrates) being potentially affected (CSTEE, 2000). The scope of the terrestrial effect assessment under the adopted REACH regulation is restricted to soil organisms in a narrow sense, i.e. on non-vertebrate organisms living the majority of their lifetime within the soil and being exposed to substances via the soil pathway and in line with the previous practice in the environmental risk assessment of new and existing substances in the EU. The actual scoping of the effect assessment for the terrestrial environment does not include (EU, 2003):

- terrestrial invertebrates living above-ground (e.g. ground dwelling beetles),
- terrestrial vertebrates living a part of their lifetime in soils (e.g. mice),
- groundwater organism (invertebrates and micro-organism), and
- adverse effects on soil functions that are only indirectly linked to the biota in soils (e.g. buffering capacity, formation of soil structure, water cycle etc.) It should be stressed however that by addressing direct effects on soil biota, potential effects on these soil functions indirectly addressed (see below).

As for terrestrial vertebrates living above-ground reference is made to the relevant sections for mammals (Sections R.7.2 to R.7.7) and birds (Section R.7.10.14).

The importance of assessing the potential adverse effects on soil organisms within the environmental risk assessment of substances is at least two-fold:

First, there is a general concern with regard to the exposure of soil organisms, as soils are a major sink for anthropogenic substances emitted into the environment. This is especially pivotal for persistent substances with an inherent toxic potential, which may accumulate in soils and thereby posing a long-term risk to soil organisms. Second, protection of specific soil organisms is critical due to their role in maintaining soil functions, e.g. the breakdown of organic matter, formation of soil structure and cycling of nutrients. In view of the latter, protection goals for soil can both relate to structure (diversity and structure of soil organisms communities) and functions (ecosystem functions provided by soil organism communities) of soil biota.

Valuable contributions for assessing the effect of a specific substance on soil organisms may be obtained from endpoints such as physical-chemical properties (Section R.7.1) and (bio-) degradation (Section R.7.9) providing information on the fate of the substance. In the absence of experimental data on soil organisms data can be used that were generated on aquatic organisms (Equilibrium Partitioning Method, EPM);

information requirements for aquatic organisms under REACH are addressed in Section R.7.8. However, due to the high level of uncertainty regarding the area of validity of the EPM, this approach should be limited to screening purposes only.

The complexity, heterogeneity and diversity of soil ecosystems are the major challenge when assessing potential adverse effects of substances on soil organisms. This holds true both regarding soil as substrate, and thus exposure medium, and the biota communities living in the soil. Spatial and temporal fluctuations in environmental conditions, i.e. climate increase the complexity of assessing potential effects in soil.

### Soil

If considered as an exposure medium soil is characterised by a highly complex, three-phase system consisting of non-organic and dead organic matter, soil pore water and pore space (soil air). Substances released to the soil system are exposed to different physical, chemical and biological processes that may influence their fate (e.g. distribution, sorption/ de-sorption, transformation, binding and breakdown) and as such their bioavailability (see below) and effects on soil organisms. Moreover, structure, texture and biological activity greatly varies between different soil types and sites, respectively and soil properties even may alter due to changing environmental conditions (e.g. changes in organic matter content or amount of soil pores). As a consequence, the comparability of fate and effect data between different soils is limited, making extrapolations cumbersome. Hence, the selection of appropriate soils for biological testing or monitoring procedures is a crucial step when assessing the effects on soil organisms. Furthermore, standardisation of soil effect data to a given soil parameter (e.g. organic matter content or clay content) is common practice.

### Soil organisms

Typical soil organism communities in the field are highly diverse regarding their taxonomic composition and structured by complex inter-relationships (e.g. food-webs). Due to the diversity of species, a multitude of potential receptors for adverse effects of toxic substances exist in soils differing in size, soil micro-habitat, physiology and life-history. Consequently, a set of indicators representing three soil organism groups of major ecological importance and covering all relevant soil exposure pathways is required for a comprehensive effect assessment of substances in soils (see Table R.7.11—1).

**Table R.7.11—1 Major groups of soil organisms to be considered in effect assessment**

| Organism group | Ecological process | Soil exposure pathway | Important taxa |
|---|---|---|---|
| Plants | Primary production | Mainly soil pore water (by root uptake) | All higher plants |
| Invertebrates | Breakdown of organic matter<br><br>Formation of soil structure | Diverse and multiple uptake routes (soil pore water, ingestion of soil material, soil air, secondary poisoning) | Earthworms, springtails, mites |
| Micro-organisms | Re-cycling of nutrients | Mainly soil pore water | Bacteria, protozoa, fungi |

## Soil bioassay

Soil bioassays are at present the most important method to generate empirical information on the toxicity of substances to soil organisms. Such bioassays are conducted by exposing test organisms to increasing concentrations of the test substance in soil, under controlled laboratory conditions. Short-term (e.g. mortality) or long-term (e.g. inhibition of growth or reproduction) toxic effects are measured. Ideally, toxicity testing results reveal information on the concentration-effect relationship and allow for the statistical derivation of defined Effect Concentrations ($EC_x$, i.e. effective concentration resulting in x % effect) and/ or No Observed Effect Concentrations (NOEC). By convention, $EC_x$ and NOEC values generated by internationally standardised test guidelines (OECD, ISO) offer the most reliable toxicity data. However, only a limited number of standard test guidelines for soil organism are at present available, a fact that mirrors the generally limited data-base on the toxicity of substances towards soil organisms.

## Bioavailability

By addressing bioavailability of substances in soil, a potential method to deal with the diversity and complexity of soils is provided. Bioavailability considers the processes of mass transfer and uptake of substances into soil-living organisms which are determined by substance properties (key parameter: water solubility, $K_{OC}$, vapour pressure), soil properties (with key parameter: clay content, organic matter content, pH-value, cation exchange capacity) and the biology of soil organisms (key parameter: micro-habitat, morphology, physiology, life-span). The practical meaning for effect assessment of both organic substances and metals is the observation that not the total loading rate, but only the bioavailable fraction of a substance in soil is decisive for the observed toxicity. Although being subject to extensive research activities in the past decade, there is actually no general approach for assessing the bioavailability of substances in soils. Major difficulties are the differences and the restricted knowledge about exposure pathways relevant for soil organisms and the fact that bioavailability is time-dependent. The latter phenomenon is commonly described as a process of “ageing” of substances in soil: Due to increasing sorption, binding and incorporation into the soil matrix, bioavailability and consequently toxicity changes (mostly decreases) with time. Additional factors like climate conditions and land use may also influence bioavailability. Nonetheless, bioavailability should be critically considered when interpreting existing soil toxicity data as well as during the design of new studies.

#### R.7.11.1.1 Objective

The overall objective of the effect assessment scheme proposed in this section is to gather adequate (i.e. reliable and relevant) information on the inherent toxic potential of specific substances to soil living organisms in order to:

- Identify if, and if so, which of the most relevant groups of soil organisms may potentially be adversely affected by a specific substance when emitted into the soil compartment, and to
- Derive a definite, scientifically reliable soil upper threshold concentration of no concern (Predicted No Effect Concentration for soil - PNECsoil) for those substances, for which adverse effects on soil organisms are to be expected.

Based on the information and relevant toxicity data gathered during effect assessment, the derivation of the $PNEC_{soil}$ for a specific substance follows the general hazard assessment schemes as presented in a flow-chart of Section R.7.11.6.3. Comparison of the $PNEC_{soil}$ with the respective Predicted Environmental Concentration expected for soil ($PEC_{soil}$) from relevant emission scenarios will finally lead to a conclusion concerning the risk to organisms living in the soil compartment (risk characterisation). A risk identified on the basis of a PEC/PNEC comparison can demonstrate the need for a more refined risk-assessment (either on the PEC or PNEC side), or – in cases where there are no options for further refinement - to risk management decisions.

### R.7.11.2 Information requirements

#### R.7.11.2.1 Standard information requirements

Article 10 of REACH presents the information that should be submitted for registration and evaluation of substances. In Article 12 the dependence of the information requirements on production volume (tonnage) is established in a tiered system, reflecting that potential exposure increases with volume.

Annexes VII-X to REACH specify the standard information requirements (presented in column 1). In addition, specific rules for their adaptation (presented in column 2) are included. These annexes set out the standard information requirements, but must be considered in conjunction with Annex XI to REACH, which allows variation from the standard approach. Annex XI to REACH contains general rules for adaptations of the standard information requirements that are established in Annexes VII to X.

Furthermore, generation of data for the PBT/vPvB assessment is required, where a registrant, while carrying out the CSA, cannot draw an unequivocal conclusion on whether the criteria in Annex XIII to REACH are met or not and identifies that terrestrial (soil) toxicity data would take the PBT/vPvB assessment further. This obligation applies for all ≥ 10 tpa registrations (see Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA* for further details).

The following represent the specific requirements related to terrestrial (soil) toxicity testing:

Information requirements (column 1) and rules for adaptation of the standard information requirements (column 2) of the Annexes VII-X)

a) Annex VII (Registration tonnage >1 t/y -<10 t/y)

No terrestrial effects testing is required at this registration tonnage

b) Annex VIII (Registration tonnage >10 t/y)

No terrestrial effects testing is required at this registration tonnage

c) Annex IX (Registration tonnage >100 t/y)

Column 1 of this Annex establishes the standard information required for all substances manufactured or imported in quantities of 100 tonnes or more in accordance with Article 12 (1) (d).

| **Column 1**<br><br>**Standard Information Required** | **Column 2**<br><br>**Specific rules for adaptation from Column 1** |
|---|---|
| 9.2.3. Identification of degradation products | Unless the substance is readily biodegradable |
| 9.4. Effects on terrestrial organisms | 9.4. These studies do not need to be conducted if direct and indirect exposure of the soil compartment is unlikely.<br><br>In the absence of toxicity data for soil organisms, the EPM method may be applied to assess the exposure to soil organisms. The choice of the appropriate tests depends on the outcome of the chemical safety assessment.<br><br>In particular for substances that have a high potential to adsorb to soil or that are very persistent, the registrant shall consider long-term toxicity testing instead of short-term. |
| 9.4.1. Short-term toxicity to invertebrates | |
| 9.4.2. Effects on soil micro-organisms | |
| 9.4.3. Short-term toxicity to plants | |

*Identification and/or assessment of degradation products*

These data are only required if information on the degradation products following primary degradation is required in order to complete the Chemical Safety Assessment.

**Column 2:** "Unless the substance is readily degradable"

In these circumstances, it may be considered that any degradation products formed during such degradation would themselves be sufficiently rapidly degraded as not to require further assessment.

*Effects on terrestrial organisms*

**Column 2:** "these tests do not need to be conducted if direct and indirect exposure of soil compartment is unlikely."

If there is no exposure of the soil, or the exposure is so low that no refinement of the $PEC_{local}$ or $PEC_{regional}$, or $PNEC_{soil\ organisms}$ is required, then this test may not be necessary. In general, it is assumed that soil exposure will occur unless it can be shown that there is no sludge application to land from exposed STPs and that aerial deposition are negligible and the relevance of other exposure pathways such as irrigation and/or contact with contaminated waste is unlikely.

In the case of readily biodegradable substances which are not directly applied to soil it is generally assumed that the substance will not enter the terrestrial environment and as such there is no need for testing of soil organisms is required. Furthermore, other parameters (e.g. low log $K_{oc}/P_{ow}$) should be considered regarding the exposure pathway via STP sludge. In case of aerial deposition, other aspects such as photostability, vapour pressure, volatility, hydrolysis etc, should be taken into consideration.

**Column 2:** "In the absence of toxicity data for soil organisms, the Equilibrium Partitioning Method may be applied to assess the hazard to soil organisms. The choice of the appropriate tests depends on the outcome of the Chemical Safety Assessment."

In the first instance, before new terrestrial effects testing is conducted, a $PNEC_{soil}$ may be calculated from the $PNEC_{water}$ using Equilibrium Partitioning. The results of this comparison can be incorporated into the Chemical Safety Assessment and may help determine which, if any of the terrestrial organisms detailed in the standard information requirements should be tested.

**Column 2:** "In particular for substances that have a high potential to adsorb to soil or that are very persistent, the registrant shall consider long-term toxicity testing instead of short-term."

Some substances present a particular concern for soil, such as those substances that show a high potential to partition to soil, and hence may reach high concentrations, or those that are persistent. In both cases long-term exposure of terrestrial organisms is possible and the registrant should consider whether the long-term terrestrial effects testing identified in Annex X may be more appropriate. This is addressed in more detail in the integrated testing strategy in Section R.7.11.6.

d) Annex X (Registration tonnage >1000 t/y)

Column 1 of this Annex establishes the standard information required for all substances manufactured or imported in quantities of 1000 tonnes or more in accordance with Article 12(1)(e). Accordingly, the information required in column 1 of this Annex is additional to that required in column 1 of Annex IX.

| Column 1<br>Standard Information Required | Column 2<br>Specific rules for adaptation from Column 1 |
|---|---|
| 9.4. Effects on terrestrial organisms | 9.4. Long-term toxicity testing shall be proposed by the registrant if the results of the chemical safety assessment according to Annex I indicates the need to investigate further the effects of the substance and/or degradation products on terrestrial organisms. The choice of the appropriate test(s) depends on the outcome of the chemical safety assessment.<br>These studies do not need to be conducted if direct and indirect exposure of the soil compartment is unlikely. |
| 9.4.4. Long-term toxicity testing on invertebrates, unless already provided as part of Annex IX requirements. | |
| 9.4.6. Long-term toxicity testing on plants, unless already provided as part of Annex IX requirements. | |

*Effects on terrestrial organisms*

**Column 2:** "These tests need not be conducted if direct and indirect exposure of soil compartment is unlikely."

If there is no exposure of the soil, or the exposure is so low that no refinement of the $PEC_{local}$ or $PEC_{regional}$, or $PNEC_{soil\ organisms}$ is required, then this test may not be necessary. In general, it is assumed that soil exposure will occur unless it can be shown that there is no sludge application to land from exposed STPs and that aerial deposition are negligible and the relevance of other exposure pathways such as irrigation and/or contact with contaminated waste is unlikely.

In the case of readily biodegradable substances which are not directly applied to soil it is generally assumed that the substance will not enter the terrestrial environment and as such there is no need for testing of soil organisms is required.

**Column 2:** "Long-term toxicity testing shall be proposed by the registrant if the results of the chemical safety assessment according to Annex I indicate the need to investigate further the effects of the substance and/or degradation products on soil organisms. The choice of the appropriate test(s) depends on the outcome of the chemical safety assessment"

These tests need not be proposed if there is no risk to the soil compartment identified in the chemical safety assessment such that a revision of the $PNEC_{soil}$ is not required. Where further information on terrestrial organism toxicity is required, either on the substance or on any degradation products, the number and type of testing will be determined by the chemical safety assessment and the extent of the revision to the $PNEC_{soil}$ required.

**PBT/vPvB assessment**

In the context of PBT/vPvB assessment, if the registrant cannot derive a definitive conclusion (i) ("The substance does not fulfil the PBT and vPvB criteria") or (ii) ("The substance fulfils the PBT or vPvB criteria") in the PBT/vPvB assessment using the relevant available information, he must, based on Section 2.1 of Annex XIII to REACH, generate the necessary information for deriving one of these conclusions, regardless of his tonnage band (for further details, see Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA*). In such a case, the only possibility to refrain from testing or generating other necessary information is to treat the substance "*as if it is a PBT or vPvB*" (see Chapter R.11 of the *Guidance on IR&CSA* for details).

### R.7.11.3 Information and its sources

Different types of information are relevant when assessing terrestrial exposure and subsequent toxicity to soil organisms. Useful information includes chemical and physical properties of substances and test systems as well as available testing data (*in vitro* and *in vivo*) and results from non-testing methods, such as the Equilibrium Partitioning Method. Sources of ecotoxicity data including terrestrial data have been listed in Chapter R3. Additional useful databases include US EPA ECOTOX database (http://cfpub.epa.gov/ecotox/) and OECD Screening Information DataSet (SIDS) for high volume chemicals (http://www.chem.unep.ch/irptc/sids/oecdsids/indexchemic.htm).

Physical and chemical data on the test substance can assist with experimental design and provide information on the endpoint of interest. The following information is useful for designing the soil test and identifying the expected route of exposure to the substance: structural formula, purity, water solubility, n-octanol/water partition coefficient (log $K_{ow}$), soil sorption behaviour, vapour pressure, chemical stability in water and light and biodegradability.

#### R.7.11.3.1 Laboratory data

#### Non-testing data

There is limited terrestrial toxicity data available for most substances. In the absence of terrestrial data, one option is to generate Q(SAR) predictions. General guidance on the use of (Q)SAR is provided in Section R.4.3.2.1 and specifically for aquatic (pelagic) toxicity in Section R.7.8. However at present there are no Q(SAR)s for soil ecotoxicology that have been well characterised. For example there are a few Q(SAR)s for earthworms, but these have not been fully validated (Van Gestel *et al*., 1990). Therefore terrestrial endpoint predictions using Q(SAR)s should be carefully evaluated, and only used as part of a *Weight-of-Evidence* approach (see Figure R.7.11—1).

Grouping of substances with similar chemical structures on the hypothesis that they will have a similar mode of action is a method which has been used in the past to provide non-testing data. The underlying idea is that when (testing-) effect-data are available for a substance within the (structural similar) group, these can be used to "predict" the toxicity of other substances in the same group. This method has been successfully used for PCBs and PAHs.

Another option is to estimate concentrations causing terrestrial effects from those causing effects on aquatic organisms. Equilibrium partitioning theory is based on the assumption that soil toxicity expressed in terms of the freely-dissolved substance concentration in the pore water is the same as aquatic toxicity. Further guidance on how to use the equilibrium partitioning method is provided in Section R.10.6.1 as well as in the ITS in Section R.7.11.6.

## Testing data

*In vitro* data

There are no standardised test methods available at present, however there are a range of *in vitro* soil tests that may have been used to generate terrestrial endpoint data, and this information could be used as part of a *Weight-of-Evidence* approach (see Figure R.7.11—1). A useful review of *in vitro* techniques is provided in the CEH report, 'Review of sublethal ecotoxicological tests for measuring harm in terrestrial ecosystems' (Spurgeon *et al.*, 2004).

*In vivo* data

The officially adopted OECD and ISO test guidelines are internationally agreed testing methods, and therefore should ideally be followed to generate data for risk assessments. Further details have been provided in this section on the OECD and ISO standard test guidelines which are recommended to test the toxicity of substances to soil organisms. However, there are a range of other standard and non-standard tests available, which can also be used to generate terrestrial endpoint data. Appendix R.7.11—1 includes a detailed list of terrestrial test methodologies, including several test methods that are currently under development. The data from non-standard methodologies will need to be assessed for their reliability, adequacy, relevance and completeness.

OECD and ISO Test Guidelines

i) Microbial Assays

Microorganisms play an important role in the break-down and transformation of organic matter in fertile soils with many species contributing to different aspects of soil fertility. Therefore, any long-term interference with these biochemical processes could potentially disrupt nutrient cycling and this could alter soil fertility. A NOEC/ECx from these tests can be considered as a long-term result for microbial populations.

*Soil Micro-organisms, Nitrogen Transformation Test – OECD 216 (OECD, 2000a); ISO 14238 (ISO, 1997a)*

*Soil Micro-organisms, Carbon Transformation Test – OECD 217(OECD, 2000b) ; ISO 14239(ISO, 1997b)*

The carbon and nitrogen transformation tests are both designed to detect long-term adverse effects of a substance on the process of carbon or nitrogen transformation in aerobic soils over at least 28 days.

For most non-agrochemicals the nitrogen transformation test is considered sufficient as nitrate transformation takes place subsequent to the degradation of carbon-nitrogen bonds. Therefore, if equal rates of nitrate production are found in treated and control soils, it is highly probable that the major carbon degradation pathways are intact and functional.

Further ISO-standard methodologies are available, however since no corresponding OECD guideline exists, these methods are less commonly used than the 2 microbial assays mentioned above.

*Determination of potential nitrification, a rapid test by ammonium oxidation – ISO 5685 (ISO, 2004a)*

Ammonium oxidation is the first step in autotrophic nitrification in soil. The method is based on measurement of the potential activity of the nitrifying population as assessed by the accumulation of nitrite over a short incubation period of 6 hours. The method does not assess growth of the nitrifying population. Inhibitory doses are calculated.

*Determination of abundance and activity of the soil micro-flora using respiration curves – ISO 17155 (ISO, 2002)*

This method is used to assess the effect of substances on the soil microbial activity by measuring the respiration rate ($CO_2$ production or $O_2$ consumption). The substance may kill the micro-flora, reduce their activity, enhance their vitality or have no effect (either because the toxicity of the substances is low or some species are replaced by more resistant ones). EC10/NOEC and EC50 are determined when toxicity is observed.

ii) Invertebrate Assays

*Earthworm acute toxicity test – OECD 207 (OECD, 1984); ISO 11268-1 (ISO, 1993)*

The test is designed to assess the effect of substances on the survival of the earthworms *Eisenia* spp. Although the OECD guideline provides details of a filter paper contact test, this should only be used as a screening test, as the artificial soil method gives data far more representative of natural exposure of earthworms to substances without requiring significantly more resources to conduct. Mortality and the effects on biomass are determined after 2 weeks exposure, and these data are used to determine the median lethal concentration (LC50). Although *Eisenia* spp. are not typical soil species, as they tend to occur in soil rich in organic matter, its susceptibility to substances is considered to be representative of soil fauna and earthworm species. *Eisenia* spp. is also relatively easy to culture in lab conditions, with a short life cycle, and can be purchased commercially.

*Earthworm reproduction test – OECD 222 (OECD, 2004a); ISO 11268-2 (ISO, 1998)*

The effects of substances on the reproduction of adult compost worms, *Eisenia* spp. is assessed over a period of 8 weeks. Adult worms are exposed to a range of concentrations of the test substance mixed into the soil. The range of test concentrations is selected to encompass those likely to cause both sub-lethal and lethal effects. Mortality and growth effects on the adult worms are determined after 4 weeks of exposure, and the effects on reproduction assessed after a further 4 weeks by counting the number of offspring present in the soil. The NOEC/ECx is determined by comparing the reproductive output of the worms exposed to the test substance to that of the control.

*Enchytraeid reproduction test – OECD 220 (OECD, 2004b) ; ISO 16387 (ISO, 2004b)*

Enchytraeids are soil dwelling organisms that occur in a wide range of soils, and can be used in laboratory tests are well as semi-field and field studies. The OECD guideline recommends the use of *Enchytraeus albidus*, which is easy to handle and breed and their generation time is significantly shorter than that of earthworms. The principle of the test is the same as for the earthworm reproduction test: adult worms are exposed to a range of concentrations of the test substance mixed into the soil. The duration of the reproductive test is 6 weeks, and mortality and morphological changes in the adults are determined after 3 weeks exposure. The adults are then removed and the number of offspring, hatched from the cocoons in the soil is counted after an additional 3 weeks exposure. The NOEC/ECx is determined by comparing the reproductive output of the worms exposed to the test substance, to the reproductive output of the control worms.

*Inhibition of reproduction of Collembola (Folsomia candida) – ISO 11267(ISO, 1999a)*

Collembolans are the most numerous and widely occurring insects in terrestrial ecosystems. This is one of the main reasons for why they have been widely used as bioindicators and test organisms for detecting the effects of environmental pollutants. The ISO guideline recommends the use of *Folsomia candida*, which reproduces by asexual reproduction and resides primarily in habitats rich in organic matter such as pot plants and compost heaps. A treated artificial soil is used as the exposure medium and a NOEC/ECx for survival and off-spring production is determined after 21 days.

iii) Plant Assays

The most suitable standard methodology for plants to be used for industrial substances that are likely to be applied via sewage sludge is OECD 208 (OECD, 2006a) guideline, which assesses seedling emergence and seedling growth. The second standard method OECD 227 (OECD, 2006b) is more suitable for substances that are likely to deposit on the leaves and above-ground portions of plants and through aerial deposition. There is also a recent ISO test guideline ISO 22030 (ISO, 2005a)), which assesses the chronic toxicity of higher plants.

*Terrestrial Plant Test: Seedling emergence and seedling growth test – OECD 208 (OECD 2006a); ISO 11269-2(ISO, 2005b)*

The updated OECD guideline is designed to assess the potential effects of substances on seedling emergence and growth. Therefore, it is specific to a part of the plants life-cycle and does not cover chronic effects or effects on reproduction, however it is assumed to cover a sensitive stage in the life-cycle of a plant and therefore data obtained form this study have been used as estimates of chronic toxicity. Seeds are placed in contact with soil treated with the test substance and evaluated for effects following usually 14 to 21 days after 50% emergence of the seedlings in the control group. Endpoints measured are visual assessment of seedling emergence, dry shoot weight (alternatively wet shoot weight) and in certain cases shoot height, as well as an assessment of visible detrimental effects on different parts of the plant. These measurements and observations are compared to those of untreated control plants, to determine the EC50 and NOEC/EC10.

*Terrestrial plant test: Vegetative vigour test – OECD 227 (OEC, 2006b)*

This guideline is designed to assess the potential effects on plants following deposition of the test substance on the leaves and above-ground portions of plants. Plants are grown from seed usually to the 2-4 true leaf stage. Test substance is then sprayed on the plant and leaf surfaces at an appropriate rate. After application, the plants are then evaluated against untreated control plants for effects on vigour and growth at various time intervals through 21-28 days after treatment. Endpoints are dry or wet shoot weight, in certain cases shoot height, as well as an assessment of visible detrimental effects on different parts of the plant. These measurements are compared to those of untreated control plants.

*Soil Quality –Biological Methods – Chronic toxicity in higher plants – ISO 22030 (ISO, 2005a)*

This ISO test guideline describes a method for determining the inhibition of the growth and reproductive capability of higher plants by soils under controlled conditions. Two species are recommended, a rapid cycling variant of turnip rape (*Brassica rapa*) and oat (*Avena sativa*). The duration of the tests has been designed to be sufficient to include chronic endpoints that describe the reproductive capability of test plants compared to a control group. The chronic toxicity of substances can be measured by preparing a dilution series of the test substance in standard control soils.

### R.7.11.3.2 (semi-) Field data

Field tests are higher tier studies which provide an element of realism but also add complexity in interpretation. There are very few standardised methods for evaluating the ecotoxicological hazard potential of substances in terrestrial field ecosystems. An example of such guidance which has frequently been used is the ISO guideline 11268-3 for the determination of effects of pollutants on earthworms in field situations (ISO, 1999b) This approach aims to assess effects on population size and biomass for a particular species or group of species and there is guidance summarising the conduct of such studies (de Jong *et. al.* 2006).

<u>Gnotobiotic laboratory tests</u>

Gnotobiotic laboratory tests are relatively similar to single-species test and are run under controlled conditions. Usually a few species (2-5), either from laboratory cultures or caught in the field are exposed together in an artificial or (often sieved) field soil. Recently much work has been done with a gnotobiotic system called the Ohio type microcosm (Edwards *et al.,* 1998), which ranges in complexity between laboratory tests and terrestrial model ecosystems (CSTEE, 2000).

Terrestrial microcosms/mesocosms

Terrestrial microcosms/mesocosms can be used as integrative test methods in which fate and effect parameters are investigated at the same time and under more realistic field conditions. The Terrestrial Model Ecosystem (TME) is the only multi-species test that has a standardised guideline (ASTM, 1993). TMEs are small enough to be replicated but large enough to sustain soil organisms for a long period of time (Römbke *et al*., 1994). TMEs can be used to address the effects on ecosystem structure and function which is not usually possible with single species tests. When TME's studies are conducted in the laboratory, they use intact soil cores extracted from a field site and therefore contain native soil communities. The degree of environmental relevance of these indoor TME's is therefore intermediate between laboratory and field studies.

Typically, in TME's after an acclimatisation period, 4-8 replicates are treated with increasing concentrations of the test-substance or left untreated as controls. They are then sampled at intervals for structural (plant biomass, invertebrate populations) or functional (litter decomposition, microbial activity) parameters. Such an approach may provide a link to effects to the field but under more controlled conditions (Knacker et al., 2004). The statistical analysis of TME data is dependent on the number and inter-relatedness of the endpoints measured. If there are many endpoints measured a multivariate analysis to derive a single effect threshold for the whole system may be appropriate. Due to the complexity of the data obtained in a TME, a standard "one-suits-all" statistical method to generate end-points from these studies cannot be provided. Expert judgement is required.

Field Studies

At present there are no standardised test methods for designing field studies to assess the hazard potential of substances for multiple species. As such field study methodology tends to be specifically designed tests for a particular substance and is difficult to reproduce. Dose response relationships are often lacking (CSTEE, 2000). However, field studies are the most accurate assessment of the impact of a substance on soil function and structure under natural climatic conditions.

## R.7.11.4 Evaluation of available information for a given substance

Existing relevant soil organism data may be derived from a variety of sources. Data used in the risk assessments according to Council Directive 91/414/EEC and Council Regulation (EEC) No. 93/793 are considered to be of high quality and preferred over data available from other sources. The next highest quality category is well founded and documented data. These data should compromise a conclusive description of e.g. test conditions, tested species, test duration, examined endpoint(s), references, preferably be conducted according to the principles of Good Laboratory Practice, as well as a justification why the provided data should be used. Further data of lower priority may be provided from publishes literature, and data retrieved from public databases.

### R.7.11.4.1 Evaluation of laboratory data

#### Non-testing data

Preferably PNEC values should be derived using testing for the substance under evaluation but such data are not always available. If data can be derived via extrapolation based on information from similar substances, e.g. using QSAR or SAR models, then these may be used as supportive evidence and to advice on how to proceed with further testing. For the terrestrial ecosystems there are no OECD or ISO guidelines on (Q)SAR models, although some simple models have been published in the open literature e.g. van Gestel and Ma (1992), Xu *et al*. (2000), Wang *et al*. (2000) and Sverdrup *et al*. (2002). In general, if the models indicate little toxicity for a substance based on information from similar substances, this can imply reduced testing; expert judgement is required in these cases.

If no terrestrial data exist, read-across from available aquatic toxicity data, using the EPM method can be considered, as supportive evidence. If there is an indication that a specific group of aquatic organism is more sensitive then other groups e.g. if aquatic plants display a lower EC50 than Daphnia, then further testing of terrestrial plants may be most appropriate. Care should be taken as the aquatic test does not cover the same species groups as in the terrestrial system.

For more extensive modelling the guidance described in Sections R.6.1 and R.6.2 should be followed.

### Testing data

Test organisms

In general priority is given to test organisms specified in the OECD and ISO guidelines. Species tested under other official and peer-reviewed guidelines e.g. ASTM can also be employed, but their relevance should be examined.

Non-standard species can also be accepted. However, when employing these in deriving PNEC in the absence of standard studies, it should be ascertained that the test-species is properly identified and characterized, and that the test method is suitable and complies with the standard guidelines in critical points. For example, recovery of the control animals or survival in the control, maximum level of variability in test results, exposure duration, endpoints studied should comply with those specified in the official test guideline. In general the same criteria as described for test species selected according the official guidelines should be applied.

The test species should ideally cover different habitats and feeding modes in the soil as well as different taxonomic groups. For strongly adsorbing or binding substances soil-dwelling organisms that feed on soil particles (e.g. earthworms) are most relevant. However, also a specific mode-of-action that is known for a given substance may influence the choice of the test species (e.g. for substances suspected of having specific effects on arthropods a test with springtails is more appropriate than tests on other taxonomic groups).

If a concern is raised on the relevance of a species then an expert should be consulted.

Endpoints

In general priority is given to test endpoints specified in the OECD and ISO guidelines, unless a special mode-of-action is known. Endpoints under other official and peer-reviewed guidelines e.g. ASTM can also be employed, but their relevance should be considered.

Non-standard endpoints can also be accepted. However, these should be evaluated in relation to ecological relevance and must be properly identified and characterized in order to ensure that the endpoint is suitable and complies with the guidelines in critical points. For example, if the guideline requires sub-lethal endpoints for a species after long-term exposure then the corresponding non-standard endpoint should be sub-lethal and comply with the general outlines specified in the standard test guideline. If non-standard endpoints are very different from the standard endpoints then these must be scientifically justified. For example, an endpoint can be particular sensitive or targeted to the mode-of-action for the substance in question. Screening endpoints such as behavioural responses, i.e. avoidance testing should not be interpreted in isolation. The criteria for reliability, e.g. uncertainty of non-standard endpoints should comply with those of standard endpoints.

If a concern is raised on the relevance of a species then an expert should be consulted.

Exposure pathways

In general, exposure pathway should be as specified in the OECD and ISO guidelines, unless special pathways should be considered.

Non-standard test can also be accepted. If non-standard data are available then it should be considered whether the characteristics of the test substance scientifically justify the chosen exposure pathway. The exposure route is partly dependent on the physical-chemical nature of the substance and also influenced by species-specific life-strategy of the test organism. For strongly adsorbing or binding substances, preference should be given to test designs and test organisms that cover the exposure via ingestion or strong soil particle contact, as this is likely the most relevant exposure route for such substances. As mentioned in Section R.7.11.3. some standard test methodologies include species with food exposure (earthworm reproduction, Enchytraeids and Collembola) while others have contact exposure only.

If a concern is raised on the relevance of the exposure regime then an expert should be consulted.

Composition of soils and artificial-soils

In general, soils in effect testing should be chosen as specified in the OECD and ISO guidelines, unless special conditions are considered.

Non-standard soils can also be accepted. For soils the composition and the choice of soil type have a very large influence on the toxicity of many substances. Hence, if non-standard soils are used it should be considered whether the soil chosen represent a realistic worst-case-scenario for the tested substance. For most substances there is a lack of detailed knowledge about how the toxicity depends of the soil parameters; as such there is little reason to judge the reliability of available data solely based on the site of origin/geography. In general the main parameters driving the bioavailability of substances in soils are clay and organic matter (OM) content, Cation Exchange Capacity (CEC) and pH. For many metals CEC and pH have been shown to be main drivers, whereas for non-polar organics OM has been shown important. For non-standard artificial soil the source of organic matter can also heavily influence the result. Hence, if one of the soil parameters e.g. CEC or pH is very different from those outlined in the guideline or the habitat in question, then a scientific justification of the importance of this derivation should be presented. Residual contaminants are generally not present in artificial substrates, but can be a potential confounding factor if natural soils are used for testing. This affects exposure considerations and is further described in Section R.7.11.4.2.

If a concern is raised on the relevance of a species then an expert should be consulted.

Method of spiking

In general soil tested should be as spiked as specified in the standard OECD and ISO guidelines, unless special conditions are considered.

If non-standard spiking methods are used, these should be scientifically justified. In general there are a variety of spiking methods including direct addition of the substance to soil, using water or a solvent carrier, application via sludge or direct spraying. Spiking soils tends to be problematic for poorly soluble substances (see also Aquatic Toxicity Section R.7.8.7.). The standard approach is to dissolve the test substance in a solvent and then to spike sand, blow-off the solvent and mix the sand into soil using different ratios of sand/soil to derive various test concentrations. The drawback with this technique is that even after hours/days of mixing, the substance may not be homogeneously mixed to the soil, but merely present as solid particles on the original sand. In some cases studies will have been carried out with the use of solubilisers. In these circumstances it is important to consider the change in bioavailability of the test-substance and also the potential impact of the solubiliser. Studies performed without solvents/solubilisers are preferred over studies with solvents/solubilisers. Solvent/solubiliser concentrations should be the same in all treatments and controls.

Bio-availability of substances in soil is known to change over time, aging of the substance in the soil after spiking (with or without solvents) is therefore to be considered. The appropriateness of the aging in studies to derive effect-endpoints depends on the use scenario and the type of risk assessment conducted with this endpoint. Expert judgement is as such required here. For metals and inorganic metal substances both short aging/equilibration times and high spiked metal concentrations in soils will accentuate partitioning of metals to the dissolved phase and increase the probability of exposure and/or toxicity via dissolved metals (Oorst *et al*., 2006). Simulated aging and weathering processes may be desirable to take account of, but currently this is not included in standard test protocols.

Where a reasonable estimation of the exposure concentration cannot be determined then the test result should be considered with caution unless as part of a *Weight-of-Evidence* approach (see Section R.7.11.5).

Duration of exposure

In general, the test duration should be as specified in the standard OECD and ISO guidelines, unless special conditions are considered.

For non-standard test methodologies it is important to ensure that the duration of exposure in the test is long enough for the test substance to be taken up by the test organisms. In chronic tests the duration should cover a considerable part of the lifecycle. Especially for strongly adsorbing substances it may take some time to reach equilibrium between the soil concentration in the test system and in the test organisms. If the duration of the exposure is different from those in the corresponding guidelines, a scientific justification for the importance of this should provided or the study can be used in the *Weight of Evidence*.

If a concern is raised on the relevance of a species then an expert should be consulted.

Feeding

In general the soil type and soil conditions used for the test should be chosen as specified in the OECD and ISO guidelines, unless special conditions are required.

In long-term tests, especially with reproduction or growth as endpoint, feeding of the test organisms is necessary. Generally the tests are designed in such a way that the food necessary for the test organisms during the study is added to the soil after spiking with the test substance. In standard test methodology, the food is not spiked with the test substance. For non-standard methods the food type depends on the test species. It has to be considered that any food added to the test system either periodically during the test period or only at test initiation may influence outcome of the study and as such the reliability of the data obtained.

Ad-libitum feeding, or the lack of such may influence the state of health of the test organisms and as such their ability to cope with (chemical-) stress. Different feeding regimes are therefore a source of variation on the expression of the effect parameter.

Test design

In general the test-design should be as specified in the standard OECD and ISO guidelines, unless special conditions are required.

For standard test methodologies details of test design are normally well documented. To ensure the validity non-standard test methodology, these should to a large extend follow the specifications outlined in the standard guideline tests e.g. including sufficient concentrations and replications and positive and negative controls. For a proper statistical evaluation of the test results, the number of test concentrations and replicates per concentration are critical factors. If a solvent is used for the application of the test substance, an additional solvent control is necessary. The appropriate number of replicates to be included in a test is dependent on the statistical power required for the test. More guidance on statistical design is provided in the OECD (2006c). It is not a priori possible, to advice on what test design details are of key importance and which can be allowed to be missing before validity of the results becomes equivocal. If relevant information on test design is missing in non-standard test then they can only be used in a *Weight-of-Evidence* approach.

### R.7.11.4.2 Field data and model ecosystems

### Multi-species test

There are no OECD or ISO guideline on terrestrial multi-species test systems.

Since not standardised and given their complexity multi-species test should be judged on a case-by-case basis and expert judgement is necessary to fully interpret the results. Several test-designs and evaluation of these have been published, ranging from standardised gnotobiotic systems (Cortet *et al*., 2003) to tests including indigenous soils and soil populations (Parmelee *et al*., 1997, Knacker and van Gestel 2004). Fixed trigger values for acceptability of effects are not recommended as the impact of treatments can be significantly different depending on the test design. However, laboratory based multi-species studies should in general be given the same general consideration as the single species test, e.g. with regard to reliability and relevance. For terrestrial model ecosystems there may be a large natural variation inherent in the test systems compared to single species test. To address diversity and species interaction the multi-test systems should contain sufficient complex assemblages of species with diverse life strategies. In assessing the reliability of results from a model-ecosystems special attention should be given to the statistical evaluation and the capability of the test design to identify possible impact. Effects observed through time, whether permanent or transitory should be explored. Combinations of both univariate and multivariate analyses are preferred; guidance can be obtained from Morgan and Knäcker (1994), van den Brink & Braak (1999), Scott-Fordsmand & Damgaard (2006).

### Field testing

In field trials, population level effects as opposed to effects on individuals are the desired goal or endpoint of the studies. The population effect on a species or group of species including time to recover should be analysed in comparison to control plots. Fixed trigger values for acceptability of effects are not recommended, as the impact of treatments can be significantly different for different organisms. Biological characteristics such as development stage, mobility of species and reproduction time can influence the severity of effects. Thus acceptability should be judged on a case-by-case basis and expert judgement is necessary to fully interpret field study results. Where significant effects are detected the duration of effects and range of taxa affected should be taken into consideration (Candolfi *et al*., 2000).

## R.7.11.4.3 Exposure considerations for terrestrial toxicity

Before their use the exposure data should be validated in respect of their completeness, relevance and reliability. Guidance on how to evaluate exposure data will be developed in Section R.5.1. Consideration should be given to whether the substance being assessed can be degraded, biotically or abiotically, to give stable and/or toxic degradation products. Where such degradation can occur the assessment should give due consideration to the properties (including toxic effects) of the products that might arise.

## R.7.11.4.4 Remaining uncertainty

Soil is a very heterogeneous environment compartment where abiotic parameters and soil structural conditions can vary within very short distances; these introduce an extra dimension of variability into soil test. Therefore it is important to have a good characterisation of the media chosen in the test. In addition there is usually a larger variation around the individual results than from other media. For non-standard tests the variation in the toxicity results should be comparable to the one required in standard tests.

The available standardised test methods only deal with a few taxa of soil invertebrates. Therefore, not all specific effects of substances on the wide range of organisms normally present in soil may be covered by the available test methods. As these organisms may play an important role in the soil community, it may be relevant to consider results from non-standard test designs in completing Chemical Safety Assessment. Further standard test methods may be developed and a need may exist to revise the soil safety assessment concept accordingly in future.

## R.7.11.5 Conclusions on "Effects on Terrestrial Organisms"

### R.7.11.5.1 Concluding on suitability for Classification and Labelling

There are no soil toxicity data requirements set out in Annex I to the Regulation (EC) No 1272/2008 (CLP Regulation) .

### R.7.11.5.2 Concluding on suitability for PBT/vPvB assessment

There is a potential use for both short-term and long-term soil toxicity data in determining the Toxicity component of PBT. However, there are currently no criteria included in Section 1.1.3 of Annex XIII to REACH for soil toxicity and thus no specific data requirements.

Where data exist showing short or long-term toxicity to soil organisms using standard tests on soil invertebrates or plants, these should be considered along with other data in a *Weight-of-Evidence* approach to the toxicity criteria (Section 3.2.3 of Annex XIII to REACH).

### R.7.11.5.3 Concluding on suitability for use in Chemical Safety Assessment

Soil toxicity data are used in the chemical safety assessment to establish a $PNEC_{soil}$ as part of a quantitative assessment of risk to the soil compartment. Ideally, this will be calculated based on good quality data from long-term toxicity studies on soil organisms covering plants, invertebrates and micro-organisms. Where such data exist from studies conducted to standardised internationally accepted guidelines, these may be used directly to establish the $PNEC_{soil}$.

It must be recognized, however, that these type of data are rarely available, and may not be needed to characterize the risk for soil. In defining what can be considered as sufficiency of information, it is also necessary to have all available information on water solubility, octanol/water partitioning (log $K_{ow}$), vapour pressure, and biotic and abiotic degradation, and the potential for exposure

When soil exposure is considered negligible, i.e. where there is low likelihood of land spreading of sewage sludge, or aerial deposition of the substance and other pathways such as irrigation or contact with contaminated waste are equally unlikely, then neither a PEC, nor PNEC can or need be calculated and no soil toxicity data are necessary.

In general, the data available will be less than that required to derive a definitive PNEC for soil organisms. The following sections, nevertheless describe the circumstances where data-sets of differing quality and completeness can be considered 'fit for the purpose' of calculating a PNEC for the purposes of the chemical safety assessment.

Furthermore, a section on the *Weight-of-Evidence* approach is included at the end of this chapter, and guidance on testing strategies is presented in Figure R.7.11—2 and Figure

R.7.11—3 and a Table R.7.11—2 in Section R.7.11.6 (integrated testing strategy) of this report.

### Where no soil toxicity data are available

There will be circumstances where no soil organism toxicity data are available. In making a judgment on whether soil organism toxicity data should be generated, and if so which these should be, all available data including those available on aquatic organisms should first be examined as part of a stepwise approach. Where the data available are sufficient to derive a PNEC for aquatic organisms, this PNEC can be used in a screening assessment for soil risks through the use of the EPM approach. If comparison of a $PNEC_{soil}$ derived by EPM from the aquatic PNEC, shows a PEC:PNEC ratio <1, then the information available may be sufficient to conclude the soil assessment. Where the adsorption is likely to be high, i.e. where the log $K_{ow}$ or Log $K_{oc}$ >5, the PEC:PNEC ratio is multiplied by 10. The use of the EPM method, however, provides only an uncertain assessment of risk and, while it can be used to modify the standard data-set requirements of Annex IX and X, it cannot alone be used to obviate the need for further information under this Annex. This will be further elaborated on in Section R.7.11.6 and portrayed in tabular format in Table R.7.11—2 of Section R.7.11.6.

Where the PEC:PNEC ratio >1, then the information based on aquatic toxicity data alone (i.e. PEC/$PNEC_{screen}$) is insufficient and soil toxicity data will need to be generated.

When the substance is also readily degradable, biotically or abiotically, however, and has a log $K_{ow}$ <5, this screening assessment showing no risk using aquatic toxicity data is sufficient to obviate the need for further information under Annex IX. In other circumstances, the derivation of a $PNEC_{screen}$ derived from aquatic toxicity data alone would be insufficient to derogate from Annex IX or X testing.

As is stated above, it will normally not be possible to derive a robust PNEC for the purposes of a soil screening assessment from acute aquatic toxicity testing showing no effect. This is, particularly true for poorly soluble substances. Where the water solubility is <1 mg/l, the absence of acute toxicity can be discounted as reliable indicator for potential effects on soil organism due to the low exposures in the test. The absence of chronic or long-term effects in aquatic organisms up to the substance solubility limit, or of acute effects within the solubility range above 10 mg/l can be used as part of a *Weight-of-Evidence* argument to modify/waive the data requirements of Annex IX and X.

Except in the specific situation described above, soil organism toxicity data are required as defined in Annex IX and X in order to derive or confirm a PNEC for the soil.

Normally, three $L(E)C_{50}$ values from standard, internationally accepted guidelines are required in order to derive a $PNEC_{soil}$. The species tested should cover three taxonomic groups, and include plants, invertebrates and micro-organisms as defined in Annex IX. Normally, when new testing is required, these tests would be the OECD Guidelines Tests 207 (Earthworm acute Toxicity), 208 (Higher Plant Toxicity) and 216 (Nitrogen Transformation). The PNEC can be derived by applying an assessment factor to the lowest $L(E)C_{50}$ from these test.

Before new testing is conducted, however, all available existing information should be gathered to determine whether the requirements of the Annexes are met. In general, the data required should cover not just different taxa but also different pathways of exposure (e.g. feeding, surface contact), and this should be taken into account when deciding on the adequacy and relevance of the data. Thus earthworm testing allows potential uptake via each of surface contact, soil particle ingestion and porewater, while plant exposure will be largely via porewater.

In considering all the data available, expert judgment should be used in deciding whether the *Weight of Evidence* (see below) will allow specific testing to be omitted.

In general, where there is no toxicity L(E)C50 in the standard acute toxicity tests at >10 mg/l, or no effects in chronic toxicity at the limit of water solubility, or the screening assessment based on EPM shows no concern, then a single short-term soil test on a suitable species would be adequate to meet the requirements of Annex IX. The soil PNEC would be derived by application of appropriate assessment factors to the aquatic data, and the soil short-term data, and the lowest value taken. Where the substance is highly adsorptive, e.g. where the log $K_{ow}/K_{oc}$ >5, and/or the substance is very persistent in soil, this single test should be a long-term test. Substances with a half-life >180 days are considered to be very persistent in soil. This persistence would be assumed in the absence of specific soil data, unless the substance is readily degradable. The choice of test (invertebrate / plant / micro-organism) would be based on all the information available, but in the absence of a clear indication of selective toxicity, an invertebrate (earthworm or collembolan) test is preferred.

### Acute or short-term soil organism toxicity data

If data on soil toxicity are already available, this should be examined with respect to its adequacy (reliability and relevance). Normally, micro-organism or plant testing alone would not be considered sufficient, but would be considered as part of a *Weight-of-Evidence* approach. In circumstances where less than a full soil toxicity data-set is available, both the available soil data and the EPM modified aquatic toxicity data should be used in deriving the $PNEC_{soil}$. In such circumstances, where the subsequent PEC:PNEC <1, this would constitute an adequate data-set and no further testing would be required

Where inhibition of sewage sludge microbial activity has been observed in Annex VIII testing, a test on soil microbial activity will additionally be necessary for a valid PNEC to be derived.

In all other circumstances, three short-term soil toxicity tests are needed to meet the requirements of Annex IX. Where the substance is highly adsorptive or very persistent as described above, the effect of long-term exposures should be estimated. Hence at least the invertebrate data should be derived from a long-term toxicity test, although other long-term toxicity data may be considered. It may be possible to show by *Weight of Evidence* from other tests, that no further specific test is needed. Where such an argument is made, it must be clearly documented in the chemical safety assessment.

The L(E)C50s are used to derive a PNEC using assessment factors.

### Chronic or long-term soil organism toxicity data

Chronic or long-term toxicity tests on plants and/or soil invertebrates conducted according to established guidelines can be used to derive a $PNEC_{soil}$. The NOEC or appropriate $EC_x$ may be used with an appropriate assessment factor. Where such data from chronic or long-term tests are available, they should be used in preference to short-term tests to derive the PNEC. In general, three long-term NOECs/$EC_x$s are required, although the PNEC can be derived on two or one value with appropriate adjustment of the assessment factor. The tests should include an invertebrate (preferably earthworm reproduction test), a higher plant study and a study on micro-organisms (preferably on the nitrogen cycle). Other long-term tests can also be used if conducted to acceptable standard guidelines (see Section R.7.11.4).

Where adequate long-term data are available, it would generally not be necessary to conduct further testing on short-term or acute effects.

Where long-term toxicity data are not available, all the other data available should be examined to determine whether the data needs of the chemical safety assessment are met. The adequacy and relevance of these data are described above. Only where the data on aquatic effects, and/or short-term toxicity are insufficient to complete the chemical safety assessment, i.e. risks have been identified based on these screening data, new long-term testing need to be conducted.

**Figure R.7.11—1 *Weight-of-Evidence* approach**

Step 1 – Characterization of the substance

- Verification of the identity/structure
- Physico-chemical properties of the substance
- Information about degradation of the substance in soil
- Identification of potential metabolites
- Preliminary analysis of uptake and fate

↓

Step 2 – Identification of possible analogues

- Collection of possible analogues
- Identification of new substance categories
- QSARs

↓

Step 3 – Collating of both testing and non-testing data

- *In vitro* methods
- EPM
- Non-standard *in vivo* soil testing
- Standard *in vivo* soil testing data

↓

Step 4 – *Weight-of-Evidence* assessment

- Quality assessment of existing data
- Identification of data-gaps
- Consider information relevant for waiving
- Summary of remaining uncertainty

The flow diagram above outlines a systematic approach how to use all available data in a *Weight-of-Evidence* decision. It provides a step-wise procedure for the assessment of different types of information, which might be helpful to come to an overall conclusion. The scheme proposes a flexible sequence of steps, the order of which depends on the quality and quantity of data: When for any given substance *in vivo* soil data of adequate quality are available (step 3) performance of step 2 may not be necessary to derive a $PNEC_{soil}$. However, it is deemed that even when in-vivo data are available, a *Weight-of-Evidence* assessment with other types of data may be useful to increase the confidence with the derived $PNEC_{soil}$ and reduce the remaining uncertainty.

### Step 1 – Characterization of the substance

Since there are no current requirements for soil testing to provide hazard data for classification and labelling (Section R.7.11.5.1) nor for PBT assessment (Section R.7.11.5.2) the need for any effect data on soil organisms should be steered by the need to develop the chemical safety assessment and in particular by the environmental exposure, fate and behaviour of the substance. The starting point of any assessment within the soil area should therefore be to gather key parameters that provide insight to fate and behaviour of the substance:

Physico-chemical properties. Water solubility, Kow, Koc, Henry's constant etc. will provide information about the distribution in soil, water and air after deposition in/on soil.

Data on degradation (in soil) will provide information as to whether the substance is likely to disappear from the soil after deposition, or alternatively remain in the soil or even accumulate over time which may indicate a potential to cause long-term effects. Any (major) metabolites being formed should be considered to provide a comprehensive safety assessment of a substance after deposition on/in soil

### Step 2 – Identification of possible analogues and alternative data

The effort to identify chemical analogues (read-across) which may take away/modify the need to search/generate substance-specific data is often the more resource-effective way to proceed in the assessment. Fate data on an analogue may allow effect-testing of the substance to become more focused. Effect data on an analogue substance may potentially be used to waive certain substance-specific testing requirements. It is however important to understand the limitations of assessing a substance by surrogate data from analogues, therefore the assessment of remaining uncertainty (see also step 4) is of primary importance here.

Where non-testing data (QSARs) are available, these may also be used for a first screening assessment and to waive certain substance-specific soil-testing requirements (see Section R.7.11.5.3).

### Step 3 – Collating of both testing and non-testing data

Highest priority is given to *in vivo* data which fulfil the data requirements specified in Annex IX and X. Where such data are available, they are subjected to a careful check of their quality and relevancy. Good quality data can be used to derive a quantitative conclusion on the endpoint.

### Step 4. *Weight-of-Evidence* assessment

The principle of any comprehensive assessment is to gather all available and potentially relevant information on a substance, regardless whether these are non-testing (QSARs), EPM, or soil specific testing (*in vitro* or *in vivo*) data. Any source of information can potentially be used to focus an assessment or limit uncertainties that remain after derivation of the endpoint. Even when standard effect data on all 3 taxonomic groups are available for a substance, further non-standard or non-testing data can be useful in refining the assessment. Rather than a sequential gathering of data, a single step collating all the available information is the way into a *Weight-of-Evidence* assessment for soil organisms

<u>Standard studies available (no data-gap)</u>

The *Weight-of-Evidence* approach normally starts with an evaluation of the quality of available data. Standard effects data, using standard species, performed according to internationally harmonized guidelines (OECD/ISO) and generated under quality criteria (GLP) clearly represent the highest quality category of data, followed by secondary sources; non-standard *in vivo* test, *invitro* test and non-testing data. However, even when standard-tests are available for a substance, further secondary sources of information (non-standard testing or non-testing) can be used to gain confidence in the assessment. Supporting evidence from secondary sources reduce the remaining uncertainty associated with any assessment. Contradictory information between primary and secondary sources indicate the need to perform a thorough uncertainty analysis.

In the event that more than a single standard study is available for the same species and same endpoint, and there are no obvious quality differences between the studies a geometric mean value can be derived to be used in assessing the endpoint if the data are obtained in soils in which the bioavailability of the substance is expected to be similar. Even in case where data are obtained in soils in which the bioavailability of the substance is significantly different, a geometric mean can still be used when the data can be normalized to a given standard condition. If normalization of the data is not possible, the value obtained in the soil with the highest bioavailability is to be taken to derive the PNEC.

If multiple data are available for the same species but different endpoints, in principle the most sensitive endpoint is to be taken to derive the PNEC. Prior to this step however, the relevance of all endpoints to describe the state of the ecosystem is to be considered.

If more than a single species was tested in any given organisms group (plant, invertebrate, micro-organism), allowance should be made for the reduction of the uncertainty that the availability of such data may provide. Species Sensitivity Distribution curves (SSD) and Hazard Concentration (HCx) approaches have been used successfully in Chemical Safety Assessments.

<u>Missing standard studies (data-gaps)</u>

A full set of standard (GLP) effect test is only infrequently available. There may therefore be a potential data gaps for substances reaching production volumes > 100 t/y (Annex IX and X). In this case secondary source data should be used to study whether there is a need for generating such data to complete the assessment of the end-point, e.g.:

If testing data on non-standard species is available, and these studies were carried out according to a high scientific quality, one may consider to waive the requirement for a standard test, e.g. a reliable NOEC for a soil-insect other than collembolan may be used as surrogate data for the group of soil invertebrates, especially when this test indicates that soil invertebrates are not particularly sensitive to the substance that is assessed.

The availability of a study on a standard species which does not completely follow OECD or ISO guidelines can be used to waive the requirement to run a new study on this standard species, if the data are scientifically sound, and indicate that this group of organisms is not critical in the safety assessment.

A further use of secondary source effect data is to steer testing requirements, especially in higher tiers. The identification of a particular sensitive group of organisms in literature, may lead to the need to extend the scope of higher tier/multi-species studies to include this group of organisms. For example information from secondary sources may show that the molecule has specific activity against a certain group of organism (e.g. plants) and this may allow the assessor to conclude on the end-point based on standard testing for plants only, and waive the invertebrate and micro-organism testing requirements in Annex IX and X.

If there are several secondary sources data available for the same species, data can be combined to increase either the statistical power of the conclusion, or the confidence that the assessor can have in deriving a (screening-) endpoint based on the secondary data.

At the end of any assessment - derivation of the endpoint (PNEC) and assessment of the remaining uncertainty associated with the assessment/endpoint is required. The TGD explicitly deals with uncertainties by using assessment factors in the derivation of PNEC's, but does so merely based on the amount of information available. It does provide little guidance on how to modify the assessment based on the specific profile of a substance, nor on the quality of the individual toxicological values (NOEC, ECx) derived from the studies. The confidence-level associated with any endpoint from an individual study is largely disregarded. Therefore, in parallel to the quantitative assessment of the endpoint some estimate on how much confidence the assessor has in this end-point should ideally be expressed by means of an uncertainty analysis.

## R.7.11.6 Integrated testing strategy (ITS) for Effects on Terrestrial Organisms.

Fundamentally based on a *Weight-of-Evidence* approach, the integrated testing strategy (ITS) should be developed with the aim of generating sufficient data for a substance to support its classification (or exclusion from classification), PBT/vPvB assessment and risk assessment. For the soil compartment there are currently no criteria for classification and PBT assessment, therefore the ITS for soil is especially focussed on generating data for the chemical safety assessment.

### R.7.11.6.1 Objective / General principles

The main objective for this testing strategy is to provide guidance on a stepwise approach to hazard identification with regard to the endpoint. A key principle of the strategy is that the results of one study are evaluated before another is initiated. The strategy should seek to ensure that the data requirements are met in the most efficient manner so that animal usage and costs are minimised.

#### R.7.11.6.2 Preliminary considerations

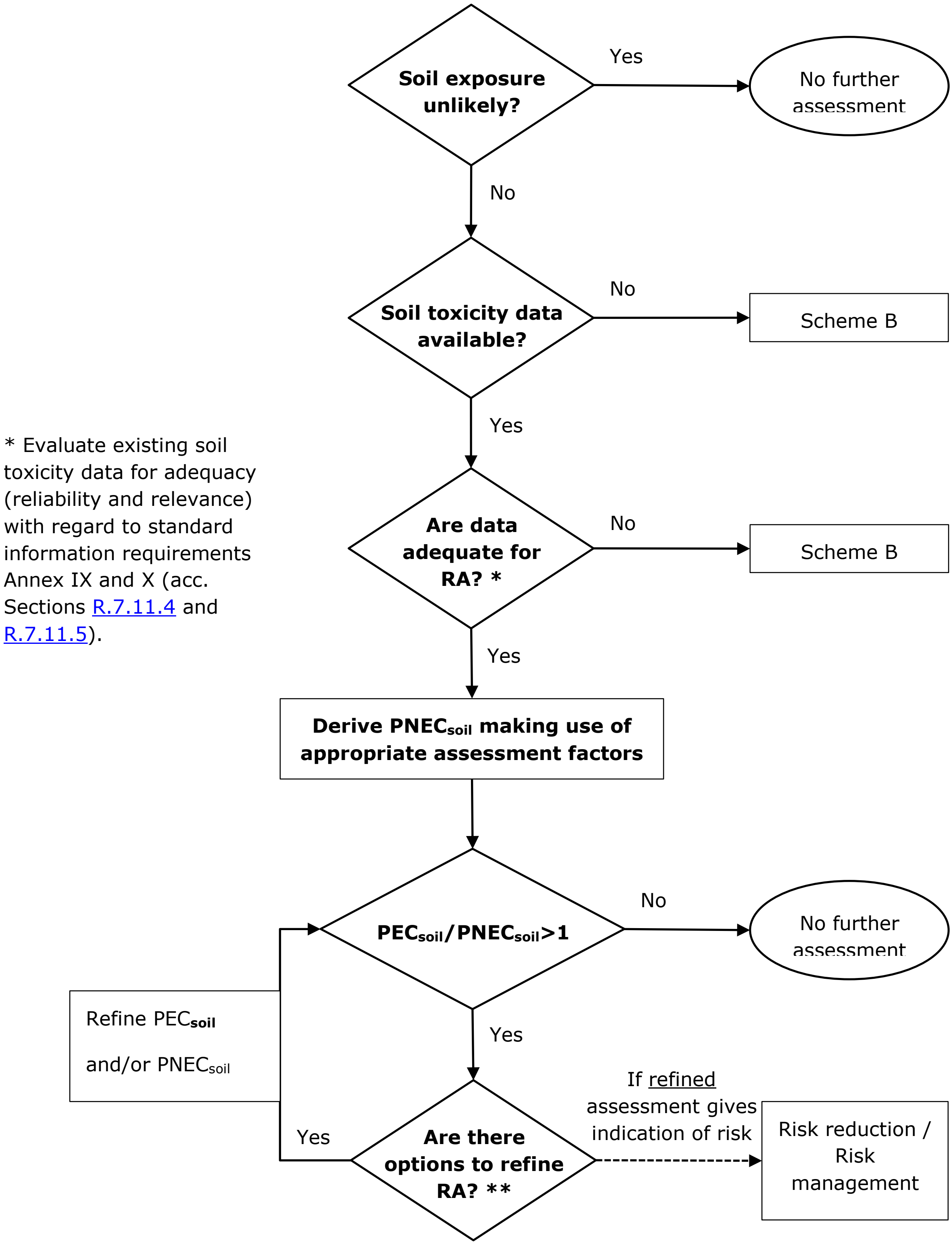
The guidance given in Section R.7.11.2 to R.7.11.4 above will enable the identification of the data that are needed to meet the requirements of REACH as defined in Annexes VII to X. Careful consideration of existing environmental data, exposure characteristics and current risk management procedures is recommended to ascertain whether the fundamental objectives of the ITS have already been met. Guidance has been provided on other factors that might mitigate data requirements, e.g. the possession of other toxic properties, characteristics that make testing technically not possible – for more guidance, see Section R.5.2.

#### R.7.11.6.3 Testing strategy

The general risk assessment approach is given in Figure R.7.11—2 and the ITS in Figure R.7.11—3.

A testing strategy has been developed for the endpoint to take account of existing environmental data, exposure characteristics as well as the specific rules for adaptation from standard information requirements, as described in column 2 of Annexes IX and X, together with some general rules for adaptation from standard information requirements in Annex IX.

**Figure R.7.11—2 Scheme A: General risk assessment scheme**




** Consider both options: Refinement of $PNEC_{soil}$ and/ or refinement of $PEC_{soil}$.

**Figure R.7.11—3 Scheme B: Integrated testing strategy (Annex IX and Annex X substances)**

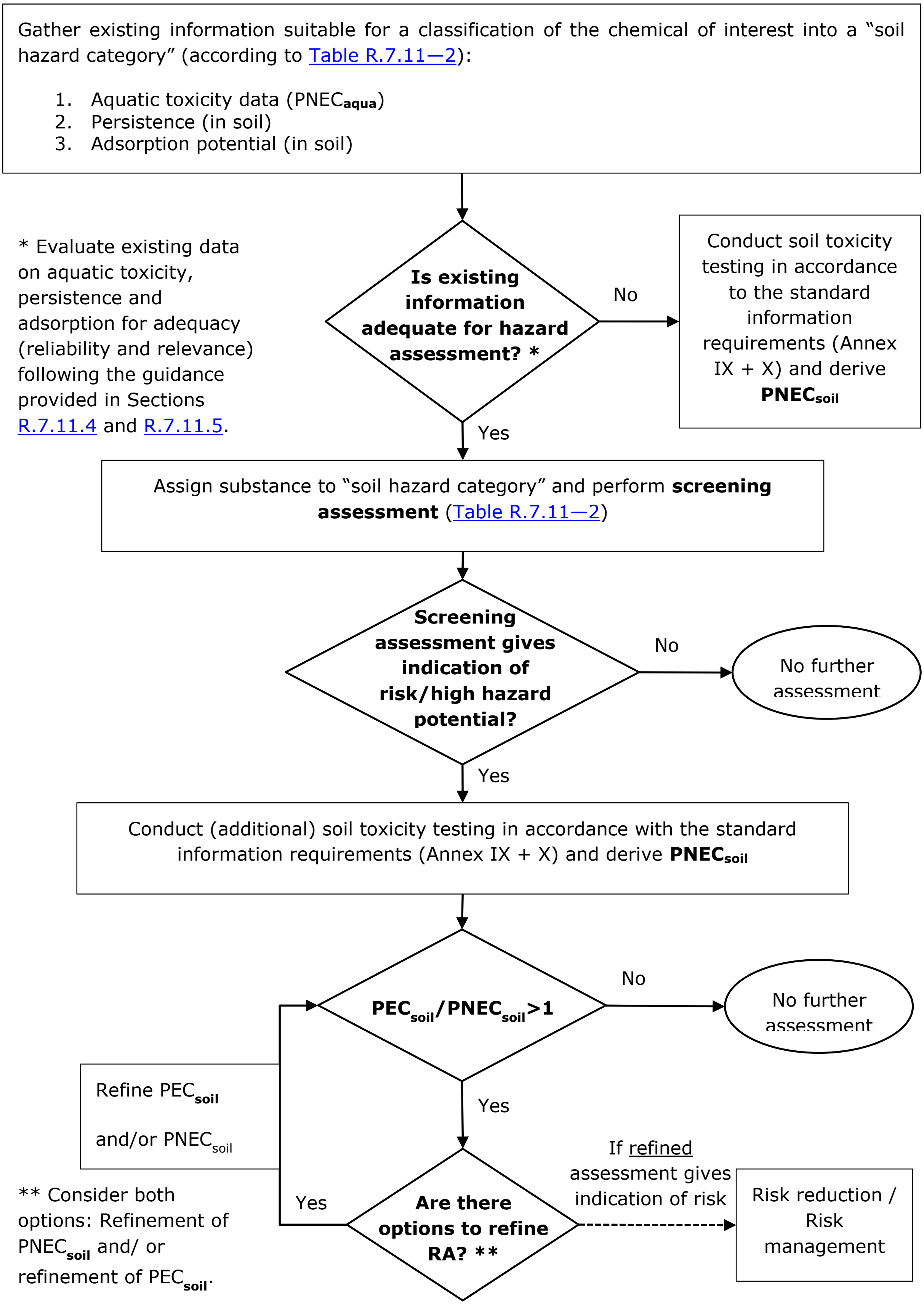


**Table R.7.11—2 Soil hazard categories and screening assessment (for waiving standard information requirements according Annex IX and X)**

| | Hazard category 1 | Hazard category 2 | Hazard category 3 | Hazard category 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Is there indication for **high adsorption**[15] **OR high persistence**[16] of the substance in soil? | No | No | yes | Yes |
| Is there indication that the substance is very toxic[17]<br><br>to aquatic organisms? | No | Yes | No | Yes |
| Approach for screening assessment | PEC/ $PNEC_{screen}$<br><br>(based on EPM[18]) | PEC/ $PNEC_{screen}$<br><br>(based on EPM)<br><br>AND<br><br>conduct a confirmatory short-term soil toxicity testing<br><br>(e.g. one limit test with the most sensitive organism group as indicated from aquatic toxicity data) | PEC × 10 / $PNEC_{screen}$<br><br>( based on EPM)<br><br>AND<br><br>conduct a confirmatory long-term soil toxicity testing<br><br>(e.g. one limit test with the most sensitive organism group as indicated from aquatic toxicity data) | Screening assessment based on EPM not recommended, intrinsic properties indicate a high hazard potential to soil organisms |

[15] log $K_{OW}$ > 5 or a ionisable substance

[16] DT50 > 180 days (default setting, unless classified as readily biodegradable)

[17] EC/LC50 < 1 mg/L for algae, daphnia or fish

[18] EPM: Equilibrium Partitioning Method

| | Hazard category 1 | Hazard category 2 | Hazard category 3 | Hazard category 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Consequences from screening assessment & waiving of standard information requirements<br><br>toxicity testing with soil organisms and derivation of $PNEC_{soil}$ | If $PEC/PNEC_{screen}$ < 1: No toxicity testing for soil organisms need to be done<br><br>If $PEC/PNEC_{screen}$ > 1: Conduct short-term toxicity tests according to the standard information requirements Annex IX (invertebrates, micro-organisms and plants), choose lowest value for derivation of $PNEC_{soil}$ | If $PEC/PNEC_{screen}$ < 1 and no indication of risk from confirmatory short-term soil toxicity testing: No further toxicity testing for soil organisms need to be done<br><br>If $PEC/PNEC_{screen}$ > 1 or indication of risk from confirmatory short-term soil toxicity test: Conduct short-term toxicity tests according to the standard information requirements Annex IX (invertebrates, micro-organisms and plants), choose lowest value for derivation of $PNEC_{soil}$ | If $PEC/PNEC_{screen}$ < 1 and no indication of risk from confirmatory long-term soil toxicity testing: No further toxicity testing for soil organisms need to be done<br><br>If $PEC/PNEC_{screen}$ > 1 or indication of risk from confirmatory long-term soil toxicity test: Conduct long-term toxicity tests according to the standard information requirements Annex X (invertebrates and plants), choose lowest value for derivation of $PNEC_{soil}$ | Conduct long-term toxicity tests according to the standard information requirements Annex X (invertebrates and plants), choose lowest value for derivation of $PNEC_{soil}$ |
| Options for refinement of $PNEC_{soil}$ (but also consider refinement of $PEC_{soil}$) | If $PEC_{soil}$ / $PNEC_{soil}$ < 1: No additional long-term toxicity testing for soil organisms need to be done<br><br>If $PEC_{soil}$ / $PNEC_{soil}$ > 1: Conduct additional or higher tier test on soil organisms | If $PEC_{soil}$ / $PNEC_{soil}$ < 1: No additional long-term toxicity testing for soil organisms need to be done<br><br>If $PEC_{soil}$ / $PNEC_{soil}$ > 1: Conduct additional or higher Tier test on soil organisms | If $PEC_{soil}$ / $PNEC_{soil}$ < 1: No additional long-term toxicity testing for soil organisms need to be done<br><br>If $PEC_{soil}$ / $PNEC_{soil}$ > 1: Conduct additional or higher Tier test on soil organisms | If $PEC_{soil}$ / $PNEC_{soil}$ < 1: No additional long-term toxicity testing for soil organisms need to be done<br><br>If $PEC_{soil}$ / $PNEC_{soil}$ > 1: Conduct additional or higher Tier test on soil organisms |

### R.7.11.7 References

ASTM (1993). Standard guide for conducting a terrestrial soil-core microcosm test. American Society for Testing and Materials. Annual Book of Standards 1197, 546-557.

Candolfi *et al*. (2000) Guidance document on regulatory testing and risk assessment for plant protection products with non-target arthropods. From the ESCORT 2 workshop. A joint BART, EPPO/CoE, OECD, and IOBC Workshop organised in conjunction with SETAC-Europe and EC.

Cortet J, Joffre R, Elmholt S., Krogh PH (2003) Increasing species and trophic diversity of mesofauna affects fungal biomass, mesofauna community structure and organic matter decomposition processes. Biol. Fertility of Soils., 37: 302-312.

CSTEE (2000): Scientific committee on toxicity, ecotoxicity, and the environment: Opinion on the available scientific approaches to assess the potential effects and risk of chemicals on terrestrial ecosystems. Opinion expressed at the 19th CSTEE plenary meeting – Brussels, 9 November 2000.

De Jong FMW, van Beelen P, Smit CE, Montforts MHMM (2006) Guidance for summarising earthworm field studies, A guidance document of the Dutch Platform for the Assessment of Higher Tier Studies, RIVM.

Di Toro DM, Zarba CS, Hansen DJ, Berry WJ, Schwarz RC, Cowan CE, Pavlou SP, Allen HE, Thomas NA, Paquin PR (1991). Technical basis of establishing sediment quality criteria for non-ionic organic chemicals using equilibrium partitioning. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 10, 1541-1583.

Edwards CA, Knacker T, Pokarshevskii AA, Subler S and Parmelee R (1997). Use of soil microcosms in assessing the effects of pesticides on soil ecosystems. In: Environmental behaviour of crop protection chemicals. International Atomic Energy Agency, Vienna, 435-451.

EU (2003): Technical Guidance Document in support of Commission Directive 93/67/EEC on Risk Assessment for new notified substances, Commission Regulation (EC) No 1488/94 on Risk Assessment for existing substances and Directive 98/8/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council concerning the placing of biocidal products on the market. (http://ihcp.jrc.ec.europa.eu/our_activities/public-health/risk_assessment_of_Biocides/doc/tgd/)

Gorsuch J, Merrington G and Welp G (2006) Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry Vol 25 nr 3 Special issue: Risk Assessment on Metals.

ISO (1993). Soil Quality – Effects of pollutants on earthworms (*Eisenia fetida*). Part 1: Determination of acute toxicity using artificial soil substrate. International Organisation for Standardisation. Guideline no. 11268-1.

ISO (1997a). Soil quality – Biological methods - Determination of nitrogen mineralisation and nitrification in soils and the influence of chemicals on these processes. International Organisation for Standardisation. Guideline no. 14238.

ISO (1997b). Soil quality – Laboratory incubations systems for measuring the mineralisation of organic chemicals in soil under aerobic conditions. International Organisation for Standardisation. Guideline no. 14239.

ISO (1998). Soil Quality – Effects of pollutants on earthworms (*Eisenia fetida*). Part 2: Determination of effects on reproduction. International Organisation for Standardisation. Guideline no. 11268-2.

ISO (1999a). Soil Quality – Inhibition of reproduction of Collembola (*Folsomia candida*) by soil pollutants. International Organisation for Standardisation. Guideline no. 11267.

ISO (1999b). Soil quality – effects of pollutants on earthworms. Part 3: Guidance on the determination of effects in field situations. International Organisation for Standardisation. Guideline no. 11268-3.

ISO (2002). Soil quality - Determination of abundance and activity of the soil micro-flora using respiration curves. International Organisation for Standardisation. Guideline no. 17155.

ISO (2004a). Soil quality - Determination of potential nitrification and inhibition of nitrification - Rapid test by ammonium oxidation. International Organisation for Standardisation. Guideline no. 15685.

ISO (2004b). Soil quality - Effects of pollutants on Enchytraeidae (*Enchytraeus sp*.) - Determination of effects on reproduction and survival. International Organisation for Standardisation. Guideline no. 16387.

ISO (2005a). Soil quality – Biological methods – Chronic toxicity in higher plants. International Organisation for Standardisation. Guideline no. 22030.

ISO (2005b) Soil quality – Determination of the effects of pollutants on soil flora – Part 2: Effects of chemicals on the emergence and growth of higher plants. International Organisation for Standardisation. Guideline no.11269-2.

Jänsch S, Amorim MJ, Römbke J. (2006) Identification of the ecological requirements of the most important terrestrial ecotoxicological test species, Environmental Reviews, 13: 51-83.

Knacker T, van Gestel CAM, Jones SE, Soares AMVM, Schallnass H-J, Förster B, Edwards CA (2004) Ring-Testing and Field-Validation of a Terrestrial Model Ecosystem (TME) – An Instrument for Testing Potentially Harmful Substances:Conceptual Approach and Study Design Ecotoxicology, 13: 9-27

Løkke H and van Gestel CAM (eds) (1998). Handbook of Soil Invertebrate Toxicity Tests. Ecological and Environmental Toxicology Series, John Wiley and Sons Publishers, Chichester, UK.

Morgan E, Knacker T (1994) The role of laboratory terrestrial model ecosystems in the testing of potential harmful substances. Ecotoxicology, 3: 213-233.

OECD (1984). Earthworm Acute Toxicity Test. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD). OECD Guideline for the Testing of Chemicals No.207, Paris.

OECD (2000a). Soil Microorganisms: Nitrogen Transformation Test. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD). OECD Guideline for the Testing of Chemicals No.216, Paris.

OECD (2000b). Soil Microorganisms: Carbon Transformation Test. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD). OECD Guideline for the Testing of Chemicals No.217, Paris.

OECD (2004a). Earthworm Reproduction Test. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD). OECD Guideline for the Testing of Chemicals No.222, Paris.

OECD (2004b). Enchytraeid Reproduction Test. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD). OECD Guideline for the Testing of Chemicals No.220, Paris.

OECD (2006): Current approaches in the statistical analysis of ecotoxicity data: a guidance to application. OECD series on testing and assessment, No. 54 (ENV/JM/MONO(2006)18.

OECD (2006a). Terrestrial Plant Test: Seedling Emergence and Seedling Growth Test. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD). OECD Guideline for the Testing of Chemicals No.208, Paris.

OECD (2006b). Terrestrial Plant Test: Vegetative Vigour Test. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD). OECD Guideline for the Testing of Chemicals No.227, Paris.

OECD (2006c): Current Approaches in the Statistical Analysis of Ecotoxicity Data: A Guidance to Application. Document no 54.

Oorts K, Ghesquière U, Swinnen K, Smolders E (2006) Soil properties affecting the toxicity of CuCl 2 and NiCl 2 for soil microbial processes in freshly spiked soils. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, 25: 836-844.

Parmelee RW, Phillips CT, Checkai RT, Bohlen P J (1997) Determining the effects of pollutants on soil faunal communities and trophic structure using a refined microcosm system. Environmental. Toxicology and Chemistry, 16: 1212-1217.

Römbke J, Knacker T, Förster B, Marcinkowski A (1994). Comparison of effects of two pesticides on soil organisms in laboratory tests, microcosms and in the field. In: Ecotoxicology of soil organisms. Donker M, Eijsackers H, and Heimbach F (eds.) Lewis Publ., Chelsea, Michigan, 229-240.

Spurgeon DJ, Svendsen C, Hankard PK, Toal M, McLennan D, Wright J, Walker L, Ainsworth G, Wienberg C, and Fishwick SK (2004). Application of sublethal ecotoxicological tests for measuring harm in terrestrial ecosystems. R&D Technical Report P5-063/TR2. Centre for Ecology and Hydrology and Environment Agency.

Scott-Fordsmand J, Damgaard C (2006) Uncertainty analysis of single concentration exposure data for risk assessment- introducing the species effect distribution (SED) approach. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, 25: 3078-3081.

Sverdrup LE, Jensen J, Kelley AE, Krogh PH, Stenersen J (2002) Effects of eight polycyclic aromatic compounds on the survival and reproduction of *Enchytraeus crypticus* (Oligochaeta, Clitellata).Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 2002 21:109–114.

Van den Brink P J, Ter Braak C J F (1999). Principal response curves: Analysis of time-dependent multivariate responses of biological community to stress. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, 18: 138-148.

van Gestel CAM, Ma WC, Smith CE (1990)  An approach to quantitative structure-activity relationships in terrestrial ecotoxicology: earthworm toxicity studies. Chemosphere, 21: 1023-1033.

van Gestel CAM (1992). The influence of soil characteristics on the toxicity of chemicals for earthworms: a review. In: Ecotoxicology of Earthworms. Becker H *et al*. (eds), Intercept, Andover, UK, 44-54.

van Gestel CAM, and Ma W (1993). Development of QSARs in soil ecotoxicology: earthworm toxicity and soil sorption of chlorophenols, chlorobenzenes and chloroanilines. Water, Air and Soil Pollution 69 (3-4), 265-276.

Van Gheluwe M (2006) MERAG – Metal Environmental Risk Assessment –

Wang X, Dong Y, Han S, Wang L (2000) Structure-phytotoxicity relationship: Comparative inhibition of selected nitrogen-containing aromatics to root elongation of Cucumis sativus  Bulletin of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology, 65: 435-442.

Xu S, Li L, Tan Y, Feng J, Wei Z, Wang L.(2000) Prediction and QSAR Analysis of Toxicity to Photobacterium phosphoreum for a Group of Heterocyclic Nitrogen Compounds Bulletin of Environmental Contamination, 64:316-322.

# Appendix to Section R.7.11

Appendix R.7.11—1 Selected Soil Test Methodologies

## Appendix R.7.11—1 Selected Soil Test Methodologies

**Table R.7.11—3 Selected Soil Test Methodologies**

| Test Organism | Duration | End points | Reference/Source | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Microbial Processes** | | | | |
| Microbial Processes<br><br>N-Transformation | ≥28 d | M | (i) OECD 216 Soil Microorganisms, Nitrogen Transformation Test (2000).<br>(ii) ISO 14238 Soil quality – Biological methods: Determination of nitrogen mineralisation and nitrification in soils and the influence of chemicals on these processes (1997). | Based on soil microflora nitrate production.<br><br>Bacteria are present at up to 10 million per $cm^2$ in soils. This corresponds to several tonnes per hectare. |
| Microbial Processes<br><br>C-Transformation | ≥28 d | M | (i) OECD 217 Soil Microorganisms, Carbon Transformation Test (2000).<br>(ii) ISO 14239 Soil quality – Laboratory incubations systems for measuring the mineralisation of organic chemicals in soil under aerobic conditions (1997). | Based on soil microflora respiration rate.<br><br>Bacteria are present at up to 10 million per $cm^2$ in soils. This corresponds to several tonnes per hectare. |
| **Invertebrate Fauna** | | | | |

| Test Organism | Duration | End points | Reference/Source | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Eisenia fetida/andrei*<br><br>(Oligochaeta) | 7-14 d | S | (i) OECD 207 Earthworm acute toxicity tests (1984). (ii) ISO 11268-1 Soil Quality – Effects of pollutants on earthworms (*Eisenia fetida*). Part 1: Determination of acute toxicity using artificial soil substrate (1993). (iii) EEC (1985) 79/831. (iv) ASTM E1676-97 Standard guide for conducting laboratory soil toxicity or bioaccumulation tests with the Lumbricid earthworm *Eisenia fetida* (1997). | Adult survival assessed after 1 – 2 weeks.<br><br>Important ecological function (enhance decomposition and mineralisation via incorporation of matter into soil).<br><br>Important food source and potential route of bioaccumulation by higher organisms.<br><br>Large size/ease of handling.<br><br>Readily cultured/maintained in the laboratory.<br><br>Litter-dwelling epigeic species.<br><br>Standard test organism for terrestrial ecotoxicology.<br><br>The Lumbricidae account for 12% of the edaphon (soil biota) by biomass and are therefore important prey species. |

| Test Organism | Duration | End points | Reference/Source | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Eisenia fetida/andrei*<br><br>(Oligochaeta) | 28d + 28d | S/G/R | (i) OECD (2004). Earthworm Reproduction Test. (ii) ISO 11268-2 Soil Quality – Effects of Pollutants on Earthworms (*Eisenia fetida*). Part 2: Determination of Effects on Reproduction (1998). (iii) EPA (1996). Ecological Effects Test Guidelines. OPPTS 850.6200 Earthworm Subchronic Toxicity Test. US EPA, Prevention, Pesticides and Toxic Substances (7104). EPA712-C-96-167, April 1996. (iv) Kula & Larink (1998). Tests on the earthworms *Eisenia fetida* and *Aporrectodea caliginosa*. In "*Handbook of Soil Invertebrates*" (Eds. Hans Løkke & Cornelis A.M. Van Gestel). John Wiley & Sons: Chichester, UK. | Adult growth and survival assessed after 4 weeks.<br><br>Reproduction (juvenile number) assessed after a further 4 weeks (8 weeks total).<br><br>Relatively long generation time (8 wks).<br><br>Important ecological function (enhance decomposition and mineralisation via incorporation of matter into soil).<br><br>Important food source and potential route of bioaccumulation by higher organisms.<br><br>Large size/ease of handling.<br><br>Readily cultured/maintained in the laboratory.<br><br>Litter-dwelling epigeic species.<br><br>Standard test organism for terrestrial ecotoxicology.<br><br>The Lumbricidae account for 12% of the edaphon (soil biota) by biomass and are therefore important prey species. |

| Test Organism | Duration | End points | Reference/Source | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Aporrectodea caliginosa* (Oligochaeta) | | S/G/R | Kula & Larink (1998). Tests on the earthworms *Eisenia fetida* and *Aporrectodea caliginosa*. In "*Handbook of Soil Invertebrates*" (Eds. Hans Løkke & Cornelis A.M. Van Gestel). John Wiley & Sons: Chichester, UK. | Mortality, growth and cocoon number assessed after 4 weeks.<br><br>Relatively slow reproductive cycle.<br><br>Cultures difficult to maintain.<br><br>Horizontal burrowing (endogeic) mineral soil species.<br><br>Selective feeders digesting fungi, bacteria and algae.<br><br>Dominant in agro-ecosystems. Present at 10 – 250 per $m^2$. |
| *Enchytraeus albidus* (Oligochaeta) | 21 - 42d | S/R | (i) OECD (2004). OECD 220 *Enchytraeidae* Reproduction Test. (ii) ISO 16387 Soil quality - Effects of soil pollutants on enchytraeids: Determination of effects on reproduction and survival (2004). | Adult mortality is assessed after 3 weeks.<br><br>Reproduction (juvenile number) is assessed after a further 3 weeks (6 weeks total).<br><br>Shorter generation time than earthworms.<br><br>Ease of handling/culture.<br><br>Enchytraeidae feed on decomposing plant material and associated micro-organisms i.e., fungi, bacteria & algae.<br><br>Enchytraeids are abundant in many soil types including those from which earthworms are often absent. They account for approximately 0.5% of the edaphon (soil biota) by mass (up to 50 g per $m^2$). This corresponds to approximately 100,000 per $m^2$. |

| Test Organism | Duration | End points | Reference/Source | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Cognettia sphagnetorum* (Oligochaeta) | 70 d | G/R | Rundgren & Augustsson (1998). Test on the Enchytraeid *Cognettia sphagnetorum*. In "*Handbook of Soil Invertebrates*" (Eds. Hans Løkke & Cornelis A.M. Van Gestel). John Wiley & Sons: Chichester, UK. | Mortality and asexual reproduction (fragmentation rate of adults) determined weekly over 10 weeks.<br><br>Easy to culture.<br><br>Enchytraeidae feed on decomposing plant material and associated micro-organisms i.e., fungi, bacteria & algae.<br><br>*C. spagnetorum* is common in bogs, forests and other highly organic habitats. They are present at 10,000 – 25,000 per $m^2$. |
| *Folsomia candida* (Collembola) | 28d | S/R | ISO 11267 Soil Quality – Inhibition of reproduction of Collembola (*Folsomia candida*) (1984). | Survival and reproduction after 4 weeks.<br><br>Short generation time.<br><br>Ease of culture.<br><br>Springtails are important soil litter arthropods playing a role in soil organic matter breakdown and nutrients recycling.<br><br>Feed on bacteria and fungi.<br><br>Collembola are the most abundant soil fauna present at 40,000 to 70,000 per $m^2$. Prey for epigeic invertebrates such as mites, centipedes, spiders and carabid beetles. |

| Test Organism | Duration | End points | Reference/Source | Comments |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| *Isomtoma viridis, Folsomia candida* and *Folsomia fimetaria* (Collembola) | 28 - 56 d | S/G/R | Willes & Krogh (1998). Tests with the Collembolans *Isomtoma viridis*, *Folsomia candida* and *Folsomia fimetaria*. In "*Handbook of Soil Invertebrates*" (Eds. Hans Løkke & Cornelis A.M. Van Gestel). John Wiley & Sons: Chichester, UK. | Survival and reproduction assessed weekly (cf. ISO protocol).<br><br>Dermal and alimentary uptake.<br><br>Springtails are important soil litter arthropods playing q role in soil organic matter breakdown and nutrients recycling.<br><br>Feed on bacteria and fungi.<br><br>The most abundant soil fauna present at 10,000 to 50,000 per $m^2$. Prey for epigeic invertebrates such as mites, centipedes, spiders and carabid beetles. |
| *Hypoaspis Aculieifer* (Gamasid mite) preying on *Folsomia Fimetaria* (Collembola) | 21 d | S/G/R | Krogh & Axelson (1998). Test on the predatory mite *Hypoaspis Aculieifer* preying on the Collembolan *Folsomia Fimetaria*. In "*Handbook of Soil Invertebrates*" (Eds. Hans Løkke & Cornelis A.M. Van Gestel). John Wiley & Sons: Chichester, UK. | Mortality, growth and offspring number assessed after three weeks.<br><br>Natural prey-predator relationship.<br><br>Predacious species feeding on enchytraeids, nematodes and micro-arthropods. Important role in control of parasitic nematodes.<br><br>Gamasioda mites are present at 5 - 10,000 per $m^2$. |

| Test Organism | Duration | End points | Reference/Source | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Porcellio scaber* (Isopoda) | 28 – 70 d | S/G/R | Hornung *et al.* (1998). Tests on the Isopod *Porcellio scaber*. In "*Handbook of Soil Invertebrates*" (Eds. Hans Løkke & Cornelis A.M. Van Gestel). John Wiley & Sons: Chichester, UK. | Survival and biomass determined after 4 weeks (weekly measurements).<br><br>Reproduction (oocyte number, % gravid females, % females releasing juveniles, number offspring) determined after 10 weeks.<br><br>Alimentary uptake via dosed food or soil.<br><br>Isopods woodlouse species. Macro-decomposers important part of detritus food chain.<br><br>Important prey species for centipedes.<br><br>Estimated population density of isopods is 500 – 1500 per $m^2$. |
| *Brachydesmus superus* (Diplopoda) | 70 d | S/R | Tajovsky (1998). Test on the Millipede *Brachydesmus superus*. In "*Handbook of Soil Invertebrates*" (Eds. Hans Løkke & Cornelis A.M. Van Gestel). John Wiley & Sons: Chichester, UK. | Animal number, nest number, egg number and offspring number determined weekly.<br><br>Difficult to maintain culture throughout year.<br><br>Alimentary uptake via dosed food or soil.<br><br>Millipedes are important primary decomposers of leaf litter and organic detritus.<br><br>Their faecal pellets provide a micro-environment for micro-organisms such as fungi and micro-arthropods.<br><br>Important prey for carabid beetles, centipedes and spiders and insectivorous birds and mammals. Diplopoda are present at 10 – 100 per $m^2$. |

| Test Organism | Duration | End points | Reference/Source | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Lithobius mutabilis*<br><br>(Chilopoda) | 28 – 84 d | S/G/L/M | Laskowski *et al.* (1998). Test on the Centipede *Lithobius mutabilis*. In "*Handbook of Soil Invertebrates*" (Eds. Hans Løkke & Cornelis A.M. Van Gestel). John Wiley & Sons: Chichester, UK. | Mortality, biomass, respiration rate and locomotor activity determined after 4 weeks (degradable substances) to 12 weeks (persistent substances).<br><br>Food chain effect measured via use of dosed prey (fly larvae).<br><br>Centipedes are important carnivorous arthropods feeding on small earthworms, millipedes, woodlice and springtails. They are in turn prey for birds and mammals. Chilopoda are present up to 100 per $m^2$. |
| *Philonthus cognatus* (Coleoptera) | 42 – 70 d | S/R | Metge & Heimbach (1998). Test on the Staphylinid *Philonthus cognatus*. In "*Handbook of Soil Invertebrates*" (Eds. Hans Løkke & Cornelis A.M. Van Gestel). John Wiley & Sons: Chichester, UK. | Beetles exposed for one week to determine subsequent effect on egg production and hatching rate over 6 – 10 weeks. Mortality may also be assessed.<br><br>Predators of springtails, aphids, dipterans & coleopteran larvae. Prey to birds, mice and large arthropods.<br><br>Estimated densities of 1 adult per 2 – 5 $m^2$. |

| Test Organism | Duration | End points | Reference/Source | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Competition between *Plectus acuminatus* (Nematoda) and *Heterocephalobus pauciannulatus* (Nematoda) | 14 d | S/R | Kammenga & Riksen (1998). Test on the competition between the nematodes *Plectus acuminatus* and *Heterocephalobus pauciannulatus*. In "*Handbook of Soil Invertebrates*" (Eds. Hans Løkke & Cornelis A.M. Van Gestel). John Wiley & Sons: Chichester, UK. | Competition between two bacterivorous nematode species.<br><br>Ratio determined after two weeks.<br><br>Nematodes are important in decomposition and cycling of organic materials.<br><br>Abundant and readily retrieved from soil and cultured.<br><br>Nematodes are the most abundant element of the mesofauna and account for 2% by mass of the edaphon (soil biomass). This corresponds to approximately 10 million per $m^2$. |
| *Caenorhabditis elegans* (Nematoda) | 1 d | S | (i) Donkin & Dusenbury (1993). A soil toxicity test using the nematode *Caenorhabditis elegans* and an effective method of recovery. *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.* 25, 145-151. (ii) Freeman *et al.* (1999). A soil bioassay using the nematode *Caenorhabditis elegans*. ASTM STP 1364. (iii) Peredney & Williams (2000). Utility of *Caenorhabditis elegans* for assessing heavy metal contamination in artificial soil. *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.* 39, 113-118. | Mortality assessed after 1 d.<br><br>Important in decomposition and cycling of organic materials.<br><br>Abundant and readily retrieved from soil and cultured.<br><br>Nematodes are the most abundant element of the mesofauna and account for 2% by mass of the edaphon (soil biomass). This corresponds to approximately 10 million per $m^2$ or 1 g per $m^2$. |

| Test Organism | Duration | End points | Reference/Source | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Caenorhabditis elegans* (Nematoda) | 3d | G/R | (i) Neumann-Hensel & Ahlf (1998). Deutsche Bundesstiftung Umwelt Report Number 05446. (ii) Höss (2001). Bestimmung der Wirkung von Sediment- und Bodenproben auf Wachstum und Fruchtbarkeit von *Caenorhabditis elegans* (Nematoda). Draft DIN standard. | Growth and reproduction assessed after 3 days.<br><br>Abundant and readily retrieved from soil and cultured.<br><br>Sublethal bioassay (high survival is a pre-requisite for test validity).<br><br>Nematodes are the most abundant element of the mesofauna and account for 2% by mass of the edaphon (soil biomass). This corresponds to approximately 10 million per $m^2$ or 1 g per $m^2$. |
| **Primary Producers** | | | | |
| Many test speciesincludin g grass crops (monocotyledo nae - Gramineae), *Brassica* spp. (Dicotyledonae – Cruciferae) and bean crops (Dicotyledonae – Leguminosae) | 5d, 14 – 21 d | E/G | (i) OECD (2006). OECD 208 Seedling emergence and seedling growth test & OECD 227: Vegetative vigour test. (ii) ISO 11269-1: Soil quality – Determination of the effects of pollutants on soil flora – Part 1: Method for the measurement of inhibition of root growth (1993). (iii) ISO 11269-2 Soil quality – Determination of the effects of pollutants on soil flora – Part 2: Effects of chemicals on the emergence and growth of higher plants (1995). (iv) ASTM E1963-98 Standard guide for conducting terrestrial plant toxicity tests (1998). ISO 22030: Soil quality – Biological methods – Chronic toxicity in higher plants (2005). | Seed emergence (E) & early life stages of growth (G) in treated soils (208)<br><br>Vegetative vigour (G) following foliar application (227).<br><br>Root growth of pre-germinated seeds (ISO 11269-1).<br><br>Minimum of three test species: one monocotyledon and two dicotyledon (OECD 208) |

Key: S = survival; E = emergence; G = growth; R = reproduction; M = metabolism; L = locomotory activity

# R.7.12 Guidance on Toxicokinetics

## R.7.12.1 Upfront information you need to be aware of

The expression of toxicity arising from exposure to a substance is a consequence of a chain of events that results in the affected tissues of an organism receiving the ultimate toxicant in amounts that cause an adverse effect. The factors that confer susceptibility to certain species, and lead to major differences between animals and humans in their response to such chemical insults is based either on the nature and quantity of the ultimate toxicant that is presented to the sensitive tissue (toxicokinetics, TK) or in the sensitivity of those tissues to the ultimate toxicant, i.e. the toxicodynamic (TD) response. (ECETOC, 2006)

There is no specific requirement to generate TK information in REACH. Annex I, Section 1.0.2 states that "the human health hazard assessment shall consider the toxicokinetic profile (i.e. absorption, metabolism, distribution and elimination) of the substance". Furthermore, REACH announces in Annex VIII (Section 8.8.1) that one should perform "assessment of the toxicokinetic behaviour of the substance to the extent that can be derived from the relevant available information".

Even though TK is not a toxicological endpoint and is not specifically required by REACH, the generation of TK information can be encouraged as a means to interpret data, assist testing strategy and study design, as well as category development, thus helping to optimise test designs: Prior to any animal study, it is crucial to identify the benefits that will be gained from conducting such a study. The TK behaviour derived from available data might make further testing unnecessary in terms of predictability of other properties. The definition of actual TK studies on a case-by-case basis might further improve the knowledge about substance properties in terms of expanding knowledge on properties sufficiently to enable risk assessment. Overall the formation of data that are unlikely to be used and that constitute an unnecessary effort of animals, time, and resources shall be avoided using any supporting data to do so. Moreover, it can provide important information for the design of (subsequent) toxicity studies, for the application of read-across and building of categories. Taken together, Along with other approaches, TK can contribute to reduction of animal use under REACH.

The aim of this document is to provide a general overview on the main principles of TK and to give guidance on the generation / use of TK information in the human health risk assessment of chemicals, and to make use of this information to support testing strategies to become more intelligent (Integrated Testing Strategy, ITS).

The TK phase begins with exposure and results in a certain concentration of the ultimate toxicant at the target site (tissue dose). This concentration is dependent on the absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion (ADME) of the substance (ECETOC, 2006). ADME describes the uptake of a substance into the body and its lifecycle within the body, (including excretion) (compare EU B.36[19], OECD TG 417):

**ABSORPTION**: how, how much, and how fast the substance enters the body;

[19] See Test Methods Regulation (Council Regulation (EC) No 440/2008).

**DISTRIBUTION**: reversible transfer of substances between various parts of the organism, i.e. body fluids or tissues;

**METABOLISM**: the enzymatic or non-enzymatic transformation of the substance of interest into a structurally different chemical (metabolite);

**EXCRETION**: the physical loss of the parent substance and/or its metabolite(s); the principal routes of excretion are via the urine, bile (faeces), and exhaled air[20].

Metabolism and excretion are the two components of **ELIMINATION**, which describe the loss of substance by the organism, either by physical departure or by chemical transformation. For consistency, and unless otherwise specified, metabolism does not include largely reversible chemical transformations resulting in an observable equilibrium between two chemical species. This latter phenomenon is termed inter-conversion.

The sum of processes following absorption of a chemical into the circulatory systems, distribution throughout the body, biotransformation, and excretion is called **DISPOSITION**.

#### R.7.12.1.1 Absorption

The major routes by which toxicants enter the body are via the lungs, the gastrointestinal tract (both being absorption surfaces by nature), and the skin. To be absorbed, substances must transverse across biological membranes. Mostly this occurs by passive diffusion. As biological membranes are built as layers consisting of lipid as well as aqueous phases a process like this requires a substance to be soluble both in lipid and water. For chemicals that do not meet these criteria, absorption may occur via facilitated diffusion, active transport or pinocytosis, processes that are more actively directed and therefore require energy).

#### R.7.12.1.2 Distribution

Once the chemical has entered the blood stream, it may exert its toxic action directly in the blood or in any target tissue or organ to which the circulatory system transports or distributes it. It is the blood flow through the organ, the ability of the substance to cross membranes and capillaries, and its relative affinity for the various tissues that determine the rate of distribution and the target tissues. Regarding the cross-membrane transfer not only passive mechanisms but also active transport by transport proteins (e.g. p-glycoprotein) shall be taken into consideration, as this is of particular importance for crossing the blood-brain-barrier but also elsewhere (e.g. in the intestine).

Distribution is in fact a dynamic process involving multiple equilibria: Only the circulatory system is a distinct, closed *compartment* where chemicals are distributed rapidly. Distribution to the various tissues and organs is usually delayed. However, often compounds distribute so rapidly into the highly perfused tissues, such as liver, kidney and lungs, that kinetics cannot be distinguished from events in the blood; at that point, such organs are classed as being part of the initial, *central* compartment, and *peripheral compartment* is reserved for slowly equilibrating tissues e.g. muscle, skin and adipose. There is equilibrium of the free substance between the so-called rapid, or central, and

[20] Breast milk is a minor but potentially important route of excretion.

the slow or peripheral compartment. As the free substance is eliminated, the substance from the peripheral compartment is slowly released back into the circulation (rapid or central compartment).

This thinking in subdividing the body into different *compartments* is what is made use of in physiologically based kinetic (PBK) modelling. Based on data of available toxicological studies, tissue distribution is mathematically calculated using partition coefficients between blood or plasma and the tissue considered.

### R.7.12.1.3 Metabolism or Biotransformation

Biotransformation is one of the main factors, which influence the fate of a chemical in the body, its toxicity, and its rate and route of elimination. Traditionally biotransformation is divided into two main phases, phase I and phase II. Phase I, the so-called functionalisation phase, has a major impact on lipophilic molecules, rendering them more polar and more readily excretable. In phase II, often referred to as detoxicification, such functionalised moieties are subsequently conjugated with highly polar molecules before they are excreted. Both phases are catalysed by specific enzymes which are either membrane-bound (microsomal proteins) or present in the cytosol (cytosolic or soluble enzymes). Furthermore, it has been suggested that a phase III relates to the excretion of conjugates and involves ATP[21]-dependent plasma membrane transporters.

Most chemicals are potentially susceptible to biotransformation of some sort, and all cells and tissues are potentially capable of biotransforming compounds. However, the major sites of such biotransformation are substrate- and route-dependent; generally, the liver and the entry portals of the body are the main biotransformation sites to be considered. Notably, variations occur in the presence of metabolising enzymes in different tissues, and also between different cells in the same organ. Another aspect is the existence of marked differences between and within various animal species and humans in the expression and catalytic activities of many biotransforming enzymes. Any knowledge concerning metabolic differences may provide crucial insight in characterising the potential risk of chemicals to humans.

### R.7.12.1.4 Excretion

As chemicals are absorbed at different entry portals, they can be excreted via various routes and mechanisms. The relative importance of the excretion processes depends on the physical and chemical properties of the compound and its various metabolites.

Besides passive transportation (diffusion or filtration) there are carrier-mediated mechanisms to shuttle a substance through a biological membrane. It is well known that there are a variety of pumps responsible for transportation of specific types of substances (e.g. sodium, potassium, magnesium, organic acids, and organic bases). Related compounds may compete for the same transport mechanism. Additional transport systems, phagocytosis and pinocytosis, can also be of importance (e.g. in the removal of particulate matter from the alveoli by alveolar phagocytes, and the removal

[21] Adenosine-tri-phosphate.

of some large molecules (Pritchard, 1981) from the body by the reticulo-endothelial system in the liver and spleen (Klaassen, 1986)).

### R.7.12.1.5 Bioavailability, saturation vs. non-linearity & Accumulation

The most critical factor influencing toxicity is the concentration of the ultimate toxicant at the actual target site (tissue dose). In this context bioavailability is a relevant parameter for the assessment of the toxicity profile of a test substance. It links dose and concentration of a substance with the mode of action, which covers the key events within a complete sequence of events leading to toxicity.

#### Bioavailability

Bioavailability usually describes the passage of a substance from the site of absorption into the blood of the general (systemic) circulation, thus meaning systemic bioavailability (Nordberg *et al.*, 2004). The fact that at least some of the substance considered is systemically bioavailable is often referred to as systemic exposure.

Systemic bioavailability is not necessarily equivalent to the amount of a substance absorbed, because in many cases parts of that amount may be excreted or metabolised before reaching the systemic circulation. This may occur, for instance, for substances metabolised in the gut after oral exposure before any absorption has taken place. Conversely, substances absorbed from the intestine can be partly eliminated by the liver at their first passage through that organ (so-called first-pass effect).

#### Linearity vs. non-linearity & Saturation

When all transfer rates between the different compartments of the body are proportional to the amounts or concentrations present (this is also called a process of first order), a process is called linear. This implies that the amounts of a substance cleared and distributed as well as half-lives are constant and the concentrations are proportional to the dosing rate (exposure). Such linear kinetics display the respective dose-toxicity-relationships.

Once a kinetic process is saturated (e.g. by high level dosing/exposure) by the fact that enzymes involved in biotransformation processes, or transporters involved in distribution or elimination, or binding proteins (i.e. receptors) are inhibited or reaching their maximum activity, a process might become non-linear. This may result in concentration or dose-dependency, or time-dependency of some of the kinetic characteristics. In some cases this can lead to a change in biotransformation products or the metabolic capacity. It is advised to consider systematically the possible sources for non-linear kinetics, especially for repeated dose testing.

#### Accumulation (Kroes *et al.*, 2004)

Everything in a biological system has a biological half-life, that is, a measure of how long it will stay in that system until it is lost by mainly excretion, degradation, or metabolism. To put it in different words, the amount of a substance eliminated from the blood in unit time, is the product of clearance (the volume of blood cleared per unit time) and concentration (the amount of a compound per unit volume). For first order reactions, clearance is a constant value that is a characteristic of a substance. If the input of a substance to an organism is greater than the rate at which the substance is lost, the organism is said to be accumulating that substance. When the concentration has increased such that the amount eliminated equals the amount of substance-input there will be a constant concentration, a steady-state. The extent of accumulation reflects the relationship between the body-burden compared with the steady-state condition. Species differences in clearance will determine the difference in steady-state body-burden between experimental animals and humans.

### R.7.12.2 TK in practice – derivation and generation of information

In general, testing a substance for its toxicological profile is performed in laboratory animals exposed to a range of dosages or concentrations by the most appropriate route of administration derived from the most likely human exposure scenario. In assessing gained information in terms of human relevance, the conservative approach of applying an *assessment factor* (default approach) is used for taking into account uncertainties over interspecies and intraspecies differences in sensitivity to a specific test substance.

In situations, e.g. where humans are demonstrably much less sensitive than the test species or, indeed, where it is known that the effects seen in the test animal would under no circumstances be manifested in humans, such conservatism can be considered inappropriate (ECETOC, 2006). The mode of action (key events in the manifestation of toxicity) underlying the effect can justify departure from the default approach and enable a more realistic risk assessment by the arguments even to the point of irrelevance for the human situation.

A tiered approach has been proposed by SANCO (EC, 2007) for the risk assessment of a substance. In alignment with this, a strategy can be derived on how much effort on TK evaluation for different levels of importance of a substance is appropriate. Considerations on the possible activity profile of a substance derived from physico-chemical and other data, as well as structurally related substances should be taken into account as a minimum request. This might help in the argumentation on waiving or triggering further testing and could provide a first impression of the mode of action of a substance. Subsequent toxicokinetic data needs to be focussed on which studies are needed to interpret and direct any additional toxicity studies that may be conducted. The advantage of such effort is that the results enable the refinement of the knowledge of the activity of a substance by elucidating step by step the mode of action. In this cascade, the application of assessment factors changes from overall default values to chemical specific adjustment factors (CSAFs).

#### R.7.12.2.1 Derivation of TK information taking into account a Basic Data Set

The standard information requirements of REACH for substances manufactured or imported in quantities of ≥1 ton (see Annex VII of the respective regulation), include mainly physico-chemical (PC) data, and data like skin irritation/corrosion, eye irritation, skin sensitization, *in vitro* mutagenicity, acute oral toxicity, short-term aquatic toxicity on invertebrates, growth inhibition of algae. Therefore, these data will be available for the majority of substances. This data will enable qualitative judgments of the TK behaviour. However, the physico-chemical characteristics of the substance will change if the substance undergoes metabolic transformation and the physico-chemical characteristics of the parent substance may not provide any clues as to the identity, distribution, retention and elimination of its metabolites. These are important factors to consider.

## Absorption

Absorption is a function of the potential for a substance to diffuse across biological membranes. In addition to molecular weight the most useful parameters providing information on this potential are the octanol/water partition coefficient (log P) value and the water solubility. The log P value provides information on the relative solubility of the substance in water and the hydrophobic solvent octanol (used as a surrogate for lipid) and is a measure of lipophilicity. Log P values above 0 indicate that the substance is more soluble in octanol than water i.e. lipophilic and negative values indicate that the substance is more soluble in water than octanol i.e. hydrophilic. In general, log P values between -1 and 4 are favourable for absorption. Nevertheless, a substance with such a log P value can be poorly soluble in lipids and hence not readily absorbed when its water solubility is very low. It is therefore important to consider both, the water solubility of a substance and its log P value, when assessing the potential of that substance to be absorbed.

## Oral / GI absorption

When assessing the potential of a substance to be absorbed in the gastrointestinal (GI) tract it should be noted that substances could undergo chemical changes in the GI fluids as a result of metabolism by GI flora, by enzymes released into the GI tract or by hydrolysis. These changes will alter the physico-chemical characteristics of the substance and hence predictions based upon the physico-chemical characteristics of the parent substance may no longer apply (see Appendix R.7.12—1 for a detailed listing of *physiological factors*, data on stomach and intestine pH, data on transit time in the intestine).

One consideration that could influence the absorption of ionic substances (i.e. acids and bases) is the varying pH of the GI tract. It is generally thought that ionized substances do not readily diffuse across biological membranes. Therefore, when assessing the potential for an acid or base to be absorbed, knowledge of its pKa (pH at which 50% of the substance is in ionized and 50% in non-ionised form) is advantageous. Absorption of acids is favoured at pHs below their pKa whereas absorption of bases is favoured at pHs above their pKa.

Other mechanisms by which substances can be absorbed in the GI tract include the passage of small water-soluble molecules (molecular weight up to around 200) through aqueous pores or carriage of such molecules across membranes with the bulk passage of water (Renwick, 1994). The absorption of highly lipophilic substances (log P of 4 or above) may be limited by the inability of such substances to dissolve into GI fluids and hence make contact with the mucosal surface. However, the absorption of such substances will be enhanced if they undergo micellular solubilisation by bile salts (Aungst and Shen, 1986). Substances absorbed as micelles (aggregate of surfactant molecules, lowering surface tension) enter the circulation via the lymphatic system, bypassing the liver. Although particles and large molecules (with molecular weights in the 1000's) would normally be considered too large to cross biological membranes, small amounts of such substances may be transported into epithelial cells by pinocytosis or persorption (passage through gaps in membranes left when the tips of villi are sloughed off) (Aungst and Shen, 1986). Absorption of surfactants or irritants may be enhanced because of damage to cell membranes.

Absorption can occur at different sites and with different mechanisms along the GI tract. In the *mouth* absorption is minimal and if at all, occurs by passive diffusion. Therefore, substances enter directly the systemic circulation, however, some enzymatic degradation may occur. Like in the mouth, absorption in the *stomach* is minimal and occurs only by passive diffusion - the acidic environment favours uptake of weak acids. There is a potential for hydrolysis and, very rarely, metabolism (by endogenous enzymes) prior to uptake. Once absorbed at this point, substances will go to the liver before entering the systemic circulation - first pass metabolism may then limit the systemic bioavailability of the parent compound. The *small intestine* has a very large surface area and the transit time through this section is the longest, making this the predominant site of absorption within the GI tract. Most substances will be absorbed by passive diffusion. However, lipophilic compounds may form micelles and be absorbed into the lymphatic system and larger molecules/particles may be taken up by pinocytosis. Metabolism prior to absorption may occur by gut microflora or enzymes in the GI mucosa. Since substances that enter the blood at this point pass through the liver before entering the systemic circulation, hepatic first pass metabolism may limit the amount of parent compound that enters the systemic circulation. In the *large intestine*, absorption occurs mainly by passive diffusion. But active transport mechanisms for electrolytes are present, too. Compared to the small intestine, the rate and extent of absorption within the large intestine is low. Most blood flow from the large intestine passes through the liver first.

**Table R.7.12—1 Interpretation of data regarding oral/GI absorption**

| Data source | What it tells us |
|---|---|
| Structure | It may be possible to identify ionisable groups within the structure of the molecule. Groups containing oxygen, sulphur or nitrogen atoms e.g. thiol (SH), sulphonate (SO3H), hydroxyl (OH), carboxyl (COOH) or amine (NH2) groups are all potentially ionisable. |
| Molecular Weight | Generally the smaller the molecule the more easily it may be taken up. Molecular weights below 500 are favourable for absorption; molecular weights above 1000 do not favour absorption. |
| Particle size | Generally solids have to dissolve before they can be absorbed. It may be possible for particles in the nanometer size range to be taken up by pinocytosis. The absorption of very large particles, several hundreds of micrometers in diameter, that were administered dry (e.g. in the diet) or in a suspension may be reduced because of the time taken for the particle to dissolve. This would be particularly relevant for poorly water-soluble substances. |
| Water Solubility | Water-soluble substances will readily dissolve into the gastrointestinal fluids. Absorption of very hydrophilic substances by passive diffusion may be limited by the rate at which the substance partitions out of the gastrointestinal fluid. However, if the molecular weight is low (less than 200) the substance may pass through aqueous pores or be carried through the epithelial barrier by the bulk passage of water. |

| Data source | What it tells us |
|---|---|
| Log P | Moderate log P values (between -1 and 4) are favourable for absorption by passive diffusion. Any lipophilic compound may be taken up by micellular solubilisation but this mechanism may be of particular importance for highly lipophilic compounds (log P >4), particularly those that are poorly soluble in water (1 mg/l or less) that would otherwise be poorly absorbed. |
| Dosing Vehicle | If the substance has been dosed using a vehicle, the water solubility of the vehicle and the vehicle/water partition coefficient of the substance may affect the rate of uptake. Compounds delivered in aqueous media are likely absorbed more rapidly than those delivered in oils, and compounds delivered in oils that can be emulsified and digested e.g. corn oil or arachis oil are likely to be absorbed to a greater degree than those delivered in non-digestible mineral oil (liquid petrolatum) (d'Souza, 1990) or in soil, the latter being an important vehicle for children. |
| Oral toxicity data | If signs of systemic toxicity are present, then absorption has occurred[22]. Also colored urine and/or internal organs can provide evidence that a colored substance has been absorbed. This information will give no indication of the amount of substance that has been absorbed. Also some clinical signs such as hunched posture could be due to discomfort caused by irritation or simply the presence of a large volume of test substance in the stomach and reduced feed intake could be due to an unpalatable test substance. It must therefore be clear that the effects that are being cited as evidence of systemic absorption are genuinely due to absorbed test substance and not to local effects at the site of contact effects. |
| Hydrolysis Test | Hydrolysis data are not always available. The hydrolysis test (EU C.7[23]; OECD TG 111) conducted for >10 tons substances notified under REACH (Annex VIII) provides information on the half-life of the substance in water at 50°C and pH values of 4.0, 7.0 and 9.0. The test is conducted using a low concentration, 0.01 M or half the concentration of a saturated aqueous solution (whichever is lower). Since the temperature at which this test is conducted is much higher than that in the GI tract, this test will not provide an estimate of the actual hydrolysis half-life of the substance in the GI tract. However, it may give an indication that the parent compound may only be present in the GI tract for a limited period of time. Hence, toxicokinetic predictions based on the characteristics of the parent compound may be of limited relevance. |

[22] Ensure that systemic effects do not occur secondary to local effects!

[23] See Test Methods Regulation (Council Regulation (EC) No 440/2008).

## Respiratory absorption – Inhalation

For inhaled substances the processes of deposition of the substance on the surface of the respiratory tract and the actual absorption have to be differentiated. Both processes are influenced by the physico-chemical characteristics of a chemical.

Substances that can be inhaled include gases, vapours, liquid aerosols (both liquid substances and solid substances in solution) and finely divided powders/dusts. Substances may be absorbed directly from the respiratory tract or, through the action of clearance mechanisms, may be transported out of the respiratory tract and swallowed. This means that absorption from the GI tract will contribute to the total systemic burden of substances that are inhaled.

To be readily soluble in blood, a gas or vapour must be soluble in water and increasing water solubility would increase the amount absorbed per breath. However, the gas or vapour must also be sufficiently lipophilic to cross the alveolar and capillary membranes. Therefore, a moderate log P value (between -1 and 4) would be favourable for absorption. For vapours, the deposition pattern of readily soluble substances differs from lipophilic substances in that the hydrophilic are effectively removed from the air in the upper respiratory tract, whereas the lipophilic reach the deep lung and thus absorption through the huge gas exchange region may occur. The rate of systemic uptake of very hydrophilic gases or vapours may be limited by the rate at which they partition out of the aqueous fluids (mucus) lining the respiratory tract and into the blood. Such substances may be transported out of the deposition region with the mucus and swallowed or may pass across the respiratory epithelium via aqueous membrane pores. Highly reactive gases or vapours can react at the site of contact thereby reducing the amount available for absorption. Besides the physico-chemical properties of the compound physical activity (such as exercise, heavy work, etc.) has a great impact on absorption rate and must also be addressed (Csanady and Filser, 2001).

Precise deposition patterns for dusts will depend not only on the particle size of the dust but also the hygroscopicity, electrostatic properties and shape of the particles and the respiratory dynamics of the individual. As a rough guide, particles with aerodynamic diameters below 100 μm have the potential to be inspired. Particles with aerodynamic diameters below 50 μm may reach the thoracic region and those below 15 μm the alveolar region of the respiratory tract. These values are lower for experimental animals with smaller dimensions of the structures of the respiratory tract. Particles with aerodynamic diameters of above 1-5 μm have the greatest probability of settling in the nasopharyngeal region whereas particles with aerodynamic diameters below 1-5 μm are most likely to settle in the tracheo-bronchial or pulmonary regions (Velasquez, 2006). Thus the quantitative deposition pattern of particles in the respiratory tract varies. Nonetheless general deposition patterns may be derived (Snipes, 1989). Several models exist to predict the particle size deposition patterns in the respiratory tract (US EPA, 1994).

Generally, liquids, solids in solution and water-soluble dusts would readily diffuse/dissolve into the mucus lining the respiratory tract. Lipophilic substances (log P >0) would then have the potential to be absorbed directly across the respiratory tract epithelium. There is some evidence to suggest that substances with higher log P values may have a longer half-life within the lungs but this has not been extensively studied

(Cuddihy and Yeh, 1988). Very hydrophilic substances might be absorbed through aqueous pores (for substances with molecular weights below around 200) or be retained in the mucus and transported out of the respiratory tract. For poorly water-soluble dusts, the rate at which the particles dissolve into the mucus will limit the amount that can be absorbed directly. Poorly water-soluble dusts depositing in the nasopharyngeal region could be coughed or sneezed out of the body or swallowed (Schlesinger, 1995). Such dusts depositing in the tracheo-bronchial region would mainly be cleared from the lungs by the mucocilliary mechanism and swallowed. However a small amount may be taken up by phagocytosis and transported to the blood via the lymphatic system. Poorly water-soluble dusts depositing in the alveolar region would mainly be engulfed by alveolar macrophages. The macrophages will then either translocate particles to the ciliated airways or carry particles into the pulmonary interstitium and lymphoid tissues.

**Table R.7.12—2 Interpretation of data regarding respiratory absorption**

| Data source | What it tells us |
|---|---|
| Vapour Pressure | Indicates whether a substance may be available for inhalation as a vapour. As a general guide, highly volatile substances are those with a vapour pressure greater than 25 KPa (or a boiling point below 50°C). Substances with low volatility have a vapour pressure of less than 0.5 KPa (or a boiling point above 150°C) |
| Particle size | Indicates the presence of inhalable/respirable particles. In humans, particles with aerodynamic diameters below 100 μm have the potential to be inhaled. Particles with aerodynamic diameters below 50 μm may reach the thoracic region and those below 15 μm the alveolar region of the respiratory tract. These values are lower for experimental animals with smaller dimensions of the structures of the respiratory tract. Thus the quantitative deposition pattern of particles in the respiratory tract varies with the particle size distribution of the inspired aerosol and may further depend on physical and physicochemical properties of the particles (e.g. shape, electrostatic charge). Nonetheless general deposition patterns may be derived (Snipes, 1989; US EPA, 1994) |
| Log P | Moderate log P values (between -1 and 4) are favourable for absorption directly across the respiratory tract epithelium by passive diffusion. Any lipophilic compound may be taken up by micellular solubilisation but this mechanism may be of particular importance for highly lipophilic compounds (log P >4), particularly those that are poorly soluble in water (1 mg/l or less) that would otherwise be poorly absorbed. |
| Water Solubility | Deposition: Vapours of very hydrophilic substances may be retained within the mucus. Low water solubility, like small particle size enhances penetration to the lower respiratory tract. For absorption of deposited material similar criteria as for GI absorption apply |
| Inhalation toxicity data | If signs of systemic toxicity are present then absorption has occurred. This is not a quantitative measure of absorption. |
| Oral toxicity data | If signs of systemic toxicity are present in an oral toxicity study or there are other data to indicate the potential for absorption following ingestion it is likely the substance will also be absorbed if it is inhaled. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Hydrolysis Test | Hydrolysis data are not always available. The hydrolysis test (EU C.7[24], OECD TG 111) conducted for >10 tons substances notified under REACH (Annex VIII) provides information on the half-life of the substance in water at 50°C and pH values of 4.0, 7.0 and 9.0. The test is conducted using a low concentration, 0.01 M or half the concentration of a saturated aqueous solution (whichever is lower). Since the temperature at which this test is conducted is much higher than that in the respiratory tract, this test will not provide an estimate of the actual hydrolysis half-life of the substance in the respiratory tract. However, it may give an indication that the parent compound may only be present in the respiratory tract for a limited period of time. Hence, toxicokinetic predictions based on the characteristics of the parent compound may be of limited relevance. |

### Dermal absorption

The skin is a dynamic, living multilayered biomembrane and as such its permeability may vary as a result of changes in hydration, temperature, and occlusion. In order to cross the skin, a compound must first penetrate into the *stratum corneum* (non-viable layer of corneocytes forming a complex lipid membrane) and may subsequently reach the viable *epidermis*, the *dermis* and the *vascular network*. The stratum corneum provides its greatest barrier function against hydrophilic compounds, whereas the viable epidermis is most resistant to penetration by highly lipophilic compounds (Flynn, 1985).

Dermal absorption represents the amount of topically applied test substance that is found in the epidermis (stratum corneum excluded) and in the dermis, and this quantity is therefore taken as systemically available. Dermal absorption is influenced by many factors, e.g. physico-chemical properties of the substance, its vehicle and concentration, and the exposure pattern (e.g. occlusion of the application site) as well as the skin site of the body (for review see ECETOC, 1993; Howes *et al.*, 1996; Schaefer and Redelmaier, 1996). The term *percutaneous penetration* refers to *in vitro* experiments and represents the amount of topically applied test substance that is found in the receptor fluid – this quantity is taken as systemically available.

Substances that can potentially be taken up across the skin include gases and vapours, liquids and particulates. A tiered approach for the estimation of skin absorption has been proposed within a risk assessment framework (EC, 2007): Initially, basic physico-chemical information should be taken into account, i.e. molecular mass and lipophilicity (log P). Following, a default value of 100% skin absorption is generally used unless molecular mass is above 500 and log P is outside the range [-1, 4], in which case a value of 10%[25] skin absorption is chosen (de Heer *et al.*, 1999). A flow diagram outlining this tiered approach is presented in Appendix R.7.12—4.

---

[24] See Test Methods Regulation (Council Regulation (EC) No 440/2008).

[25] The lower limit of 10% was chosen, because there is evidence in the literature that substances with molecular weight and/or log P values at these extremes can to a limited extent cross the skin. If data are available (e.g. data on water solubility, ionogenic state, 'molecular volume', oral absorption and dermal area dose in exposure situations in practice) which indicate the use of an alternative dermal absorption percentage value is appropriate, then this alternative value can be used. Scientific justification for the use of alternative values should be provided.

**Table R.7.12—3 Interpretation of data regarding dermal absorption**

| Data source | What it tells us |
|---|---|
| Physical State | Liquids and substances in solution are taken up more readily than dry particulates. Dry particulates will have to dissolve into the surface moisture of the skin before uptake can begin. Absorption of volatile liquids across the skin may be limited by the rate at which the liquid evaporates off the skin surface (Pryde and Payne, 1999). |
| Molecular Weight | Less than 100 favours dermal uptake. Above 500 the molecule may be too large. |
| Structure | As a result of binding to skin components the uptake of chemicals with the following groups can be slowed:<br>certain metal ions, particularly $Ag^{+}$, $Cd^{2+}$, $Be^{2+}$ and $Hg^{2+}$<br>acrylates, quaternary ammonium ions, heterocyclic ammonium ions, sulphonium salts.<br>A slight reduction in the dermal uptake of chemicals belonging to the following substance classes could also be anticipated for the same reason:<br>Quinines, dialkyl sulphides, acid chlorides, halotriazines, dinitro or trinitro benzenes. |
| Water Solubility | The substance must be sufficiently soluble in water to partition from the stratum corneum into the epidermis. Therefore if the water solubility is below 1 mg/l, dermal uptake is likely to be low. Between 1-100 mg/l absorption is anticipated to be low to moderate and between 100-10,000 mg/l moderate to high. However, if water solubility is above 10,000 mg/l and the log P value below 0 the substance may be too hydrophilic to cross the lipid rich environment of the stratum corneum. Dermal uptake for these substances will be low. |
| Log P | For substances with log P values <0, poor lipophilicity will limit penetration into the stratum corneum and hence dermal absorption. Values <–1 suggest that a substance is not likely to be sufficiently lipophilic to cross the stratum corneum, therefore dermal absorption is likely to be low.<br>Log P values between 1 and 4 favour dermal absorption (values between 2 and 3 are optimal) particularly if water solubility is high.<br>Above 4, the rate of penetration may be limited by the rate of transfer between the stratum corneum and the epidermis, but uptake into the stratum corneum will be high.<br>Above 6, the rate of transfer between the stratum corneum and the epidermis will be slow and will limit absorption across the skin. Uptake into the stratum corneum itself may be slow. |

| Data source | What it tells us |
|---|---|
| Vapour Pressure | The rate at which gases and vapours partition from the air into the stratum corneum will be offset by the rate at which evaporation occurs therefore although a substance may readily partition into the stratum corneum, it may be too volatile to penetrate further. This can be the case for substances with vapour pressures above 100-10,000 Pa (ca. 0.76-76 mm Hg) at 25°C, though the extent of uptake would also depend on the degree of occlusion, ambient air currents and the rate at which it is able to transfer across the skin. Vapours of substances with vapour pressures below 100 Pa are likely to be well absorbed and the amount absorbed dermally may be more than 10% of the amount that would be absorbed by inhalation. |
| Surface Tension | If the surface tension of an aqueous solution is less than 10 mN/m, the substance is a surfactant and this will enhance the potential dermal uptake. Surfactants can also substantially enhance the absorption of other compounds, even in the absence of skin irritant effects. |
| Skin irritation / Corrosivity | If the substance is a skin irritant or corrosive, damage to the skin surface may enhance penetration. |
| Dermal toxicity data | Signs of systemic toxicity indicate that absorption has occurred. However, if steps have not been taken to prevent grooming, the substance may have been ingested and therefore signs of systemic toxicity could be due to oral rather than dermal absorption. |
| Skin sensitization data | If the substance has been identified as a skin sensitizer then, provided the challenge application was to intact skin, some uptake must have occurred although it may only have been a small fraction of the applied dose. |
| Trace elements | If the substance is a cationic trace element, absorption is likely to be very low (<1%). Stable or radio-isotopes should be used and background levels determined to prevent analytical problems and inaccurate recoveries. |

Even though many factors (Table R.7.12—3) are linked to the chemical itself, one should bear in mind that the final preparation or the conditions of its production or use can influence both rate and extent of dermal absorption. These factors should also be taken into account in the risk assessment process, including at the stage of estimating dermal absorption[26]. Also, the methods described are focused on the extent of absorption, and not on its rate (with the exception of *in vitro* studies), which can play a major role in determining acute toxicity.

## Distribution

The concentration of a chemical in blood or plasma (blood level) is dependent on the dose, the rates of absorption, distribution and elimination, and on the affinity of the tissues for the compound. Tissue affinity is usually described using a parameter known as volume of distribution, which is a proportionality factor between the amount of compound present in the body and the measured plasma or blood concentration. The

[26] In determining the dermal penetration the dosing vehicle seems to be of great importance!

larger the volume of distribution is, the lower the blood level will be for a given amount of compound in the body. A particularly useful volume term is the volume of distribution at steady-state ($Vd_{ss}$). At steady-state, all distribution phenomena are completed, the various compartments of the body are in equilibrium, and the rate of elimination is exactly compensated by the rate of absorption. In non steady-state situations, the distribution volume varies with time except in the simplest case of a single-compartment model. In theory, steady-state can be physically reached only in the case of a constant zero-order input rate and stable first-order distribution and elimination rates. However, many real situations are reasonably close to steady-state, and reasoning at steady-state is a useful method in kinetics.

The rate at which highly water-soluble molecules distribute may be limited by the rate at which they cross cell membranes and access of such substances to the central nervous system (CNS) or testes is likely to be restricted by the blood-brain and blood-testes barriers (Rozman and Klaassen, 1996). It is not clear what barrier properties the placenta may have. However, species differences in transplacental transfer may occur due to differing placental structure and also differing metabolic capacity of the placenta and placental transporters in different species.

Although protein binding can limit the amount of a substance available for distribution, it will generally not be possible to determine from the available data which substances will bind to proteins and how avidly they will bind. Furthermore, if a substance undergoes extensive first-pass metabolism, predictions made on the basis of the physico-chemical characteristics of the parent substance may not be applicable.

**Table R.7.12—4 Interpretation of data regarding distribution**

| Data source | What it tells us |
|---|---|
| Molecular Weight | In general, the smaller the molecule, the wider the distribution. |
| Water Solubility | Small water-soluble molecules and ions will diffuse through aqueous channels and pores. The rate at which very hydrophilic molecules diffuse across membranes could limit their distribution. |
| Log P | If the molecule is lipophilic (log P >0), it is likely to distribute into cells and the intracellular concentration may be higher than extracellular concentration particularly in fatty tissues. |
| Target Organs | If the parent compound is the toxicologically active species, it may be possible to draw some conclusions about the distribution of that substance from its target tissues. If the substance is a dye, coloration of internal organs can give evidence of distribution. This will not provide any information on the amount of substance that has distributed to any particular site. Note that anything present in the blood will be accessible to the bone marrow. |
| Signs of toxicity | Clear signs of CNS effects indicate that the substance (and/or its metabolites) has distributed to the CNS. However, not all behavioural changes indicate that the substance has reached the CNS. The behavioural change may be due to discomfort caused by some other effect of the substance. |

## Accumulative potential

It is important to consider the potential for a substance to accumulate or to be retained within the body, because as they will then gradually build up with successive exposures the body burden can be maintained for long periods of time.

Lipophilic substances have the potential to accumulate within the body if the dosing interval is shorter than 4 times the whole body half-life. Although there is no direct correlation between the lipophilicity of a substance and its biological half-life, substances with high log P values tend to have longer half-lives unless their large volume of distribution is counter-balanced by a high clearance. On this basis, there is the potential for highly lipophilic substances (log P >4) to accumulate in individuals that are frequently exposed (e.g. daily at work) to that substance. Once exposure stops, the concentration within the body will decline at a rate determined by the half-life of the substance. Other substances that can accumulate within the body include poorly soluble particulates that deposited in the alveolar region of the lungs, substances that bind irreversibly to endogenous proteins and certain metals and ions that interact with the matrix of the bone (Rozman and Klaassen, 1996).

**Table R.7.12—5 Interpretation of data regarding accumulation**

| Site | Characteristics of substances of concern |
|---|---|
| Lung | Poorly water and lipid soluble particles (i.e. log P values around 0 and water solubility around 1 mg/l or less) with aerodynamic diameters of 1 µm or below have the potential to deposit in the alveolar region of the lung. Here particles are likely to undergo phagocytosis by alveolar macrophages. The macrophages will then either translocate particles to the ciliated airways or carry particles into the pulmonary interstitium and lymphoid tissues. Particles can also migrate directly to the pulmonary interstitium and this is likely to occur to the greatest extent where the particle is toxic to alveolar macrophages or inhaled in sufficient quantities to overwhelm the phagocytic capabilities of alveolar macrophages. Within the pulmonary interstitium clearance depends on solubilisation alone, which leads to the possibility of long-term retention (Snipes, 1995). |
| Adipose tissue | Lipophilic substances will tend to concentrate in adipose tissue and depending on the conditions of exposure may accumulate. If the interval between exposures is less than 4 times the whole body half-life of the substance then there is the potential for the substance to accumulate. It is generally the case that substances with high log P values have long biological half-lives. On this basis, daily exposure to a substance with a log P value of around 4 or higher could result in a build up of that substance within the body. Substances with log P values of 3 or less would be unlikely to accumulate with the repeated intermittent exposure patterns normally encountered in the workplace but may accumulate if exposures are continuous. Once exposure to the substance stops, the substance will be gradually eliminated at a rate dependent on the half-life of the substance. If fat reserves are mobilized more rapidly than normal, e.g. if an individual or animal is under stress or during lactation there is the potential for large quantities of the parent compound to be released into the blood. |
| Bone | Certain metals e.g. lead and small ions such as fluoride can interact with ions in the matrix of bone. In doing so they can displace the normal constituents of the bone, leading to retention of the metal or ion. |
| Stratum corneum | Highly lipophilic substances (log P between 4 and 6) that come into contact with the skin can readily penetrate the lipid rich stratum corneum but are not well absorbed systemically. Although they may persist in the stratum corneum, they will eventually be cleared as the stratum corneum is sloughed off. |

### Metabolism

Differences in the way substances are metabolised by different species and within different tissues is the main reason for species and route specific toxicity. The liver has the greatest capacity for metabolism and is commonly causing route specific presystemic effects (first pass) especially following oral intake. However, route specific toxicity may result from several phenomena, such as hydrolysis within the GI or respiratory tracts, also metabolism by GI flora or within the GI tract epithelia (mainly in the small intestine) (for review see Noonan and Wester, 1989), respiratory tract epithelia (sites include the nasal cavity, tracheo-bronchial mucosa [Clara cells] and alveoli [type 2 cells]) and skin.

It is very difficult to predict the metabolic changes a substance may undergo on the basis of physico-chemical information alone. Although it is possible to look at the structure of a molecule and identify potential metabolites, it is by no means certain that these reactions will occur *in vivo* (e.g. the molecule may not reach the necessary site for a particular reaction to take place). It is even more difficult to predict the extent to which it will be metabolised along different pathways and what species differences may exist. Consequently, experimental data shall help in the assessment of potential metabolic pathways (see Section R.7.12.2.2).

### Excretion

The major routes of excretion for substances from the systemic circulation are the urine and/or the faeces (via bile and directly from the GI mucosa; see Rozman, 1986).

The excretion processes involved in the *kidney* are passive glomerular filtration through membrane pores and active tubular secretion via carrier processes. Substances that are excreted in the urine tend to be water-soluble and of low molecular weight (below 300 in the rat, mostly anionic and cationic compounds) and generally, they are conjugated metabolites (e.g., glucuronides, sulphates, glycine conjugates) from Phase II biotransformation. Most of them will have been filtered out of the blood by the kidneys though a small amount may enter the urine directly by passive diffusion and there is the potential for re-absorption into the systemic circulation across the tubular epithelium.

*Biliary excretion* (Smith, 1973) involves active secretion rather than passive diffusion. Substances that are excreted in the bile tend to have higher molecular weights or may be conjugated as glucuronides or glutathione derivatives. In the rat it has been found that substances with molecular weights below around 300 do not tend to be excreted into the bile (Renwick, 1994). There are species differences and the exact nature of the substance also plays a role (Hirom *et al.*, 1972; Hirom *et al.*, 1976; Hughes *et al.*, 1973). The excretion of compounds via bile is highly influenced by hepatic function as metabolites formed in the liver may be excreted directly into the bile without entering the bloodstream. Additionally, blood flow as such is a determining factor.

Substances in the bile pass through the intestines before they are excreted in the faeces and as a result may undergo enterohepatic recycling (circulation of bile from the liver, where it is produced, to the small intestine, where it aids in digestion of fats and other substances, back to the liver) which will prolong their biological half-life. This is a particularly problem for conjugated molecules that are hydrolysed by GI bacteria to form smaller more lipid soluble molecules that can then be reabsorbed from the GI tract. Those substances less likely to re-circulate are substances having strong polarity and high molecular weight. Other substances excreted in the faeces are those that have diffused out of the systemic circulation into the gastrointestinal tract directly, substances which have been removed from the gastrointestinal mucosa by efflux mechanisms and non-absorbed substances that have been ingested or inhaled and subsequently swallowed. However, depending on the metabolic changes that may have occurred, the compound that is finally excreted may have few or none of the physico-chemical characteristics of the parent compound.

**Table R.7.12—6 Interpretation of data regarding excretion**

| Route | Favourable physico-chemical characteristics |
|---|---|
| Urine | Characteristics favourable for urinary excretion are low molecular weight (below 300 in the rat), good water solubility, and ionization of the molecule at the pH of urine. |
| Exhaled Air | Vapours and gases are likely to be excreted in exhaled air. Also volatile liquids and volatile metabolites may be excreted as vapours in exhaled air. |
| Bile | In the rat, molecules that are excreted in the bile are amphipathic (containing both polar and nonpolar regions), hydrophobic/strongly polar and have a high molecular weight. In general, in rats for organic cations with a molecular weight below 300 it is unlikely that more than 5-10% will be excreted in the bile, for organic anions e.g. quaternary ammonium ions this cut off may be lower (Smith, 1973). Substances excreted in bile may potentially undergo enterohepatic circulation. This is particularly a problem for conjugated molecules that are hydrolysed by gastrointestinal bacteria to form smaller more lipid soluble molecules that can then be reabsorbed from the GI tract. Those substances less likely to re-circulate are substances having strong polarity and high molecular weight. Little is known about the determinants of biliary excretion in humans. |
| Breast milk | Substances present in plasma generally also may be found in breast milk. Lipid soluble substances may be present at higher concentrations in milk than in blood/plasma. Although lactation is minor route of excretion, exposure of neonates via nursing to mother's milk may have toxicological significance for some chemicals. |
| Saliva/sweat | Non-ionized and lipid soluble molecules may be excreted in the saliva, where they may be swallowed again, or in the sweat. |
| Hair/nails | Metal ions may be incorporated into the hair and nails. |
| Exfoliation | Highly lipophilic substances that have penetrated the stratum corneum but not penetrated the viable epidermis may be sloughed off with skin cells. |

### R.7.12.2.2 Generating and Integrating TK information

*In vivo* studies provide an integrated perspective on the relative importance of different processes in the intact biological system for comparison with the results of the toxicity studies. To ensure a valid set of TK data, a TK *in vivo* study has to consist of several experiments that include blood/plasma-kinetics, mass balances and excretion experiments as well as tissue distribution experiments. Depending on the problem to be solved, selected experiments (e.g. plasma-kinetics) may be sufficient to provide needed data for further assessments (e.g. bioavailability).

The high dose level administered in an ADME study should be linked to those that cause adverse effects in toxicity studies. Ideally there should also be a dose without toxic effect, which should be in the range of expected human exposure. A comparison between toxic dose levels and those that are likely to represent human exposure values may provide valuable information for the interpretation of adverse effects and is essential for extrapolation and risk assessment.

In an *in vivo* study the systemic bioavailability is usually estimated by the comparison of either dose-corrected amounts excreted, or of dose-corrected areas under the curve (AUC) of plasma (blood, serum) kinetic profiles, after extra- and intravascular administration. The systemic bioavailability is the dose-corrected amount excreted or AUC determined after an extravascular substance administration divided by the dose-corrected amount excreted or AUC determined after an intravascular substance application, which corresponds by definition to a bioavailability of 100%. This is only valid if the kinetics of the compound is linear, i.e. dose-proportional, and relies upon the assumption that the clearance is constant between experiments. If the kinetics is not linear, the experimental strategy has to be revised on a case-by-case basis, depending of the type of non-linearity involved (e.g. saturable protein binding, saturable metabolism etc.).

Generally *in vitro* studies provide data on specific aspects of pharmacokinetics such as metabolism. A major advantage of *in vitro* studies is that it is possible to carry out parallel tests on samples from the species used in toxicity tests and samples from humans, thus facilitating interspecies comparisons (e.g., metabolite profile, metabolic rate constants). In recent years methods to integrate a number of *in vitro* results into a prediction of ADME *in vivo* by the use of appropriate PBK models have been developed. Such methods allow both the prediction of *in vivo* kinetics at early stages of development, and the progressive integration of all available data into a predictive model of ADME. The resulting information on ADME can be used both to inform development decisions and as part of the risk assessment process. The uncertainty associated with the prediction depends largely on the amount of available data.

#### Test substances and analytical methodology

TK and metabolism studies can be carried out using non-labelled compounds, stable isotope-labelled compounds, radioactively labelled compounds or using dual (stable and radio-) labelling. The labels should be placed in metabolically stable positions, the placing of labels such as $^{14}C$ in positions from which they can enter the carbon pool of the test animal should be avoided. If a metabolic degradation of the test substance may occur, different labelling positions have to be taken into account to be able to determine all relevant degradation pathways. The radiolabelled compound must be of high radiochemical purity and of adequate specific activity to ensure sufficient sensitivity in radio-assay methods.

Separation techniques are used in metabolism studies to purify and separate several radioactive fractions in biota such as urine, plasma, bile and others. These techniques range from relatively simple approaches such as liquid-liquid extraction and column chromatography to more sophisticated techniques such as HPLC (high pressure liquid chromatography). These methods also allow for the establishment of a metabolite profile. Quantitative analytical methods are required to follow concentrations of parent compound and metabolites in the body as a function of time. The most common techniques used are LC/MS (liquid chromatography/ mass spectroscopy) and high performance LC with UV-detection, or if $^{14}C$-labelled material is used, radioactivity-detection-HPLC. It is worth mentioning that kinetic parameters generally cannot be calculated from measurement of total radioactivity to receive an overall kinetic estimate. Nevertheless, to generate exact values one has to address parent compound and metabolites separately. An analytical step is required to define the radioactivity as chemical species. This is usually faster than cold analytical methods. Dual labelling (e.g. $^{13}C$ and $^{14}C/^{12}C$) is the method of choice for structural elucidation of metabolites (by MS and NMR [nuclear magnetic resonance] spectroscopy). A cold analytical technique, which incorporates stable isotope labelling (for GC/MS [gas chromatography/ mass spectroscopy] or LC/MS), is a useful combination. Unless this latter method has already been developed for the test compound in various matrices (urine, faeces, blood, fat, liver, kidney, etc.), the use of radiolabelled compound may be less costly than other methods.

In any TK study, the identity and purity of the chemical used in the test must be assured. Analytical methods capable of detecting undesirable impurities will be required, as well as methods to assure that the substance of interest is of uniform potency from batch to batch. Additional methods will be required to monitor the stability and uniformity of the form in which the test substance is administered to the organisms used in the TK studies. Finally, methods suitable to identify and quantify the test substance in TK studies must be employed.

In the context of analytical methods, *accuracy* refers to how closely the average value reported for the assay of a sample agrees with the actual amount of substance being assayed in the sample, whereas *precision* refers to the amount of scatter in the measured values around the average result. If the average assay result does not agree with the actual amount in the sample, the assay is said to be *biased*, i.e., lacks specificity; bias can also be due to low recovery.

Assay *specificity* is perhaps the most serious problem encountered. Although *blanks* provide some assurance that no instrument response will be obtained in the absence of the test chemical, a better approach is to select an instrument or bioassay that responds to some biological, chemical, or physical property of the test chemical that is not shared with many other substances.

Besides, it is also necessary that the assay method is usable over a sufficiently wide range of concentrations for the toxic chemical and its metabolites. The lower limit of reliability for an analytical method has been perceived in different ways; frequently, the term *sensitivity* has been used to indicate the ability of an analytical method to measure small amounts of a substance accurately and with requisite precision. It is unlikely that a single analytical method will be of use for all of these purposes. Indeed, it is highly desirable to use more than one method, at times. If two or more methods yield essentially the same results, confidence in each method is increased.

## Important Methods for Generation of ADME data

Evaluation of absorption

Absorption is normally investigated by the determination of the test substance and/or its metabolites in excreta, exhaled air and carcass (i.e. radioactivity balance). The biological response between test and reference groups (e.g. oral versus intravenous .) is compared and the plasma level of the test substance and/or its metabolites is determined.

Dermal Absorption

Technical guidelines on the conduct of skin absorption studies have been published by OECD in 2004 (EU B.44[27], OECD TG 427; EU B.45, OECD TG 428; OECD GD 28). Advantages of the *in vivo* method (EU B.44, OECD TG 427) are that it uses a physiologically and metabolically intact system, uses a species common to many toxicity studies and can be modified for use with other species. The disadvantages are the use of animals, the need for radiolabelled material to facilitate reliable results, difficulties in determining the early absorption phase and the differences in permeability of the preferred species (rat) and human skin. Animal skin is generally more permeable and therefore may overestimate human percutaneous absorption (US EPA, 1992). Also, the experimental conditions should be taken into account in interpreting the results. For instance, dermal absorption studies in fur-bearing animals may not accurately reflect dermal absorption in human beings.

*In vitro* systems allow us to apply to a fixed surface area of the skin an accurate dose of a test chemical in the form, volume and concentration that are likely to be present during human exposure. One of the key parameters in the regulatory guidelines in this field is that sink conditions must always be maintained, which may bias the assay by build-up of the chemical in the reservoir below the skin[28]. A major issue of concern in the *in vitro* procedure turned out to be the presence of test substance in the various skin layers, i.e., absorbed into the skin but not passed into the receptor fluid. It was noted that it is especially difficult to examine very lipophilic substances *in vitro*, because of their low solubility in most receptor fluids. By including the amount retained in the skin *in vitro*, a more acceptable estimation of skin absorption can be obtained. Water-soluble substances can be tested more accurately *in vitro* because they more readily diffuse into the receptor fluid (OECD GD 28). At present, provided that skin levels are included as absorbed, results from *in vitro* methods seem to adequately reflect those from *in vivo* experiments supporting their use as a replacement test to measure percutaneous absorption.

---

[27] See Test Methods Regulation (Council Regulation (EC) No 440/2008).

[28] A build up of chemical in the reservoir below the skin is not such a problem if a flow through cell is used for *in vitro* testing.

If appropriate dermal penetration data are available for rats *in vivo* and for rat and human skin *in vitro*, the *in vivo* dermal absorption in rats may be adjusted in light of the relative absorption through rat and human skin *in vitro*. The latter adjustment may be done because the permeability of human skin is often lower than that of animal skin (e.g. Howes *et al.*, 1996). A generally applicable correction factor for extrapolation to man can, however, not be derived, because the extent of overestimation appears to be dose, substance, and animal specific (ECETOC, 1993; Bronaugh and Maibach, 1987).

*In silico* models might also improve the overall knowledge of crucial properties significantly. Mathematical skin permeation models are usually based on uptake from aqueous solution which may not be relevant to the exposure scenario being assessed. In addition, the use of such models for quantitative risk assessment purposes is often limited because these models have generally been validated by *in vitro* data ignoring the fate of the skin residue levels. However, these models may prove useful as a screening tool or for qualitative comparison of skin permeation potential. On a case-by-case basis, and if scientifically justified, the use of (quantitative) structure activity relationships may prove useful, especially within a group of closely related substances.

It is notable that a project on the Evaluation and Prediction of Dermal Absorption of Toxic Chemicals (EDETOX) was conducted (Williams, 2004). A large critically evaluated database with *in vivo* and *in vitro* data on dermal absorption/penetration of chemicals has been established. It is available at http://edetox.ncl.ac.uk. Based on this data, existing QSARs were evaluated (Fitzpatrick *et al.*, 2004). Furthermore new models were developed: a mechanistically based model, which was used to interpret some of the newly generated data, a simple membrane model and a diffusion model of percutaneous absorption kinetics. All these models have mostly been based on and applied to rather large organic molecules and have thus limited relevance for assessment of inorganic substances. Furthermore, a guidance document was developed for conduct of *in vitro* studies of dermal absorption/penetration and can be obtained via http://www.ncl.ac.uk/edetox/. Although mainly based on the experiences gathered with organic substances, parts of this practical guidance on conduct of such studies are also applicable to inorganic substances.

Evaluation of Distribution

For determination of the distribution of a substance in the body there are two approaches available at present for analysis of distribution patterns. Quantitative information can be obtained firstly, using whole-body autoradiographic techniques and secondly, by sacrificing animals at different times after exposure and determination of the concentration and amount of the test substance and/or metabolites in tissues and organs (EU B.36[29], OECD TG 417).

Evaluation of the Accumulative Potential

*Bioconcentration* refers to the accumulation of a substance dissolved in water by an aquatic organism. The static *bioconcentration factor* (BCF) is the ratio of the concentration of a substance in an organism to the concentration in water once a steady

[29] See Test Methods Regulation (Council Regulation (EC) No 440/2008).

state has been achieved. Traditionally, bioconcentration potential has been assessed using laboratory experiments that expose fish to the substance dissolved in water (EU C.13[29], OECD TG 305). The resulting fish BCF is widely used as a surrogate measure for bioaccumulation potential.

Another possibility to assess the accumulative potential of a substance is to expose rats repeatedly to a substance (e.g. 4 week daily administration) and determine the body burden or the amount in a relevant compartment in a time course.

Accumulating substances can also be measured in milk and therefore additionally allow an estimation of transfer to the breast-fed pup.

Evaluation of Metabolism

*In vivo* TK studies generally only determine the rates of total metabolic clearance (by measurement of radiolabelled products in blood/plasma, bile, and excrements) rather than the contributions of individual tissues. It has to be taken into account that the total metabolic clearance is the sum of the hepatic and potential extrahepatic metabolism.

*In vitro* tests can be performed using isolated enzymes, microsomes and microsomal fractions, immortalised cell lines, primary cells and organ slices. Most frequently these materials originate from the liver as this is the most relevant organ for metabolism, however, in some cases preparation from other organs are used for investigation of potential organ-specific metabolic pathways.

When using metabolically incompetent cells an exogenous metabolic activation system is usually added in to the cultures. For this purpose the post-mitochondrial 9000x g supernatant (S9 fraction) of whole liver tissue homogenate containing a high concentration of metabolising enzymes is most commonly employed - the donor species needs to be considered in the context of the study. In all cases metabolism may either be directly assessed by specific identification of the metabolites or by subtractive calculation of the amount of parent substance lost in the process.

Evaluation of Excretion

The major routes of excretion are in the urine and/or the faeces (via bile and directly from the GI mucosa; see Rozman, 1986). For this purpose urine, faeces and expired air and, in certain circumstances, bile are collected and the amount of test substance and/or metabolites in these excreta is measured (EU B.36[29], OECD TG 417).

The excretion of chemicals (metabolites) in other biological fluids such as *saliva*, *milk*, *tears*, and *sweat* is usually negligible compared with renal or biliary excretion. However, in special cases these fluids may be important to study either for monitoring purposes, or in the case of milk allowing an assessment of the exposure of infants.

For volatile substances and metabolites exhaled air may be an important route of elimination. Therefore, exhaled air shall be examined in respective cases.

## *In silico* methods - Kinetic modelling

*In silico* methods for toxicokinetics, can be defined as mathematical models, which can be used to understand physiological phenomena of absorption, distribution, metabolism and elimination of chemicals in the body. These methods gather, for example, QSAR models, compartmental models, or allometric equations (Ings, 1990; Bachmann, 1996). Their main advantages compared to *classical* (*in vitro*, *in vivo*) methods is that they estimate the toxicokinetics of a given agent quicker, cheaper and reduced the number of experimental animals. A detailed discussion of the approaches that integrate information generated *in silico* and *in vitro* is presented in Appendix R.7.12—2 of this document.

When using kinetic models, two opposite situations can be schematically described:

- either the values of some or all parameters are unknown, and the model is adjusted (fitted) to data in order to extract from the dataset these parameter values: this is the fitting situation.
- or the parameter values are considered as known, and the model is used to generate simulated datasets: this is the simulation situation.

Appropriate algorithms, implemented in validated suitable software, are available to perform fitting and simulation operations. Both model fitting and simulation operations have specific technical problems and pitfalls, and must be performed by adequately trained scientists or scientific teams. Simulation is an extremely useful tool, because it is the only way to predict situations for which it is not, and often will never be possible to generate or collect real data. The results of carefully designed simulations, with attached uncertainty estimations, are then the only available tools for quantitative risk assessment. The better the model-building steps will have been performed, the better defined will be the predictions, leading ultimately to better-informed regulatory decisions.

In a risk assessment context, to identify TK relationship as best as possible, TK information collected from *in vitro* and *in vivo* experiments could be analysed on the basis of *in silico* models. The purpose of TK *in silico* models is to describe or predict the concentrations and to define the internal dose of the parent chemical or of its active metabolite. This is important because internal doses provide a better basis than external exposure for predicting toxic effects. The prediction of pharmaco- or toxicological effects from external exposure or from internal dose rests upon *in silico* pharmaco- or toxicodynamic modelling. The combined used of pharmacokinetic models (describing the relationships between dose / exposure and concentrations within the body), with pharmacodynamic models (describing the relationship between concentrations or concentration-derived internal dose descriptors and effects), is called pharmacokinetic / pharmacodynamic modelling, or PKPD modelling. The term toxicokinetic / toxicodynamic modelling, or TKTD, covers the same concept.

TK models typically describe the body as a set of compartments through which chemicals travel or are transformed. They fall into two main classes: *empirical* models and physiologically-based kinetic models (PBK) (Andersen, 1995; Balant and Gex-Fabry, 1990; Clewell and Andersen, 1996; Gerlowski and Jain, 1983). All these models simplify the complex physiology by subdividing the body into compartments within which the toxic agent is assumed to be homogeneously distributed (Gibaldi, 1982). Empirical TK models represent the body by one or two (rarely more than three) compartments not reflecting the anatomy of the species. These models are simple (with a low number of parameters), allow describing many kinds of kinetics and can be easily fitted to experimental data.

The structure and parameter values of *empirical kinetic models* are essentially determined by the datasets themselves, whether experimental or observational. Datasets consist generally in concentration versus time curves in various fluids or tissues, after dosing or exposure by various routes, at various dose or exposure levels, in various individuals of various species. Classic kinetic models represent the body by a small number of compartments (usually 1 or 2 per compound or metabolite, rarely 3, exceptionally more than 3) where ADME phenomena occur. Phenomena are described using *virtual* volume terms and transfer rates, which are the parameters of the models. The function of the volume parameters is to relate the concentrations measured, e.g. in plasma, to the amounts of xenobiotic present in the body. The volumes described in the model usually have no physiological counterpart.

The structure of the model itself is largely determined by the datasets which they are intended to describe. This is why these models are often said to be *data-driven*, or *top to bottom*. Compared to physiologically based models, classic kinetic models are usually better adapted to fitting model to data in order to extract parameter values.

A *physiologically based (PBK) model* is an independent structural mathematical model, comprising the tissues and organs of the body with each perfused by, and connected via, the blood/lymphatic circulatory system. PBK models comprise four main types of parameter:

- Physiological
- Anatomical
- Biochemical
- Physicochemical

Physiological and anatomical parameters include tissue masses and blood perfusion rates, estimates of cardiac output and alveolar ventilation rates. Biochemical parameters include enzyme metabolic rates and polymorphisms, enzyme synthesis and inactivation rates, receptor and protein binding constants etc. Physico-chemical parameters refer to partition coefficients. A partition coefficient is a ratio of the solubility of a chemical in a biological medium, usually blood-air and tissue-blood. Anatomical and physiological parameters are readily available and many have been obtained by measurement. Biochemical and physicochemical parameters are compound specific. When such parameters (see e.g. Brown *et al.*, 1997; Clewell and Andersen, 1996; Dedrick and Bischoff, 1980) are measured and used to construct an *a priori* model that qualitatively describes a dataset, then confidence in such a model should be high. In the absence of measured data, such as partition coefficients, these may be estimated using tissue-composition based algorithms (Theil *et al.*, 2003). Metabolic rate constants may be fitted using a PBK model, although this practice should only be undertaken if there are no other alternatives. A sensitivity analysis (see below) of these models (Gueorguieva *et al.*, 2006; Nestorov, 1999) may be performed for identifying which parameters are important within a model. It helps prioritizing and focusing on only those parameters which have a significant impact on the risk assessment process and to identify sensitive population. A discussion on the applicability of PBK Modelling for the development of assessment factors in risk assessment is presented in Appendix R.7.12—3 of this document.

The potential of PBK models to generate predictions from *in vitro* or *in vivo* information is one of their attractive features in the risk assessment of chemicals. The degree of later refinement of the predictions will depend on the particular purpose for which kinetic information is generated, as well as on the feasibility of generating additional data. When new information becomes available, the PBK model should be calibrated; Bayesian techniques, for example, can be easily used for that purpose.

PBK models are very useful when the kinetic process of interest cannot be directly observed and then when extrapolations are needed. Indeed, inter-species, inter-individual, inter-dose or inter-route extrapolations are more robust when they are based on PBK rather than on empirical models. The intrinsic capacity for extrapolation makes PBK models particularly attractive for assessing the risk of chemicals, because it will be usually impossible to gather kinetic data in all species of interest, and particularly in man, or by all relevant exposure schemes. More specifically, PBK models also allow to evaluate TK in reprotoxicity, developmental and multi-generational toxicological studies. PBK model can be developed to depict internal disposition of chemical during pregnancy in the mother and the embryo/foetus (Corley *et al.*, 2003; Gargas *et al.*, 2000; Lee *et al.*, 2002; Luecke *et al.*, 1994; Young *et al.*, 2001). Lactation transfer of toxicant from mother to newborn can also be quantified using PBK models (Byczkowski and Lipscomb, 2001; Faqi *et al.*, 1998; You *et al.*, 1999). The main interests of PBK are also the ability to check complex hypothesis (such as, for example, the existence of an unknown metabolism pathway or site) and to give predictions on the internal doses (which is not always observable in human). Finally, they also allow estimation of kinetic parameter (e.g. metabolism constant) and dose reconstruction from biomarkers.

The rationale for using PBK models in risk assessment is that they provide a documentable, scientifically defensible means of bridging the gap between animal bioassays and human risk estimates. In particular, they shift the risk assessment from the administered dose to a dose more closely associated with the toxic effect by explicitly describing their relationships as a function of dose, species, route and exposure scenario. The increased complexity and data demands of PBK models must be counter-balanced by the increased accuracy, biological plausibility and scientific justifiability of any risk assessment using them. It follows from this that PBK models are more likely to be used for chemicals of high concern.

Sensitivity analysis

As biological insight increases, more complex mathematical models of physiological systems that exhibit more complex non-linear behaviour will appear. Although the governing equations of these models can usually be solved with relative ease using a generic numerical technique, often the real strength of the model is not the predictions it produces but how those predictions were produced. That is, how do the hypotheses, that fit together to make the model, interact with each other? Which of the assumptions or mechanisms are most important in determining the output? How sensitive is the model output to changes in input parameters or model structure? Sensitivity analysis techniques exist that can address these questions by giving a measure of the effects on model output caused by variation in its inputs. SA can be used to determine:

- Whether a model emulates the organism being studied,
- Which parameters require additional research to strengthen knowledge,
- The influence of structures such as *in vitro* scalings,
- Physiological characteristics/compound specific parameters that have an insignificant effect on output and may be eliminated from the model,
- Feasible combinations of parameters where model variation is greatest,
- Most appropriate regions within the space of input parameters for use in parameter optimisation,
- Whether interaction between parameters occurs, and which of them interact (Saltelli *et al*., 2000).

Predictions from a complex mathematical model require a detailed sensitivity analysis in order that the limitations of the predictions provided by model can be assessed. A thorough understanding the model itself can greatly reduce the efforts in collating physiological and compound specific data, and lead to more refined and focused simulations that more accurately predict human variability across a population and identify groups susceptible to toxic effects of a given compound.

## Importance of Uncertainty and Variability

Uncertainty and variability are inherent to a TK study and affect potentially the conclusion of the study. It is necessary to minimize uncertainty in order to assess the variability that may exist between individuals so that there is confidence in the TK results such that they can be useful for risk analysts and decision-makers.

*Variability* typically refers to differences in the physiological characteristics among individuals (inter-individual variability) or across time within a given individual (intra-individual variability). It may stem from genetic differences, activity level, lifestyles, physiological status, age, sex *etc*. Variability is inherent in animal and human populations. It can be observed and registered as information about the population, but it cannot be reduced. An important feature of variability is that it does not tend to decrease when larger samples of a population are examined.

Variability in the population should then be taken into account in TK studies. Regarding PBK models, it may be introduced by the use of probability distributions for parameters representing the distribution of physiological characteristics in the population. The propagation of these variability to model predictions may be evaluated using Monte Carlo simulations methods.[30]

*Uncertainty* can be defined as the inability to make precise and unbiased statements. It is essentially due to a lack of knowledge. Uncertainty in the information may decrease with the size of the sample studied. It can be theoretically, eliminated and at least reduced by further optimised experiments or by a better understanding of the process under study.

Uncertainty may be related to:

*The experimental nature of the data*. Indeed, uncertainty comes from errors in experimental data. Experimental data are typically known with finite precision dependent of the apparatus used. However such uncertainties may be easily assessed with quality measurement data. They can be modelled with probability distributions (*e.g.*, the measured quantity is distributed normally with mean the actual quantity and a given standard deviation). Uncertainty may also be generated by the data gathering process and errors made at this stage (reading errors, systematic measurement errors, *etc*).

*The modelling procedure*. Uncertainty is most of the time inescapable due to the complexity and unknown nature of the phenomena involved (model specification). The source of uncertainty in the model structure (and more particularly in PBK models) is primarily a lack of theoretical knowledge to correctly describe the phenomenon of interest on all scales. In this case, the world is not fully understood and therefore not modelled exactly. Summing up, in a model, a massive amount of information can in itself be a technical challenge. An organism may be viewed as an integrated system, whose components correlations are both strong and multiple (e.g., a large liver volume might be expected to be associated with a large blood flow). Given the complexity of an organism, it is not feasible to integrate all the interactions between its components (most of them are not even fully known and quantified) in the development of a model. Therefore modellers have to simplify reality. Such assumptions will however introduce uncertainty. A general statistical approach to quantify model uncertainty is first to evaluate the accuracy of the model when predicting some datasets. Models based on different assumptions may be tested and statistical criteria (such as the Akaike criterion[31]) may be used to discriminate between models

*The high inherent variability of biological systems*. The variability itself is a source of uncertainty. In some cases, it is possible to fully know variability, for example by exhaustive enumeration, with no uncertainty attached. However, variability may be a source of uncertainty in predictions if it is not fully understood and ascribed to randomness.

---

[30] These methods consist of specifying a probability distribution for each model parameter; sampling randomly each model parameter from its specified distribution; running the model using the sampled parameter values, and computing various model predictions of interest. Instead of specifying independent distributions for parameters, a joint probability distribution may be assigned to a group of parameters to describe their correlation.

[31] measure of the logarithm of the likelihood.

#### R.7.12.2.3 Include human data when available to refine the assessment

Human biological monitoring and biological marker measurement studies provide dosimetric means for establishing aggregate and/or cumulative absorbed doses of chemicals following specific situations or exposure scenarios or for establishing baseline, population-based background levels (Woollen, 1993). The results from these studies, e.g., temporal situational biological monitoring, provide a realistic description of human exposure.

Biomonitoring, the routine analysis of human tissues or excreta for direct or indirect evidence of human exposures to substances, can provide unique insights into the relationship between dose and putative toxicity thresholds established in experimental animals, usually rats. Pioneering research by Elkins *et al.* (1954) on the relationship between concentrations of chemicals in the workplace and their concentrations in body fluids helped to establish the Biological Exposure Index (ACGIH, 2002). Urine is the most frequently used biological specimen, due to its non-invasive nature and ease of collection and its importance as a route of excretion for most analytes. The analyte to be monitored should be selected depending on the metabolism of the compound, the biological relevance, and feasibility considerations, in order to maximise the relevance of the information obtained.

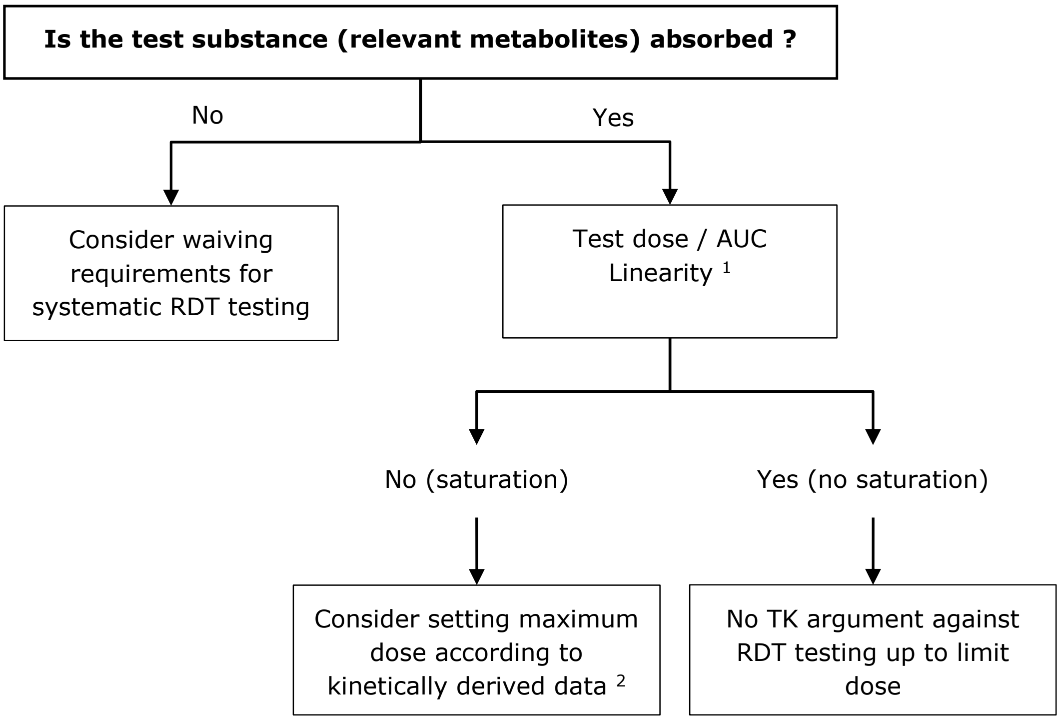
#### R.7.12.2.4 Illustration of the benefit of using TK information

The understanding of the mode of action of a substance or at least the estimation through a category of substances with a similar structure and action supports argumentation on specific modulation of testing schemes (even waiving) and the overall interpretation of the biological activity of a substance. The following diagrams shall illustrate the way of thinking that can be applied regarding making use of TK information when this is available. It should be acknowledged that just in very rare cases a *yes-no* answer could be applied. Often a complex pattern of different information creates specific situations that deviate from the simplified standard procedures given below. The answer *no* can be understood in regard to *no significant* effect based on substance dependent expert judgment and detection limits of sensitive test methods (compare REACH Annex VIII, Section 8.7). Therefore, experts need to be consulted for use of TK data for designing tests individually, interpretation of results for elucidating the mode of action or in a grouping or read-across approach and also regarding the use of computational PBK model systems.

### Use of TK information to support Dose Setting Decisions for Repeated Dose Studies

TK data, especially information on absorption, metabolism and elimination, are highly useful in the process of the design of repeated dose toxicity (RDT) studies. Repeated dose toxicity studies should be performed according to the respective OECD or EU guidelines. The highest dose level in such studies should be chosen with the aim to induce toxicity but not death or severe suffering in the test animals. For doing so, the OECD or EU guidelines suggest to test up to a standardised limit dose level called maximum tolerated dose (MTD). It is convenient to remember that such doses may, in certain cases, cause saturation of metabolism and, therefore, the obtained results need to be carefully evaluated when eventually assessing the risk posed by exposure at levels where a substance can be readily metabolised and cleared from the body. Consequently, when designing repeated dose toxicity studies, it is convenient to consider selecting appropriate dose levels on the basis of results from metabolic and toxicokinetic investigation. Figure R.7.12—1 illustrates how TK data could assist in dose setting decisions for repeated dose toxicity studies.

**Figure R.7.12—1 Use of TK data in the design of RDT studies**




[1] In the dose-range under consideration for RDT testing

[2] Meaning that the highest dose-level should not exceed into the range of non-linear kinetics.

The question which needs to be addressed initially is whether the substance is absorbed. If it can be demonstrated that a substance is not absorbed, it cannot induce direct systemic effects. In such a case, from the kinetic point of view, there is no need for further repeated dose testing[32].If the substance is absorbed the question arises whether there is a linear relationship between the administered dose and the AUC in the blood. If this is the case and the substance is not metabolised, then there is no kinetic argument against testing at the standardised MTD suggested by OECD or EU guidelines.

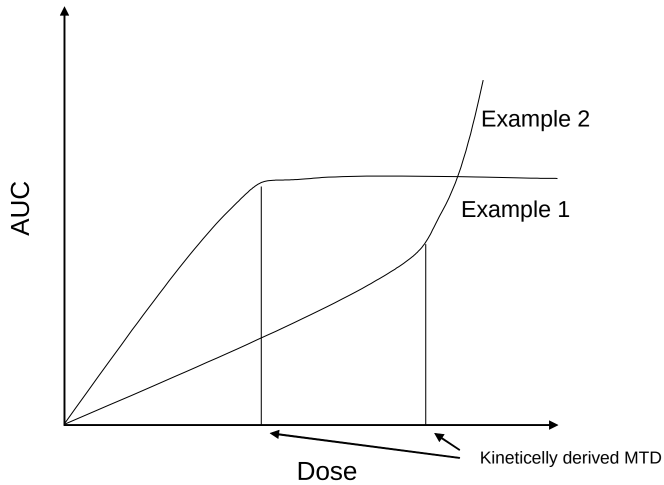
Often the dose/AUC relationship deviates from linearity above a certain dose. This is illustrated in Figure R.7.12—2. In both cases described the dose level corresponding to the inflexion point can be regarded as the kinetically derived maximally tolerated dose (MTD) If information in this regard is available, it might be considered setting the highest dose level for repeated doses studies according to the kinetically derived MTD.

---

[32] Secondary effects misinterpreted, as primary toxic effects need to be excluded.

**Figure R.7.12—2 Departure from linearity at certain doses**

In example 1 the AUC does not increase beyond a certain dose level. This is the case when absorption becomes saturated above a certain dose level. The dose/AUC relationship presented in example 2 can be obtained when elimination or metabolism becomes saturated above a certain dose level, resulting in an over proportional increase in the AUC beyond this dose.




## Use of kinetic information in the design and validation of categories

Information on kinetics *in vivo* will assist the design of categories. Candidate category substances can be identified, with which to perform *in vitro or in vivo* tests, thus making extrapolation of toxicological findings between substances more relevant.

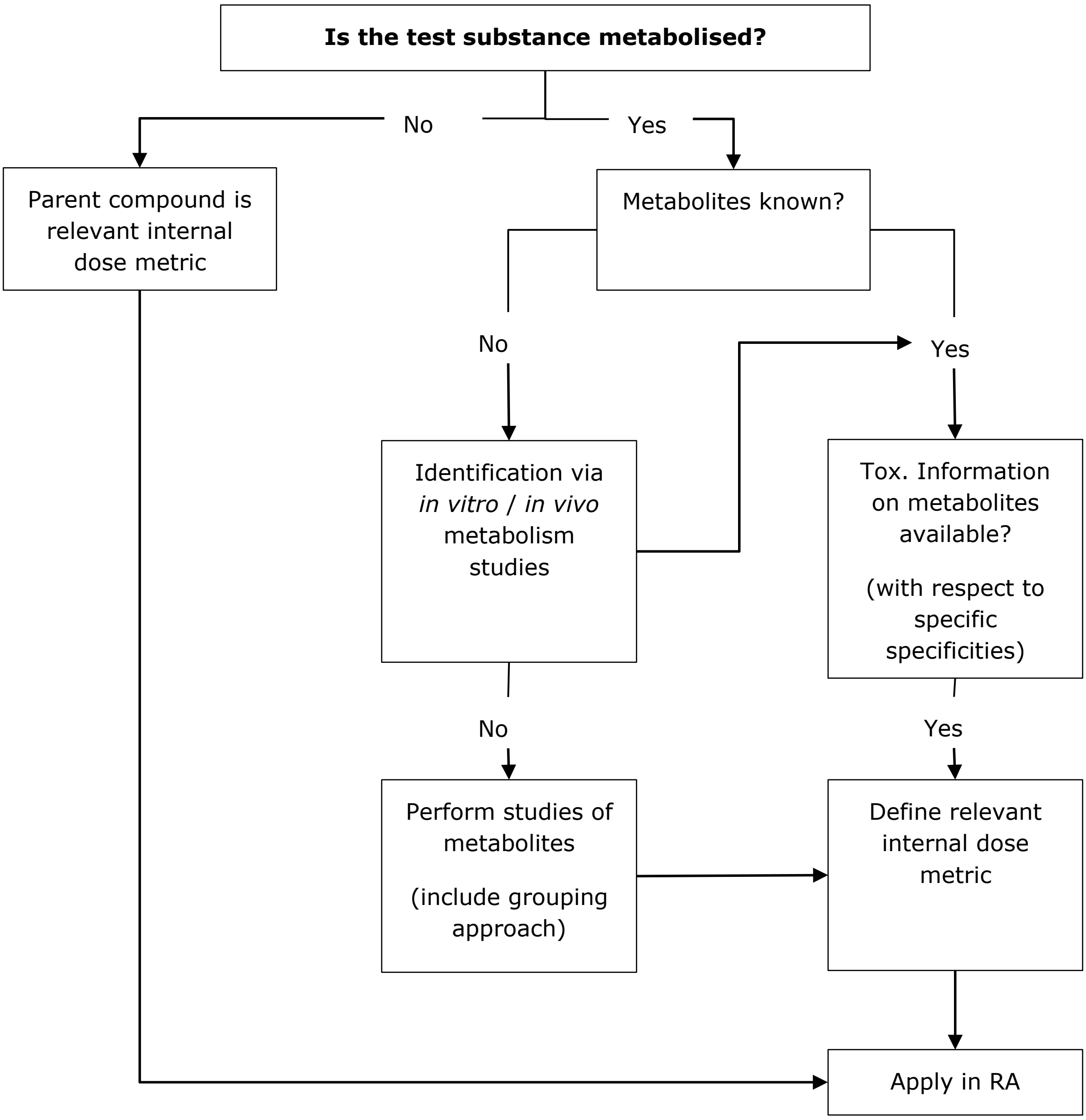
Where there is uncertainty or contradictory information within a category, the category or membership of a certain substance to a category can be verified using kinetics information.

## Metabolism Studies as basis for Internal Dose considerations

Biotransformation of a substance produces metabolites that may have different toxicological properties than the substrate from which they are formed. Although metabolism is generally referred to a detoxification purpose, there are also many examples for which metabolites have a higher intrinsic toxicity than the parent compound itself (metabolic activation). Therefore, the knowledge if the test substance is metabolised and to which metabolites is necessary to enable the assessment of the results from toxicity studies in respect to waiving and grouping approaches as well as to define an internal dose (see Figure R.7.12—2).

If the test substance is not metabolised, the parent compound is the relevant marker for the measurement and the definition of the internal dose. If the test substance is metabolised, the knowledge which metabolites are formed is essential for any further step in an assessment. When this information is not available, it can be investigated by appropriate *in vitro* and/or *in vivo* metabolism studies (see Section R.7.12.2.1). In special cases metabolites may show a high degree of isomeric specificity and this should be born in mind in the design and interpretation of mixtures of isomers, including racemates. If the metabolites are known and if toxicity studies are available for these metabolites, risk assessment may be carried out based on these data and an assessment on the basis of the definition of the internal dose can be made. If the toxicity profile for the metabolites is unknown, studies that address the toxicity of these metabolites may be performed under special considerations of potential group approaches (especially if a chemical substance is the metabolite of different compounds, e.g. like a carboxylic acid as a metabolite of different esters).

**Figure R.7.12—3 Use of increasing knowledge on substance metabolism**



TK information can be very helpful in bridging various gaps as encountered in the whole risk assessment, from toxicity study design and biomonitoring[33] setup to the derivation of the DNEL (Derived No-Effect Level) and various extrapolations as usually needed (cross-dose, cross-species including man, cross-exposure regimens, cross-routes, and cross-substances). The internal dose is the central output parameter of TK studies and therefore the *external exposure – internal dose – concept* is broadly applicable in the various extrapolations mentioned (see also Section R.7.12.2.4). In addition, under REACH, derivation of DNELs is obligatory. If, for that purpose, route-to-route extrapolation is necessary and in case assessment of combined exposure (via different routes) is needed, for systemic effects, internal exposure may have to be estimated.

Exposure should normally be understood as external exposure which can be defined as the amount of substance ingested, the total amount in contact with the skin or either the amount inhaled or the concentration of the substance in the atmosphere in combination with the exposure duration, as appropriate. In cases where a comparison needs to be made with systemic effects data (e.g. when inhalation or dermal toxicity values are lacking or when exposures due to more than one route need to be combined) the total body burden has to be estimated and expressed as an internal dose.

Determination of the level of systemic exposure is considered synonymous to determination of bioavailability of a substance to the general circulation. Depending on the problem considered and other concomitant information such as exposure scenarios, this could be expressed as a fraction bioavailable (F), a mass bioavailable, a concentration profile, an average concentration, or an AUC. It should be emphasised that it is usually not possible to show that the amount of a substance bioavailable is zero, apart from favourable cases by dermal route, considering only intact skin. This should be assessed in terms of thresholds, the objective being to establish whether or not the bioavailability of a substance is predicted to be below a certain threshold. The degree of certainty of the prediction will depend on each case, important factors being the accuracy and reliability of the *in vivo, in vitro* or *in silico* model used, the performance of the methods used to assay the substance or its metabolites, the estimated variability in the target population etc.

Tissue distribution characteristics of a compound can be an important determinant of its potential to cause toxicity in specific tissues. In addition, tissue distribution may be an important determinant of the ability of a compound to accumulate upon repeated exposure, although this is substantially modified by the rate at which the compound is cleared. Correlation of tissue distribution with target tissues in toxicity studies should be accomplished while substantial amounts of the chemical remain present in the body, for example, at one or more times around the peak blood concentration following oral absorption. Such data should quantify parent compound and metabolites, to the extent feasible. If the metabolites are unknown or difficult to quantify, subtracting parent

---

[33] Biological monitoring information should be seen as equivalent (i.e. as having neither greater nor lesser importance) to other forms of exposure data. It should also be remembered that biological monitoring results reflect an individual's total exposure to a substance from any relevant route, i.e. from consumer products, and/or from the environment and not just occupational exposure. Data from controlled human exposure studies are even more unlikely available. This is due to the practical and ethical considerations involved in deliberate exposure of individuals.

compound from total radioactivity will provide an estimate of the behaviour of the total metabolites formed.

### Extrapolation

For ethical reasons, data allowing estimating model parameters are poor, sparse, and do not often concern human populations; recourse to extrapolation is then needed. TK data are mostly gathered for few concentrations (usually less than 5 different concentrations) and limited number of different exposure times. However, risk evaluation should also status on different doses (exposure concentrations and times). Inter-dose/inter-exposure time extrapolation is a common way to satisfy this request - mathematical methods (e.g. linear regression) are used for this purpose. The non-linear kinetic behaviour of chemicals in a biological organism is the result of a number of mechanisms e.g., saturable metabolism, enzyme induction, enzyme inactivation and depletion of glutathione and other cofactor reserves. High-dose-low-dose extrapolation of tissue dose is accomplished with PBK modelling by accounting for such mechanisms (Clewell and Andersen, 1996).

In the rare case where data on human volunteers are available, they only concern a very limited number of subjects. Extrapolation to other body and to the global population should be done (inter-individual extrapolation). The problem of sensitive populations also raises and TK study should status on other gender, age or ethnic groups, for example. As it is practically nearly impossible to control internal dose in humans, alternative animal study is often proposed. Since risk assessment aims at protecting human population, inter-species extrapolation (Davidson *et al.*, 1986; Watanabe and Bois, 1996) should be done. For practical reasons, the administration route in experimental study can be different from the most likely exposure route. Risk assessment implies then to conclude on another route than the one experimentally studied. Inter-route extrapolation should then be performed.

Default values have been derived to match the extrapolation idea in a general way. The incorporation of quantitative data on interspecies differences or human variability in TK and TD into dose/concentration-response dose assessment through the development of chemical specific adjustment factors (CSAFs) might improve risk assessment of single substances. Currently, relevant data for consideration are often restricted to the component of uncertainty related to interspecies differences in TK. While there are commonly fewer data at the present time to address interspecies differences in TD, inter-individual variability in TK and TD, it is anticipated that the availability of such information will increase with a better common understanding of its appropriate nature (IPCS, 2001). The type of TK information that could be used includes the rate and extent of absorption, the extent of systemic availability, the rate and extent of presystemic (first-pass) and systemic metabolism, the extent of enterohepatic recirculation, information on the formation of reactive metabolites and possible species differences and knowledge of the half-life and potential for accumulation under repeated exposure.

The need for these extrapolations can lead one to prefer physiological TK models to empirical models (Davidson *et al.*, 1986; Watanabe and Bois, 1996; Young *et al.*, 2001). Indeed, PBK models facilitate the required extrapolations (inter-species, inter-subject etc). By changing anatomical parameters (such as organ volumes or blood flows), a PBK model can be transposed from rat to human, for example.

Interspecies extrapolation

The use of animal data for toxicological risk assessment arises the question of how to extrapolate experimentally observed kinetics to human subjects or populations - the ability to compare data from animals with those from humans will enable defining chemical-specific interspecies extrapolation factors to replace the default values. One possibility to do so is the calculation of allometric factors by extrapolation based on different body sizes. The most complex procedure for inter-species extrapolation is the collection of different data and use these in a PBK modelling.

Allometric scaling is a commonly employed extrapolation approach. It is based on the principle that biological diversity is largely explained by body size (Schneider *et al.*, 2004). Allometric scaling captures the correlations of physiological parameters or TK with body size. More precisely, allometric equations relate the quantity of interest (e.g., a tissue dose) to a power function of body mass, fitted across species:

$$Y = a\ BM^b$$

where *Y* is the quantity of interest, *a* is a species-independent scaling coefficient[34], *BM* is body mass and *b* is the allometric exponent. Values of *b* depend upon whether the quantity of interest scales approximately with body mass ($b$=1), metabolic rate[35] ($b$=0.75), or body surface area (b=0.67[36]) (Davidson *et al.*, 1986; Fiserova-Bergerova and Hugues, 1983; West *et al.*, 1997). As it is easy to apply, the allometric scaling is probably the most convenient approach to interspecies extrapolation. However, it is very approximate and may not hold for the chemical of interest. As such it can be conceived only as default approach to be used only in the absence of specific data in the species of interest.

For a chemical that demonstrates significant interspecies variation in toxicity in animal experiments, the most susceptible species is generally used as the reference for this extrapolation. Uncertainty factors up to 1000 or more have been applied in recognition of the uncertainty involved. Whereas a metabolic rate constant estimated in this way may be used in a PBK model, it is preferable, where possible, to determine such parameters *in vitro* using tissue subcellular fractions or estimate them by fitting a PBK model to an appropriate dataset.

Consequently, to better estimate tissue exposure across species, PBK models may be used for the considered toxicant (Watanabe and Bois, 1996). These models account for transport mechanisms and metabolism within the body. These processes are then modelled by the same equation set for all species considered. Differences between species are assumed to be due to different (physiological, chemical, and metabolic) parameter values. Extrapolation of PBK models then relies on replacing the model parameter values of one species with the parameter values of the species of interest. For

[34] Fits single data points together to form an appropriate curve.

[35] In this context not metabolism of compounds! The factor adapts different levels of oxygen consumption.

[36] This scaling factor is generally justified on the basis of the studies by Freireich *et al* (1966), who examined the interspecies differences in toxicity of a variety of antineoplastic drugs.

physiological parameters, numerous references (Arms and Travis, 1988; Brown *et al.*, 1997; ICRP, 2002) give standard parameter values for many species. Chemical (partitioning coefficient) and metabolic parameter values are usually less easily found. When parameter values of PBK model are not known for the considered species, recourse to *in vitro* data, Quantitative Structure-Property Relationships (QSPR) predictions or allometric scaling of those parameters is still possible. To take into account population variability in the extrapolation process, probability distributions of parameters may be used rather than single parameter values. PBK models can be particularly useful where data are being extrapolated to population subgroups for which the little information is available e.g. on pregnant women or infants (Luecke *et al.*, 1994; Young *et al.*, 2001).

<u>Inter-route Extrapolation</u>

Route-to-route extrapolation is defined as the prediction of the total amount of a substance administered by one route that would produce the same systemic toxic response as that obtained for a given amount of a substance administered by another route.

In general, route-to-route extrapolation is considered to be a poor substitute for toxicity data obtained using the appropriate route of exposure. Uncertainties in extrapolation increase when it becomes necessary to perform a risk assessment with toxicity data obtained by an administration route which does not correspond to the human route of exposure. Insight into the reliability of the current methodologies for route-to-route extrapolation has not been obtained yet (Wilschut *et al*., 1998).

When route-to-route extrapolation is to be used, the following aspects should be carefully considered:

- *nature of effect:* route-to-route extrapolation is only applicable for the evaluation of systemic effects. For the evaluation of local effects after repeated exposure, only results from toxicity studies performed with the route under consideration can be used;
- *toxicokinetic data (ADME):* The major factors responsible for differences in toxicity due to route of exposure include:
- differences in bioavailability or absorption,
- differences in metabolism (first pass effects),
- differences in internal exposure pattern (i.e. internal dose).

In the absence of relevant kinetic data, route-to-route extrapolation is only possible if the following assumptions are reasonable:

- Absorption can be quantified

- Toxicity is a systemic effect not a local one (compound is relatively soluble in body fluids, therefore systemically bioavailable) and internal dose can be estimated[37]
- First-pass effects are minimal

Provided the listed criteria are met, the only possibility for route-to-route extrapolation is to use default values. If route-to-route extrapolation is required or if an internal N(O)AEL/starting point needs to be derived in order to assess combined exposure from different routes, information on the extent of absorption for the different routes of exposure should be used to modify the starting point. On a case-by-case basis a judgement will have to be made as to whether the extent of absorption for the different routes of exposure determined from the experimental absorption data is applicable to the starting point of interest. Special attention should be given to the dose ranges employed in the absorption studies (e.g. very high dose levels) compared to those (e.g. much lower dose levels, especially in the case of human data) used to determine the starting point. Consideration should also be given to the age of the animals employed in the absorption studies (e.g. adult animals) compared to the age of the animals (e.g. pups during lactation) used to determine the starting point. For substances that undergo first-pass metabolism by one or more routes of administration, information on the extent of the presystemic metabolism and systemic availability should also be considered. This could lead to an additional modification of the starting point.

In practice, in the absence of dermal toxicity factors, the US EPA (2004) has devised a simplified paradigm for making route-to-route (oral-to-dermal) extrapolations for systemic effects. This approach is subject to a number of factors that might compromise the applicability of an oral toxicity factor for dermal exposure assessment. The estimation of oral absorption efficiency, to adjust the toxicity factor from administered to absorbed dose, introduces uncertainty. Part of this uncertainty relates to distinctions between the terms absorption and bioavailability. Typically, the term absorption refers to the disappearance of chemical from the gastrointestinal lumen, while oral bioavailability is defined as the rate and amount of chemical that reaches the systemic circulation unchanged. That is, bioavailability accounts for both absorption and pre-systemic metabolism. Although pre-systemic metabolism includes both gut wall and liver metabolism, for the most part it is liver first pass effect that plays the major role.

In the absence of metabolic activation or detoxification, toxicity adjustment should be based on bioavailability rather than absorption because the dermal pathway purports to estimate the amount of parent compound entering the systemic circulation. Simple adjustment of the oral toxicity factor, based on oral absorption efficiency, does not account for metabolic by-products that might occur in the gut wall but not the skin, or conversely in the skin, but not the gut wall.

[37] It needs to be ensured that systemic effects are not secondary to local ones. E.g. dermal contact with a substance may also result in direct dermal toxicity, such as allergic contact dermatitis, chemical irritation or skin cancer – effects that might in an early stage lead to systemic responses that consequently are misinterpreted as such.

The efficiency of first pass metabolism determines the impact on route-to-route extrapolation. The adjusted dermal toxicity factor may overestimate the true dose-response relationship because it would be based upon the amount of parent compound in the systemic circulation rather than on the toxic metabolite. Additionally, percutaneous absorption may not generate the toxic metabolite to the same rate and extent as the GI route.

In practice, an adjustment in oral toxicity factor (to account for absorbed dose in the dermal exposure pathway) is recommended when the following conditions are met: (1) the toxicity value derived from the critical study is based on an administered dose (e.g., delivery in diet or by gavage) in its study design; (2) a scientifically defensible database demonstrates that the GI absorption of the chemical in question, from a medium (e.g., water, feed) similar to the one employed in the critical study, is significantly less than 100% (e.g., <50%). A cut-off of 50% GI absorption is recommended to reflect the intrinsic variability in the analysis of absorption studies. Thus, this cut-off level obviates the need to make comparatively small adjustments in the toxicity value that would otherwise impart on the process a level of accuracy that is not supported by the scientific literature.

If these conditions are not met, a default value of complete (i.e., 100%) oral absorption may be assumed, thereby eliminating the need for oral toxicity-value adjustment. The Uncertainty Analysis could note that employing the oral absorption default value may result in underestimating risk, the magnitude of which being inversely proportional to the true oral absorption of the chemical in question.

The extrapolation of the kinetic behaviour of a chemical from one exposure route to another can also be performed by using PBK models. This extrapolation procedure is based on the inclusion of appropriate model equations to represent the exposure pathways of interest. Once the chemical has reached the systemic circulation, its biodistribution is assumed to be independent of the exposure route. To represent each exposure pathway different equations (or models) are typically used. The oral exposure of a chemical may be modelled by introducing a first order or a zero order uptake rate constant. To simulate the dermal absorption, a diffusion-limited compartment model may represent skin as a portal of entry. Inhalation route is often represented with a simple pulmonary compartment and the uptake is controlled by the blood over air partition coefficient. After the equations describing the route-specific entry of chemicals into systemic circulation are included in the model, it is possible to conduct extrapolations of toxicokinetics and dose metrics.

In conclusion, route-to-route extrapolation can follow the application of assessment factors as long as the mentioned pre-conditions are met. Any specific TK information may refine the assessment factor in order to meet the precautionary function of the application of the factors as such.

# Appendices to Section R.7.12

# Appendix R.7.12—1 Toxicokinetics– Physiological Factors

This inventory has been compiled to provide a source of information on physiological parameters for various species that may be useful for interpreting toxicokinetic data. The list is not exhaustive and data from other peer-reviewed sources may be used. If study-specific data are available then this should be used in preference to default data.

Zwart *et al.* (1999) have reviewed anatomical and physiological differences between various species used in studies on pharmacokinetics and toxicology of xenobiotics. A selection of the data presented by these authors that may be relevant in the context of the EU risk assessment is quoted below. The tables are adapted from Zwart *et al.* (1999).

The authors however, focus on the oral route of administration and data relevant for other routes may have to be added. Some of those are already quoted in the section on repeated dose toxicity and are therefore not repeated here.

## Data on stomach pH-values

Qualitative Aspects to be considered in the stomach

Rodents have a non-glandular forestomach that has no equivalent in humans. It is thin-walled and transparent. In the non-glandular stomach the pH is typically higher than in the glandular part and it contains more microorganisms. The glandular stomach has gastric glands similar to the human stomach but is a relatively small part of the total rodent stomach. Data on stomach pH for different species are rare and most stem from relatively old sources.

**Table R.7.12—7 Data on stomach pH for different species**

| | Human | Rhesus monkey | Rat | Mouse | Rabbit | Dog | Pig |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Median | | | | | | | 2.7 (3.75-4) |
| Median anterior portion | 2.7 (1.8-4.5) | 4.8 | 5.0 | 4.5 | 1.9 | 5.5 | 4.3 |
| Median posterior portion | 1.9 (1.6-2.6) | 2.8 | 3.0 | 3.1 | 1.9 | 3.4 | 2.2 |
| Fasted | 1.7 (1.4-2.1) | | | | | 1.5 | 1.6-1.8 (0.8-3.0) |
| Fed | 5.0 (4.3-5.4) | | | | | 2.1± 0.1 [1)] | <2 [2)] |

1) Standard deviation

2) Data from one animal only

## Data on intestine pH and transit times

**Table R.7.12—8 Data on intestine pH**

| pH (fasted) | Human | Rat (Wistar) | Rabbit | Dog | Pig | Monkey |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Intestine | | 6.5-7.1 | 6.5-7.1 | 6.2-7.5 | 6.0-7.5 | 5.6-9 |
| Duodenum | 5-7 | 6.9[1] | | 4.5-7.5 | 7.2 | |
| Jejunum | 6-7 | | | | | |
| Ileum | 7-8 | | | | | |
| Jejunum/ileum | | 7.8[1] | | | | |
| Caecum | 5.9 | 6.8 | 6.6 | 6.4 | 6.3 | 5.0 |
| Colon | 5.5-7 | 6.6, 7.1 [1)] | 7.2 | 6.5 | 6.8 | 5.1 |
| Rectum | 7 | | | | | |

[1)] Fed state

**Table R.7.12—9 Calculated transit times in the intestine**

| Transit time (hours) | Human | Rat | Rabbit | Dog |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| small intestine | 2.7 to 5 [1)]<br><br>Children (8 to 14 years): 5.1-9.2 | 1.5 | | 0.5-2 |
| Colon | Children (8 to 14 years): 6.2-54.7 | 6.0-7.2 | 3.8 | |

[1)] From various authors, after fasting or a light meal

## Physiological parameters for inhalation

**Table R.7.12—10 Comparison of physiological parameters relating to the upper airways of rat, humans, monkeys**

| Species | body weight (kg) | Body surface area ($m^2$) | Nasal cavity volume ($cm^3$) | Nasal cavity surface area ($cm^2$) | Relative nasal surface area | Pharynx surface area ($cm^2$) | Larynx surface area ($cm^2$) | Trachea surface area ($cm^2$) | Tidal volume ($cm^3$) | Breaths per min | Minute volume (l/min) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Human | 70 | 1.85 | 25 | 160 | 6.4 | 46.6 | 29.5 | 82.5 | 750-800 | 12-15 | 9-12 |
| Rhesus monkey | 7 | 0.35 | 8 | 62 | 7.75 | - | - | - | 70 | 34 | 2.4 |
| Rat | 0.25 | 0.045 | 0.26 | 13.44 | 51.7 | 1.2 | 0.17 | 3 | 2 | 120 | 0.24 |

(from De Sesso, 1993)

The US EPA in the Exposure factors handbook (1997) has reviewed a number of studies on inhalation rates for different age groups and activities. The activity levels were categorized as resting, sedentary, light, moderate and heavy. Based on the studies that are critically reviewed in detail in the US EPA document, a number of recommended inhalation rates can be derived. One bias in the data is mentioned explicitly, namely that most of the studies reviewed were limited to the Los Angeles area and may thus not represent the general US population. This should also be born in mind when using those data in the European context. The recommended values were calculated by averaging the inhalation rates (arithmetic mean) for each population and activity level from the various studies. Due to limitations in the data sets an upper percentile is not recommended. The recommended values are given below:

**Table R.7.12—11 Summary of recommended values from US EPA (1997)**

| Population | Mean ventilation rates [$m^3$/24 h] |
|---|---|
| **Long-term exposures** | |
| Infants <1 year [1)] | 4.5 |
| Children 1-2 years [1)] | 6.8 |
| 3-5 years [1)] | 8.3 |
| 6-8 years [1)] | 10 |
| 9-11 years<br>males<br>females | <br>14<br>13 |
| 12-14 years<br>males<br>females | <br>15<br>12 |

| Population | Mean ventilation rates [$m^3$/24 h] |
|---|---|
| 15-18 years<br>males<br>females | <br>17<br>12 |
| Adults 19 – 65+ years<br>males<br>females | <br>15.2<br>11.3 |
| **Short-term exposures** | **$m^3$/h** |
| Children | |
| Rest | 0.3 |
| Sedentary activities | 0.4 |
| Light activities | 1.0 |
| Moderate activities | 1.2 |
| Heavy activities | 1.9 |
| Adults | |
| Rest | 0.4 |
| Sedentary activities | 0.5 |
| Light activities | 1.0 |
| Moderate activities | 1.6 |
| Heavy activities | 3.2 |
| Outdoor workers | |
| Hourly average | 1.3 (3.3 $m^3$/h) [2)] |
| Slow activities | 1.1 |
| Moderate activities | 1.5 |
| Heavy activities | 2.5 |

[1)] No sex difference found

[2)] Upper percentile

The document also mentions that for a calculation of an endogenous dose using the alveolar ventilation rate it has to be considered that only the amount of air available for exchange via the alveoli per unit time has to be taken into account, accounting for approximately 70% of the total ventilation. This should also be considered in the risk assessment.

Using a respiratory tract dosimetry model (ICRP66 model; Snipes *et al.*, 1997) calculated respiration rates for male adults. Based on these breathing rates estimated daily volumes of respiration were derived for different populations:

- General population: 8 h sleep, 8 h sitting, 8 h light activity: 19.9 $m^3$
- Light work: 8 h sleep, 6.5 h sitting, 8.5 h light activity, 1 h heavy activity: 22.85 $m^3$
- Heavy work: 8 h sleep, 4 h sitting, 10 h light activity, 2 h heavy activity: 26.76 $m^3$

The same authors also mention that in humans breathing pattern changes from nose breathing to nose/mouth breathing at a ventilation rate of about 2.1 $m^3/h$ (60% through nose, 40% through the mouth). At a ventilation rate of 5 $m^3/h$ about 60% of air is inhaled through the mouth and 40% through the nose. However these model calculations seem to overestimate the ventilation rates compared to the experimental data reviewed by US EPA (1992).

**Physiological parameters used in PBK modeling**

Literature on PBK modelling also contains a number of physiological parameters that are used to calculate tissue doses and distributions. Brown *et al.* (1997) have published a review of relevant physiological parameters used in PBK models. This paper provides representative and biologically plausible values for a number of physiological parameters for common laboratory species and humans. It constitutes an update of a document prepared by Arms and Travis (1988) for US EPA and also critically analyses a compilation of representative physiological parameter values by Davies and Morris (1993). Those references are therefore not reviewed here, but given in the reference list for consultation. In contrast to the other authors Brown *et al.* (1997) also try to evaluate the variability of the parameters wherever possible, by giving mean values plus standard deviation and/or the range of values identified for the different parameters in different studies. The standard deviations provided are standard deviations of the reported means in different studies, in other words they are a measure of the variation among different studies, not the interindividual variation of the parameters themselves. This variation may therefore include sampling error, interlaboratory variation, differences in techniques to obtain the data. The authors also provide some data on tissues within certain organs, which will not be quoted here.

**Table R.7.12—12 Organ weights as percent of body weight**

(adapted from Brown *et al.* (1997)) (Typically the values reflect weights of organs drained of blood)

| Organ | Mouse mean ± standard deviation | Mouse range | Rat mean ± standard deviation | Rat range | Dog mean ± standard deviation | Dog range | Human reference value mean ± standard deviation | Human range |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Adipose tissue[1] | | 5-14 [1a)] | | 5.5-7 [1b)] | | | 13.6 ± 5.3 [1c)] 21.3 [1d)], 32.7 [1e)] | 5.2-21.6 [1c)] |
| Adrenals | 0.048 [2)] | | 0.019 ± 0.007 | 0.01 - 0.031 | 0.009 ± 0.004 | 0.004 - 0.014 | 0.02 [3)] | |
| Bone | 10.73 ± 0.53 | 10.16 - 11.2 | | 5-7 [4)] | 8.10 [2,5)] | | 14.3 [3)] | |
| Brain | 1.65 ± 0.26 | 1.35-2.03 | 0.57 ± 0.14 | 0.38 - 0.83 | 0.78 ± 0.16 | 0.43 - 0.86 | 2.00 [3)] | |
| Stomach | 0.60 [2)] | | 0.46 ± 0.06 | 0.40 - 0.60 | 0.79 ± 0.15 | 0.65 - 0.94 | 0.21 [3)] | |
| Small intestine | 2.53 [2)] | | 1.40 ± 0.39 | 0.99 - 1.93 | 2.22 ± 0.68 | 1.61 - 2.84 | 0.91 [3)] | |
| Large intestine | 1.09 [2)] | | 0.84 ± 0.04 | 0.80-0.89 | 0.67 ± 0.03 | 0.65 - 0.69 | 0.53 [3)] | |
| Heart | 0.50 ± 0.07 | 0.40-0.60 | 0.33 ± 0.04 | 0.27 - 0.40 | 0.78 ± 0.06 | 0.68 - 0.85 | 0.47 [3)] | |
| Kidneys | 1.67 ± 0.17 | 1.35-1.88 | 0.73 ± 0.11 | 0.49 - 0.91 | 0.55 ± 0.07 | 0.47 - 0.70 | 0.44 [3)] | |
| Liver | 5.49 ± 1.32 | 4.19-7.98 | 3.66 ± 0.65 | 2.14 - 5.16 | 3.29 ± 0.24 | 2.94 - 3.66 | 2.57 [3)] | |
| Lungs | 0.73 ± 0.08 | 0.66-0.86 | 0.50 ± 0.09 | 0.37 - 0.61 | 0.82 ± 0.13 | 0.62 - 1.07 | 0.76 [3)] | |
| Muscle | 38.4 ± 1.81 | 35.77-39.90 | 40.43 ± 7.17 | 35.36 - 45.50 | 45.65 ± 5.54 | 35.20 - 53.50 | 40.00 [3)] | |
| Pancreas | No reliable data | | 0.32 ± 0.07 | 0.24 - 0.39 | 0.23 ± 0.06 | 0.19 - 0.30 | 0.14 [3)] | |

| Organ | Mouse mean ± standard deviation | Mouse range | Rat mean ± standard deviation | Rat range | Dog mean ± standard deviation | Dog range | Human reference value mean ± standard deviation | Human range |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Skin | 16.53 ± 3.39 | 12.86-20.80 | 19.03 ± 2.62 | 15.80 - 23.60 | no representative value | | 3.71 [3)] (3.1 female, 3.7 male) [3)] | |
| Spleen | 0.35 ± 0.16 | 0.16 - 0.70 | 0.20 ± 0.05 | 0.13 - 0.34 | 0.27 ± 0.06 | 0.21 - 0.39 | 0.26 [3)] | |
| Thyroid | no data | | 0.005 ± 0.002 | 0.002 - 0.009 | 0.008 ± 0.0005 | 0.0074 - 0.0081 | 0.03 [3)] | |

1) Defined mostly as dissectible fat tissue,

1a) Strongly dependent on strain and age in mice,

1b) Male Sprague Dawley rats equation: Fat content = 0.0199·body weight + 1.664, for male F344 rats: Fat content = 0.035·body weight + 0.205

1c) Males, 30-60 years of age

1d) ICRP, 1975 reference value for 70 kg man,

1e) ICRP, 1975 reference value for 58 kg women

2) One study only

3) ICRP, 1975 reference value

4) In most of the studies reviewed by the authors

5) Mongrel dogs

To derive the organ volume from the mass for most organs a density of 1 can reasonably be assumed. The density of marrow free bone is 1.92 g/cm$^3$ (Brown *et al.*, 1997).

Brown *et al.* (1997) also give values for cardiac output and regional blood flow as a percentage of cardiac output or blood flow/100 g tissue weight for the most common laboratory species and humans. The data used are derived from non-anaesthetised animals using radiolabelled microsphere technique. For humans data using various techniques to measure perfusion were compiled.

**Table R.7.12—13 Cardiac output (ml/min) for different species**

(adopted from Brown *et al.* (1997)).

| Mouse mean ± standard deviation | Mouse range | Rat mean ± standard deviation | Rat range | Dog mean ± standard deviation | Dog range | Human reference value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 13.98 ± 2.85 | 12 - 16 | 110.4 ± 15.60 | 84 - 134 | 2,936 [1)] | 1,300 - 3,000 [1)] | 5,200 [1)] |

1) One study only

According to the authors giving blood flow in units normalised for tissue weight can result in significant errors if default reference weights are used instead of measured tissue weights in the same study.

**Table R.7.12—14 Regional blood flow distribution in different species**

(ml/min/100g of tissue) (adopted from Brown *et al.* (1997))

| Organ | Mouse mean ± standard deviation | Mouse range | Rat mean ± standard deviation | Rat range | Dog mean ± standard deviation | Dog range |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Adipose tissue[1] | | | 33 ± 5 | 18 - 48 | 14 ± 1 | 13 - 14 |
| Adrenals | | | 429 ± 90 | 246 - 772 | 311 ± 143 | 171 - 543 |
| Bone | | | 24 ± 3 | 20 - 28 | 13 ± 1 | 12 - 13 |
| Brain | 85 ± 1 | 84 - 85 | 110 ± 13 | 45 - 134 | 65 ± 4 | 59 - 76 |
| Heart | 781 ± 18 | 768 - 793 | 530 ± 46 | 405 - 717 | 79 ± 6 | 57 - 105 |
| Kidneys | 439 ± 23 | 422 - 495 | 632 ± 44 | 422 - 826 | 406 ± 37 | 307 - 509 |
| Liver | 131 | | | | | |
| Hepatic artery | 20 | | 23 ± 44 | 9 - 48 | 21 ± 3 | 12 - 30 |
| Portal vein | 111 ± 9 | 104 - 117 | 108 ± 17 | 67 - 162 | 52 ± 4 | 42 - 58 |
| Lungs | 35[1] | | 127 ± 46 [1)] | 38 - 147 [1)] | 79 ± 43 [1)] | 36 - 122 |
| Muscle | 24 ± 6 | 20 - 28 | 29 ± 4 | 15 - 47 | 11 ± 2 | 6 - 18 |
| Skin | 18 ± 12 | 9 - 26 | 13 ± 4 | 6 - 22 | 9 ± 1 | 8 - 13 |

1) Bronchial flow

2) Based on animal studies

**Table R.7.12—15 Regional blood flow distribution in different species**

(% cardiac output) (adopted from Brown *et al.* (1997))

| Organ | Mouse mean ± standard deviation | Mouse range | Rat mean ± standard deviation | Rat range | Dog mean ± standard deviation | Human reference value mean, male | Human reference value mean, female | Human range |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Adipose tissue [1] | | | 7.0 [2] | | | 5.0 | 8.5 | 3.7-11.8 |
| Adrenals | | | 0.3±0.1 | 0.2-0.3 | 0.2[2] | 0.3 | 0.3[2] | |
| Bone | | | 12.2 [2] | | | 5.0 | 5.0 | 2.5-4.7 |
| Brain | 3.3±0.3 | 3.1-3.5 | 2.0±0.3 | 1.5-2.6 | 2.0 [2] | 12.0 | 12.0 | 8.6-20.4 |
| Heart | 6.6±.0.9 | 5.9-7.2 | 4.9±0.1 | 4.5-5.1 | 4.6 [2] | 4.0 | 5.0 | 3.0-8.0 |
| Kidneys | 9.1±2.9 | 7.0-11.1 | 14.1±1.9 | 9.5-19.0 | 17.3 [2] | 19.0 | 17.0 | 12.2-22.9 |
| Liver | 16.2 | | 17.4 | 13.1-22.1 | 29.7 [2] | 25.0 | 27.0 | 11-34.2 |
| Hepatic artery | 2.0 | | 2.4 | 0.8-5.8 | 4.6 [2] | | | |
| Portal vein | 14.1 | 13.9-14.2 | 15.1 | 11.1-17.8 | 25.1 [2] | 19.0 | 21.0 | 12.4-28.0 |
| Lungs | 0.5[1] | | 2.1±0.4 [1] | 1.1-3.0 [1] | 8.8 [1,2] | 2.5[1] | | |
| Muscle | 15.9±5.2 | 12.2-19.6 | 27.8 [2] | | 21.7 [2] | 17.0 | 12.0 | 5.7-42.2 |
| Skin | 5.8±3.5 | 3.3-8-3 | 5.8 [2] | | 6.0 [2] | 5.0 | 5.0 | 3.3-8.6 |

1) Bronchial flow

2) One study only

The blood flow to some organs such as the liver are highly variable and can be influenced by factors including anaesthesia, posture, food intake, exercise.

Gerlowski and Jain (1983) have published a compilation of different organ volumes and plasma flows for a number of species at a certain body weight from other literature sources.

1 **Table R.7.12—16 Organ volumes, plasma flow used in PBK-models**

| Parameter | Mouse | Hamster | Rat | Rabbit | Monkey | Dog | Human |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Body weight (g) | 22 | 150 | 500 | 2,330 | 5,000 | 12,000 | 70,000 |
| **Volume (ml)** | | | | | | | |
| Plasma | 1 | 6.48 | 19.6 | 70 | 220 | 500 | 3,000 |
| Muscle | 10 | - | 245 | 1,350 | 2,500 | 5,530 | 35,000 |
| Kidney | 0.34 | 1.36 | 3.65 | 15 | 30 | 60 | 280 |
| Liver | 1.3 | 6.89 | 19.55 | 100 | 135 | 480 | 1,350 |
| Gut | 1.5 | 12.23 | 11.25 | 120 | 230 | 480 | 2,100 |
| Gut lumen | 1.5 | - | 8.8 | - | 230 | - | 2,100 |
| Heart | 0.095 | 0.63 | 1.15 | 6 | 17 | 120 | 300 |
| Lungs | 0.12 | 0.74 | 2.1 | 17 | - | 120 | - |
| Spleen | 0.1 | 0.54 | 1.3 | 1 | - | 36 | 160 |
| Fat | - | - | 34.9 | - | - | - | 10,000 |
| Marrow | 0.6 | - | - | 47 | 135 | 120 | 1,400 |
| Bladder | - | - | 1.05 | - | - | - | - |
| Brain | - | - | - | - | - | - | 1,500 |
| Pancreas | - | - | 2.15 | - | - | 24 | - |
| Prostate | - | - | 6.4 | - | - | - | - |
| Thyroid | - | - | 0.85 | - | - | - | 20 |
| **Plasma flow (ml/min)** | | | | | | | |
| Plasma | 4.38 | 40.34 | 84.6 | 520 | 379 | 512 | 3,670 |
| Muscle | 0.5 | - | 22.4 | 155 | 50 | 138 | 420 |
| Kidney | 0.8 | 5.27 | 12.8 | 80 | 74 | 90 | 700 |
| Liver | 1.1 | 6.5 | 4.7 | 177 | 92 | 60 | 800 |
| Gut | 0.9 | 5.3 | 14.6 | 111 | 75 | 81.5 | 700 |
| Heart | 0.28 | 0.14 | 1.6 | 16 | 65 | 60 | 150 |
| Lungs | 4.38 | 28.4 | 2.25 | 520 | - | 512 | - |

| Parameter | Mouse | Hamster | Rat | Rabbit | Monkey | Dog | Human |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Spleen | 0.05 | 0.25 | 0.95 | 9 | - | 13.5 | 240 |
| Fat | - | - | 3.6 | - | - | - | 200 |
| Marrow | 0.17 | - | - | 11 | 23 | 20 | 120 |
| Bladder | - | - | 1.0 | - | - | - | - |
| Brain | - | - | 0.95 | - | - | - | 380 |
| Pancreas | - | - | 1.1 | - | - | 21.3 | - |
| Prostate | - | - | 0.5 | - | - | - | - |
| Thyroid | - | - | 0.8 | - | - | - | 20 |

**Table R.7.12—17 A number of physiological parameters for different species**

compiled by Nau and Scott (1987)

| Parameter | Mouse | Rat | Guinea pig | Rabbit | Dog | Monkey | Human |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bile flow (ml/kg per day) | 100 | 90 | 230 | 120 | 12 | 25 | 5 |
| Urine flow (ml/kg per day) | 50 | 200 | | 60 | 30 | 75 | 20 |
| Cardiac output (ml/min per kg) | 300 | 200 | | 150 | 100 | 80-300 | 60-100 |
| Hepatic blood flow (l/min) | 0.003 | 0.017 | 0.021 | 0.12 | 0.68 | 0.25 | 1.8 |
| Hepatic blood flow (ml/min per kg) | 120 | 100 | | 50 | 25 | 25 | 25-30 |
| Liver weight (% of body weight) | 5.1 | 4.0 | 4.6 | 4.8 | 2.9 | 3.3 | 2.4 |
| Renal blood flow (ml/min per kg) | 30 | | | | 22 | 25 | 17 |
| Glomerular filtration (ml/min per kg) | 5 | | | | 3.2 | 3 | 1.3 |

Gad and Chengelis (1992) have summarised a number of physiological parameters for different species. The most important data of the most common laboratory test species are summarised below.

**Table R.7.12—18 A number of physiological parameters for different species**

(Blaauboer *et al*., 1996)

| | Rat | Mouse | Guinea Pig | Rabbit | Dog (Beagle) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Blood volume whole blood (ml/kg) | 57.5 - 69.9 | 78 | 75 | 45 - 70 | - |
| Blood volume Plasma (ml/kg) | 36.3 - 45.3 | 45 | 30.6 - 38.2 | - | - |
| Respiratory frequency $min^{-1}$ | 66 - 114 | 84 - 230 | 69 - 160 | 35 - 65 | 10 - 30[1] |
| tidal volume (ml) | 0.6 - 1.25 | 0.09 - 0.38 | 1.8 | 4 - 6 | 18 - 35[1] |
| Urine volume (ml/kg/24 h) | 55 | | | 20 - 350 | - |
| Urine pH | 7.3 - 8.5 | - | - | 8.2 | - |

[1)] In Beagles of 6.8 to 11.5 kg bw

## Appendix R.7.12—2 Prediction of toxicokinetics integrating information generated *in silico* and *in vitro*

The methods presented in this attachment are for the purpose to demonstrate the future use of *in silico* and/or *in vitro* methods in toxicokinetics. Although promising in the area of pharmaceutical research, most of the examples given have not been fully validated for the purpose of use outside this area. Further development and validation of these approaches are ongoing.

Techniques for the prediction of pharmacokinetics in animals or in man have been used for many years in the pharmaceutical industry, at various stages of research and development. A considerable amount of work has been dedicated to developing tools to predict absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion of drug candidates. The objective in drug development is to eliminate as early as possible candidate drugs predicted to have undesirable characteristics, such as being poorly absorbed by the intended route of administration, being metabolised via undesirable pathways, being eliminated too rapidly or too slowly. These predictions are done at various stages of drug development, using all available evidence and generating additional meaningful information from simple experiments. Although these techniques were developed in the particular context of drug development, there is no reason a priori not to use them for the safety assessment of chemicals. The toxicokinetic information generated can be used in particular to select substances to be further developed, to direct further testing and to assist experimental design, thus saving experimental efforts in terms of cost, time and animal use.

In practice, the prediction of the toxicokinetic behaviour of a chemical rests upon the use of appropriate models, essentially physiologically-based compartmental pharmacokinetic models, coupled to the generation of estimates for the relevant model parameters. *In silico* models or *in vitro* techniques to estimate parameter values used to predict absorption, metabolic clearance, distribution and excretion have been developed. Blaauboer *et al.*(1996; 2002) reviewed the techniques involved in toxicokinetic prediction using physiologically-based kinetic models. Also, a general discussion on the *in silico* methods used to predict ADME is provided by Boobis *et al.* (2002).

As for all predictions using models, these approaches must be considered together with the accompanying uncertainty of the predictions made, which have to be balanced against the objective of the prediction. Experimental validation *in vivo* of the predictions made and refinement of the models used is usually necessary (Parrott *et al.*, 2005; US EPA, 2007), and has to be carefully planned on a case by case basis. A strategy for integrating predicted and experimental kinetic information generated routinely during drug development is described by Theil *et al.* (2003), by Parrot *et al.* (2005), and by Jones *et al.* (2006). The principles presented by these authors are relevant to kinetics simulation and prediction in the field of chemical safety, since they allow the integration of the available kinetic or kinetically-relevant information from the very beginning of the risk assessment process. In the most initial stages of development, simulations can be generated using only physico-chemical characteristics, which themselves can be derived from *in silico* models (QSARs/ QSPRs).

The strategy proposed by Jones *et al.* (2006), in the compound set investigated, led to reasonably accurate prediction of pharmacokinetics in man for approximately 70% of the compounds. According to the authors, *these successful predictions were achieved mainly for compounds that were cleared by hepatic metabolism or renal excretion, and whose absorption and distribution were governed by passive processes. Significant mis-predictions were achieved when other elimination processes (e.g. biliary elimination) or active processes were involved or when the assumptions of flow limited distribution and well mixed compartments were not valid.*

In addition to the parent compound, in a number of cases metabolites contribute significantly or even predominantly, to the overall exposure-response relationship. In such cases, the quantitative *ex vivo* prediction of metabolite kinetics after exposure to the parent compound remains difficult. A separate study program of the relevant metabolites may then become necessary.

## Models used to predict absorption / bioavailability

<u>Gastro intestinal absorption models</u>

In order to be absorbed from the GI tract, substances have to be present in solution in the GI fluids, and from there have to cross the GI wall to reach the lymph or the venous portal blood. Key determinants of gastrointestinal absorption are therefore:

- release into solution from solid forms or particles (dissolution),
- solubility in the GI fluids, and
- permeability across the GI wall into the circulatory system.

Dokoumetzidis *et al.* (2005) distinguish two major approaches in the modelling of the drug absorption processes involved in the complex milieu of the GI tract.

The first approach is the simplified description of the observed profiles, using simple differential or algebraic equations. On this basis, a simple classification for pharmaceutical substances, the Biopharmaceutics Classification System (BCS), resting on solubility and intestinal permeability considerations, has been developed by Amidon *et al.* (1995). The BCS divides pharmaceutical substances into 4 classes according to their high or low solubility and to their high or low intestinal permeability, and has been incorporated into FDA guidance (2000).

The second approach tries to build models incorporating in more detail the complexity of the processes taking place in the intestinal lumen, using either compartmental analysis, i.e. systems of several differential equations (Agoram *et al.*, 2001; Yu *et al.*, 1996; Yu and Amidon, 1999), dispersion systems with partial differential equations (Ni *et al.*, 1980; Willmann *et al.*, 2003 and 2004), or Monte Carlo simulations (Kalampokis *et al.*, 1999). Some of these approaches have been incorporated into commercial computer software (Coecke *et al.*, 2006; Parrott and Lave, 2002), or are used by contract research organisations to generate predictions for their customers. An attractive feature of these models is their ability to generate a prediction of extent and often rate of absorption in data-poor situations, i.e. at the initial stage of data generation, using a simple set of parameters describing ionisation, solubility and permeability.

Factors potentially complicating the prediction of absorption are:

- intra luminal phenomena such as degradation or metabolism, matrix effects, chemical speciation, which may reduce the amount available for absorption, or generate metabolites which have to be considered in terms of toxicological and toxicokinetic properties;
- intestinal wall metabolism, which may have similar consequences;
- intestinal transporters (efflux pumps), which may decrease the permeability of the GI wall to the substance.

These factors have to be considered and incorporated into absorption / bioavailability models on a case-by-case basis.

*Parameter estimation for GI absorption models*

A discussion on the *in vitro* approaches used to generate absorption parameters can be found in Pelkonen *et al.* (2001).

Where relevant, i.e. when dissolution from solid particles may be the limiting factor for GI absorption, estimates for the dissolution rate parameters can be obtained experimentally *in vitro* or using a QSAR/ QSPR approach (e.g. Zhao *et al.*, 2002). Potentially rate-limiting steps preceding dissolution (e.g. disaggregation of larger solid forms) are usually studied in to a greater extent in the pharmaceutical field than in chemical safety assessment, because they can be manipulated via formulation techniques. However, pre-dissolution events may also have a determining role in the absorption of chemicals, by influencing either its rate or its extent.

Solubility parameters can be estimated experimentally or using QSAR/ QSPR models. A discussion of *in silico* models can be found in Stenberg *et al.* (2002).

Permeability estimates can be obtained via:

- *in silico* models (QSAR/ QSPRs);
- *in vitro* permeation studies across lipid membranes (e.g. PAMPA) or across a monolayer of cultured epithelial cells (e.g. CaCO-2 cells, MDCK cells);
- *in vitro* permeation studies using excised human or animal intestinal tissues;
- *in vivo* intestinal perfusion experiments, in animals or in humans.

Discussion of the various *in silico* and *in vitro* methods to estimate intestinal permeability can be found in Stenberg *et al.* (2002), Artursson *et al.* (2001), Tavelin *et al.* (2002), Matsson *et al.* (2005).

<u>Dermal route</u>

Percutaneous absorption through intact skin is highly dependent on the physico-chemical properties of chemicals, and in particular of molecular weight and lipophilicity. Molecules above a certain molecular weight are unlikely to cross intact skin, and substances which are either too lipophilic or too hydrophilic have a low skin penetration. Cut off points at a molecular weight of 500 and log P values below -1 or above 4 have been used to set a conservative default absorption factor at 10 % cutaneous absorption (EC, 2007).

However, it should be emphasised that this is a default factor, and by no means a quantitative estimate of cutaneous absorption.

Predictive models have been developed to try and estimate the extent of dermal absorption from physico-chemical properties (Cleek and Bunge, 1993). An *in vitro* method has been developed and validated and is described in EU B.45[38] or OECD TG 428.

The EU founded project on the Evaluation and Prediction of Dermal Absorption of Toxic Chemicals (EDETOX) established a large critically evaluated database with *in vivo* and *in vitro* data on dermal absorption / penetration of chemicals. The data were used to evaluate existing QSARs and to develop new models including a mechanistically-based mathematical model, a simple membrane model and a diffusion model of percutaneous absorption kinetics. A guidance document was developed for conduct of *in vitro* studies of dermal absorption/penetration. More information on the database, model and guidance documents can be found at http://www.ncl.ac.uk/edetox/ .

Inhalation route

Together with physiological values (ventilation flow, blood flow), the key parameter needed to predict the passage into blood of inhaled volatile compounds is the blood/air partition coefficient (Blaauboer *et al.*, 1996; Reddy *et al.*, 2005). References to methods for estimating or measuring blood/air partition coefficients are indicated below together with the discussion of other partition coefficients. The parameters are included in physiologically-based models predicting the concentrations in the venous pulmonary blood, assimilated to the systemic arterial blood, and in the exhaled air.

Other factors may influence absorption by the inhalation route. For example, water solubility determines solubility in the mucus layer, which may be a limiting factor, and the dimensions of the particles are a key factor for the absorption of particulate matter.

Other routes

Other routes, e.g. via the oral, nasal or ocular mucosa, may have to be considered in specific cases.

### Systemic bioavailability and first-pass considerations

After oral exposure, systemic bioavailability is the result of the cumulated effects of the absorption process and of the possible extraction by the liver from the portal blood of part of the absorbed dose, or first-pass effect. The first-pass effect can be incorporated into a suitably defined physiologically-based toxicokinetic model. Using estimates of both the absorption rate and of the intrinsic hepatic clearance, the systemic bioavailability of the substance can then be predicted. Metabolism at the port of entry can also occur within the gut wall, and this can be included in the kinetic models. At the model validation stage, however, it is often difficult to differentiate gut wall metabolism from liver metabolism *in vivo*.

[38] See Test Methods Regulation (Council Regulation (EC) No 440/2008).

Similarly, metabolism may occur in the epidermis or dermis. The current skin absorption test (EU B.45[39], OECD TG 428) does not take cutaneous metabolism into account. Specific studies may be necessary to quantify skin metabolism and bioavailability by dermal route.

Pulmonary metabolism of some substances exist (Borlak *et al.*, 2005), but few substances are reported to undergo a quantitatively important pulmonary first-pass effect.

## Models to predict Distribution

Blood binding

*Blood cell partitioning*

Partitioning of compounds into blood cells, and in particular red blood cells (RBC), is an important parameter to consider in kinetic modelling (Hinderling, 1997).

Partitioning into leukocytes or even platelets may have to be considered in rare cases. A significant influence of such partitioning has been described for some drugs, e.g. chloroquine (Hinderling, 1997).

Partitioning into blood cells can be measured experimentally *in vitro* (Hinderling, 1997), or estimated using a QSAR/ QSPR approach based on physico-chemical properties.

*Plasma protein binding*

Plasma protein binding is an important parameter to be included in physiologically-based kinetic models, because plasma protein binding can influence dramatically distribution, metabolism and elimination. Plasma binding with high affinity will often restrict distribution, metabolism and elimination. However, this is by no means systematic, because the overall kinetics is a function of the interplay of all processes involved. Distribution will depend on the balance between affinity for plasma components and for tissues, and the elimination of compounds having a very high intrinsic clearance (i.e. very effective elimination mechanisms) will be hastened by high plasma protein binding, which causes more compound to be available for clearance in the blood compartment.

Plasma protein binding is measured using *in vitro* techniques, using either plasma or solutions of specific proteins of known concentrations. The most standard techniques are equilibrium dialysis and ultrafiltration, but numerous other techniques have been described. More detailed information and references are given by Zini (1991) and Roberts (2001). QSAR/ QSPR methods have also been used to predict of protein binding affinity (e.g. Colmenarejo, 2003).

Tissue distribution

*Blood flow-limited distribution.*

In physiologically-based kinetic models, the most common model to describe distribution between blood and tissue is blood flow-limited distribution, i.e. the equilibrium between

[39] See Test Methods Regulation (Council Regulation (EC) No 440/2008).

tissue and blood is reached within the transit time of blood through the tissue. In this model, the key parameters are the partition coefficients. Partition coefficients express the relative affinity of the compound for the various tissues, relative to a reference fluid which may be the blood, the plasma or the plasma water. Tissue/ blood, tissue/ plasma, and tissue/ plasma water partition coefficients are inter-related via plasma protein binding and blood cell partitioning. Partition coefficients are integrated in the differential equations predicting blood and tissue concentrations, or in equations of models predicting globally the steady-state volume of distribution of the compound (Poulin and Theil, 2002).

*Permeability-limited distribution*

In some cases however, due to a low permeability of the surface of exchange between blood and a particular tissue (e.g. blood-brain barrier, placental barrier), the equilibrium between blood and tissue cannot be reached within the transit time of blood through the tissue, and a correction factor must be introduced in the differential equation describing distribution to that tissue. One common, simple way of doing this is to use the permeability area cross product. Thus, distribution is in this case determined by the arterial concentration and the three factors blood flow (physiological parameter), permeability per unit of surface (compound-specific parameter), and surface of exchange (physiological parameter; see Reddy *et al.*, 2005). Permeability-limited distribution makes prediction more difficult due to the lack of well-recognised, easy to use and robust models to quantify the necessary parameters.

<u>Determination of partition coefficients</u>

Experimental methods available to obtain blood/ air, tissue/ air and blood/ tissue partition coefficients are discussed by Krishnan and Andersen (2001). *In vitro* methods include vial equilibration (for volatile compounds), equilibrium dialysis and ultrafiltration. However, these methods require ex-vivo biological material, are time-consuming and often require the use of radiolabelled compound (Blaauboer, 2002).

Models to calculate predicted tissue/blood, tissue/plasma or tissue/plasma water partition coefficients from simple physico-chemical properties have been developed (Poulin and Theil, 2002; Rodgers *et al*., 2005 and 2006). The necessary compound-specific input is limited to knowledge of the chemical structure and functionalities (e.g. neutral, acid, base, zwitterionic), the pKa or pKas where applicable, and the octanol-water partition coefficient at pH 7.4. Additional necessary parameters describe the tissue volumes and tissue lipid composition. Tissue volumes are usually available or can be estimated from the literature. There are less available direct data on tissue composition in terms of critical binding constituents, particularly in man, although some reasonable estimates can be made from the existing information.

QSAR/ QSPR models developed for the estimation of blood/air and tissue/blood partition coefficients have also been reported (Blaauboer, 2002).

## Prediction of metabolism

<u>Numerous aspects of metabolism can and often should be explored using *in vitro* methods (Pelkonen *et al.*, 2005).</u>

Major objectives of the study of metabolism using *in vitro* methods are**:**

- determining the susceptibility of a chemical to metabolism (its metabolic stability);
- identifying its kinetically and toxicologically relevant metabolites in the species of interest (including man);
- obtaining a quantitative global estimate of its metabolic clearance, to be included in toxicokinetic models.

Additional possible objectives are:

- characterising enzyme kinetics of the principal metabolic reactions, which can also be used for scaling up and predicting *in vivo* kinetics of a new chemical;
- estimating the ability of the chemical to act as a substrate for the different enzymes involved in biotransformation;
- exploring inter-species differences in metabolism;
- evaluating potential variability in metabolism in a given species, man in particular;
- identifying whether the chemical and/or its metabolite can act as an enzyme inducer;
- identifying whether the chemical and/or its metabolite can act as an enzyme inhibitor, and the type of inhibition involved.

Most methods have been developed in the pharmaceutical field, and focused on the cytochrome P isoforms (CYP), because these are the major enzymes involved in drug metabolism. The extension of existing methods to a wider chemical space, and to other enzymatic systems, such as other oxidation pathways, acetylation, hydrolysis, needs to be undertaken with caution, and methods are bound to evolve in this context. In any case, the study of metabolism *in vitro* is often an important step in the integrated risk assessment of chemicals. In many cases *in vitro* methods are the only option to study metabolism, due to the impracticality or sheer impossibility of *in vivo* studies.

Relative role of different organs in metabolism

Quantitatively, the most important organ for metabolism is by far the liver, although metabolism by other organs can be important quantitatively or qualitatively. The nature of the chemical and the route of administration must be taken into account when assessing which organs are most relevant in terms of metabolism (Coecke *et al.*, 2006).

*In vitro* methods to study metabolism

*In vitro* methods to explore the metabolism, and particularly the hepatic metabolism of a substance are thoroughly discussed by Pelkonen *et al.* (2005) and Coecke *et al.* (2006). Depending on the objective, the different metabolising materials used are microsomes and microsomal fractions, recombinant DNA-expressed individual CYP enzymes, Immortalised cell lines, primary hepatocytes in culture or in suspension, liver slices.

Quantitative estimation of the intrinsic clearance of a substance.

One of the most important pieces of information in order to simulate the toxicokinetics of a substance is the intrinsic metabolic clearance *in vivo*, which has to be incorporated into the kinetic models. Intrinsic clearance can be estimated using quantitative *in vitro* systems (purified enzymes, microsomes, hepatocytes) and extrapolating the results to the *in vivo* situation.

If only a single or a few concentrations are tested, the intrinsic clearance can only be expressed as a single first-order elimination parameter, ignoring possible saturation phenomena. The latter can only be detected by testing a large enough concentration range in an appropriately chosen system. For instance, if a Michaelis and Menten model is applicable, both the $V_{max}$ and the Km of the system may be thus determined.

Of particular importance are:

- the quality and characterisation of the metabolising system itself;
- the quality and characterisation of the experimental conditions, in particular as regards the system's capacity for binding the substances under study (Blanchard *et al.*, 2005) but obviously also as regards other parameters such as temperature, pH, etc.
- The use of appropriate scaling factors to extrapolate to predicted clearance values *in vivo*.

Scaling factors must be chosen taking into account the *in vitro* system utilised. They incorporate in particular information on the *in vitro* concentration of chemical available to the metabolising system (unbound), the nature and amount of the enzymes present in the *in vitro* system, the corresponding amount of enzymes in hepatocytes *in vivo*, and the overall mass of active enzyme in the complete liver *in vivo*. Discussions on the appropriate scaling procedures and factors to be taken into account have been developed by Houston and Carlile (1997), Inoue *et al.* (2006), Shiran *et al.* (2006), Howgate *et al.* (2006), Johnson *et al.* (2005), Proctor *et al.* (2004).

*In vitro* screening for Metabolic interactions

*In vitro* screening procedures for the prediction of metabolic interactions have been developed for pharmaceuticals. They involve testing an *in vitro* metabolising system for a number of well characterised compounds, with and without the new substance (Blanchard *et al.*, 2004; Turpeinen *et al.*, 2005).

Prediction of excretion

The most common major routes of excretion are renal excretion, biliary excretion and, for volatile compounds, excretion via expired air.

There is at present no *in vitro* model to reliably predict biliary or renal excretion parameters. Determining factors include molecular weight, lipophilicity, ionisation, binding to blood components, and the role of active transporters. In the absence of specific a priori information, many kinetic models include non-metabolic clearance as a single first order rate excretion parameter.

Expired air (exhalation clearance)

Excretion into expired air is modelled using the blood/ air partition coefficient, as described in Appendix R.7.12—2 (Reddy *et al.*, 2005).

Biliary clearance

Current work on biliary excretion focuses largely on the role of transporters (e.g. Klaassen, 2002; Klaassen and Slitt, 2005). However, experimentally determined numerical values for parameters to include into modelling of active transport are largely missing, so that these mechanisms cannot yet be meaningfully included in kinetic models. Levine (1978), Rollins and Klaassen (1979) and Klaassen (1988) have reviewed classical information on the biliary excretion of xenobiotics. Information in man is still relatively scarce, given the anatomical and ethical difficulties of exploring biliary excretion directly in man. Compounds may be highly concentrated into the bile, up to a factor of 1000, and bile flow in man is relatively high, between 0.5 and 0.8 ml/min, so that considerable biliary clearance values of several hundred ml/min, can be achieved (Rowland and Tozer, 1989; Rowland *et al.*, 2004). It should be considered on a case-by-case basis whether biliary excretion and possible entero-hepatic recirculation should be included in the kinetic models used for prediction.

Renal clearance

In healthy individuals and in most pathological states, the renal clearance of xenobiotics is proportional to the global renal function, reflected in the glomerular filtration rate, which can be estimated *in vivo* by measuring or estimating the clearance of endogenous creatinine. Simple models for renal clearance consider only glomerular filtration of the unbound plasma fraction. However, this can lead to significant misprediction when active transport processes are involved. More sophisticated models have been described which include reabsorption and / or active secretion of xenobiotics (Brightman *et al.*, 2006; Katayama *et al.*, 1990; Komiya, 1986 and 1982), but there are insufficient input or reference data to both implement such models and evaluate satisfactorily their predictivity.

Kinetic modelling programs

A number of programs for toxicokinetics simulation or prediction are either available, or used by contract research companies to test their customer's compounds. A non-comprehensive list of such programs is given by Coecke *et al.*, (2006). Available physiologically-based modelling programs purpose-built for toxicokinetic prediction include (non-comprehensive list):

- SimCYP® (SimCYP Ltd, www.simcyp.com);
- PK-Sim® (Bayer Technology Services GmbH, www.bayertechnology.com);
- GastroPlus™ (Simulations Plus Inc, www.simulations-plus.com);
- Cloe PK® (Cyprotex Plc, www.cyprotex.com);
- Noraymet ADME™ (Noray Bioinformatics, SL, www.noraybio.com).

Numerous other simulation programs, either general-purpose or more specifically designed for biomathematical modelling, can be used to implement PBK models. A discussion on this subject and a non-comprehensive list can be found in Rowland *et al.* (2004).

# Appendix R.7.12—3 PBK Modelling and the Development of Assessment Factors

A simple but fictional example of the development of an assessment factor for interspecies differences using PBK modelling is presented. A fictional chemical, compound A, is a low molecular weight, volatile solvent, with potential central nervous system (CNS) depressant properties. Evidence for the latter comes from a number of controlled human volunteer studies where a battery of neurobehavioural tests were conducted during, and after, exposure by inhalation to compound A.

Compound A is metabolised *in vitro* by the phase I, mixed-function oxidase enzyme, cytochrome P450 2E1 (CYP2E1) by both rat and human hepatic microsomes. There are also some *in vivo* data in rats exposed by inhalation to compound A, with and without pre-treatment with diallyl sulphide, an inhibitor of CYP2E1, that are consistent with metabolism of compound A by this enzyme.

PBK models for the rat and standard human male or female for exposure by inhalation to compound A are built. The rat model was validated by simulating experimentally determined decreases in chamber concentrations of compound A following exposure of rats to a range of initial concentrations in a closed-recirculated atmosphere exposure chamber. The removal of chamber concentration of compound A over time is due to uptake by the rat and elimination, primarily by metabolism. The human PBK model was validated by simulating experimentally determined venous blood concentrations of compound A in male and female volunteers exposed by inhalation to a constant concentration of compound A in a controlled-atmosphere exposure chamber.

It is assumed that the following have been identified for the chemical: 1) the active moiety of the chemical, and 2) the relevant dose-metric (i.e., the appropriate form of the active moiety e.g., peak plasma concentration (Cmax), area-under-the-curve of parent chemical in venous blood (AUCB), average amount metabolised in target tissue per 24 hours (AMmet), peak rate of hepatic metabolism (AMPeakMet), etc). In this case, it is hypothesised that the peak plasma concentration Cmax of compound A is the most likely surrogate dose metric for CNS concentrations of compound A thought to cause a reversible CNS depressant effect. However, Cmax, is dependent upon the peak rate of hepatic metabolism (AMPeakMet). Therefore, the validated rat and human PBK models were run to simulate the exposure time and concentrations of the human study where the neurobehavioural tests did not detect any CNS depressant effects. The dose metric, AMPeakMet for the rat would be divided by the AMPeakMet for the human. This ratio would represent the magnitude of the difference between a specified rat strain and average human male or female. This value may then replace the default interspecies kinetic value since it is based on chemical-specific data. Therefore, the derivation of an appropriate assessment factor in setting a DNEL can be justified more readily using quantitative and mechanistic data.

## Appendix R.7.12—4 Dermal absorption percentage†

† Based on *in vivo* rat studies in combination with *in vitro* data and a proposal for a tiered approach to risk assessment (Benford *et al.*, 1999).

Estimation of dermal absorption percentage. If appropriate dermal penetration data are available for rats *in vivo* and for rat and human skin *in vitro*, the *in vivo* dermal absorption in rats may be adjusted in light of the relative absorption through rat and human skin *in vitro* under comparable conditions (see equation below and Figure R.7.12—4). The latter adjustment may be done because the permeability of human skin is often lower than that of animal skin (e.g., Howes *et al.*, 1996). A generally applicable correction factor for extrapolation to man can however not be derived, because the extent of overestimation appears to be dose, substance, and animal specific (ECETOC, 2003; Howes *et al.*, 1996; Bronaugh and Maibach, 1987). For the correction factor based on *in vitro* data, preferably maximum flux values should be used. Alternatively, the dermal absorption percentage (receptor medium plus skin dose) may be used. Because, by definition, the permeation constant (Kp in cm/hr) is established at infinite dose levels, the usefulness of the Kp for dermal risk assessment is limited.

$$\textit{in vivo}\text{ human absorption} = \frac{\textit{in vivo}\text{ animal absorption} \times \textit{in vitro}\text{ human absorption}}{\textit{in vitro}\text{ animal absorption}}$$

Similar adjustments can be made for differences between formulants (e.g. *in vivo* active substance in rat and *in vitro* rat data on formulants and active substance)

Tiered Risk Assessment. The establishment of a value for dermal absorption may be performed by use of a tiered approach from a worst case to a more refined estimate (see Figure R.7.12—4). If an initial assessment ends up with a risk, more refinement could be obtained in the next tier if more information is provided on the dermal absorption. In a first tier of risk assessment, a worst case value for dermal absorption of 100% could be used for external dermal exposure in case no relevant information is available (Benford *et al.*, 1999). An estimate of dermal absorption could be made by considering other relevant data on the substance (e.g., molecular weight, log $P_{ow}$ and oral absorption data) (second tier) or by considering experimental *in vitro* and *in vivo* dermal absorption data (third tier, see Section R.7.12.2.2). If at the end of the third tier still a risk is calculated, the risk assessment could be refined by means of actual exposure data (fourth tier) (Figure R.7.12—4). This approach provides a tool for risk assessment, and in general it errs on the safe side.

**Figure R.7.12—4 Overview of the possible use of *in vitro* and *in vivo* data for setting the dermal absorption percentage.**

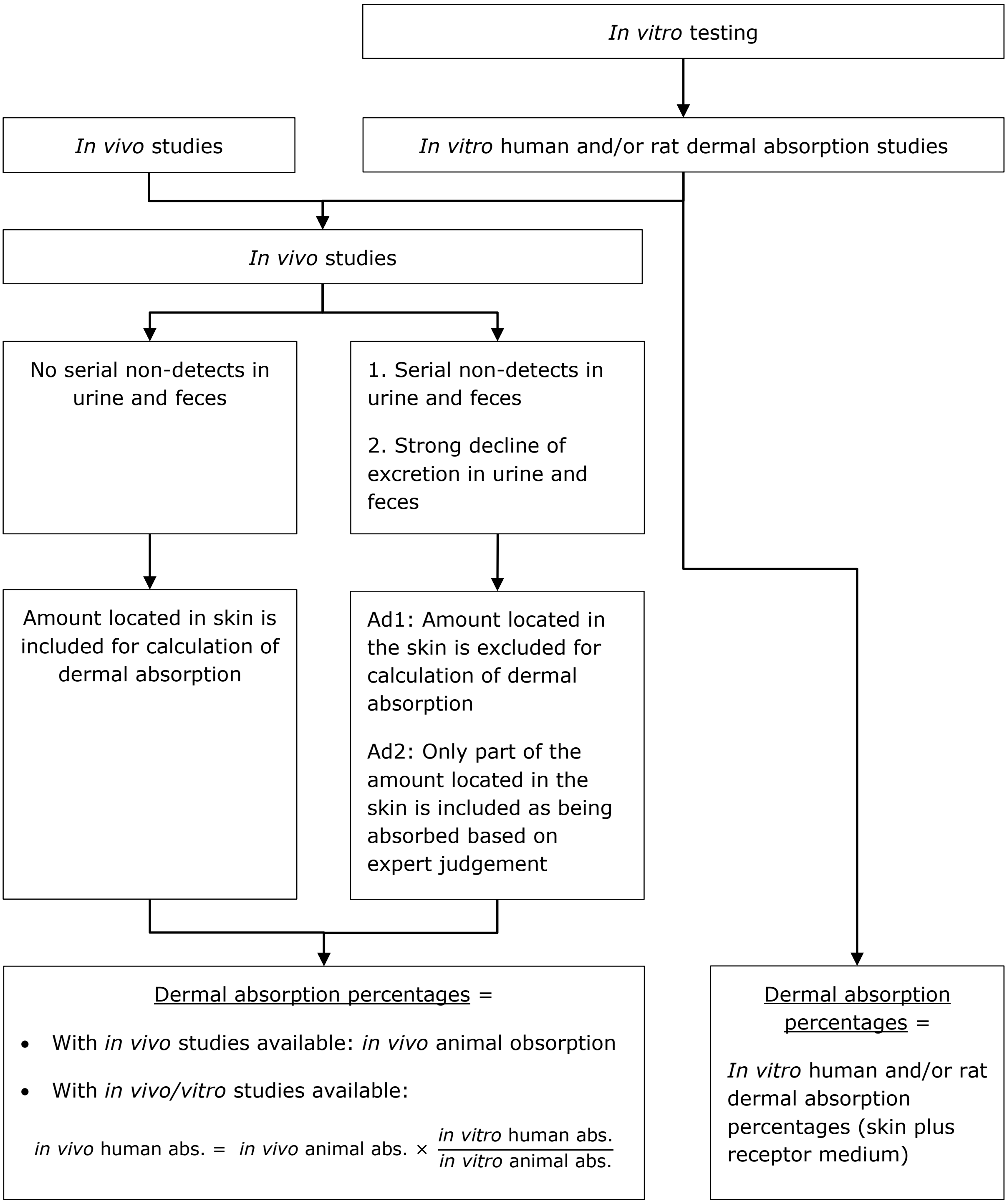
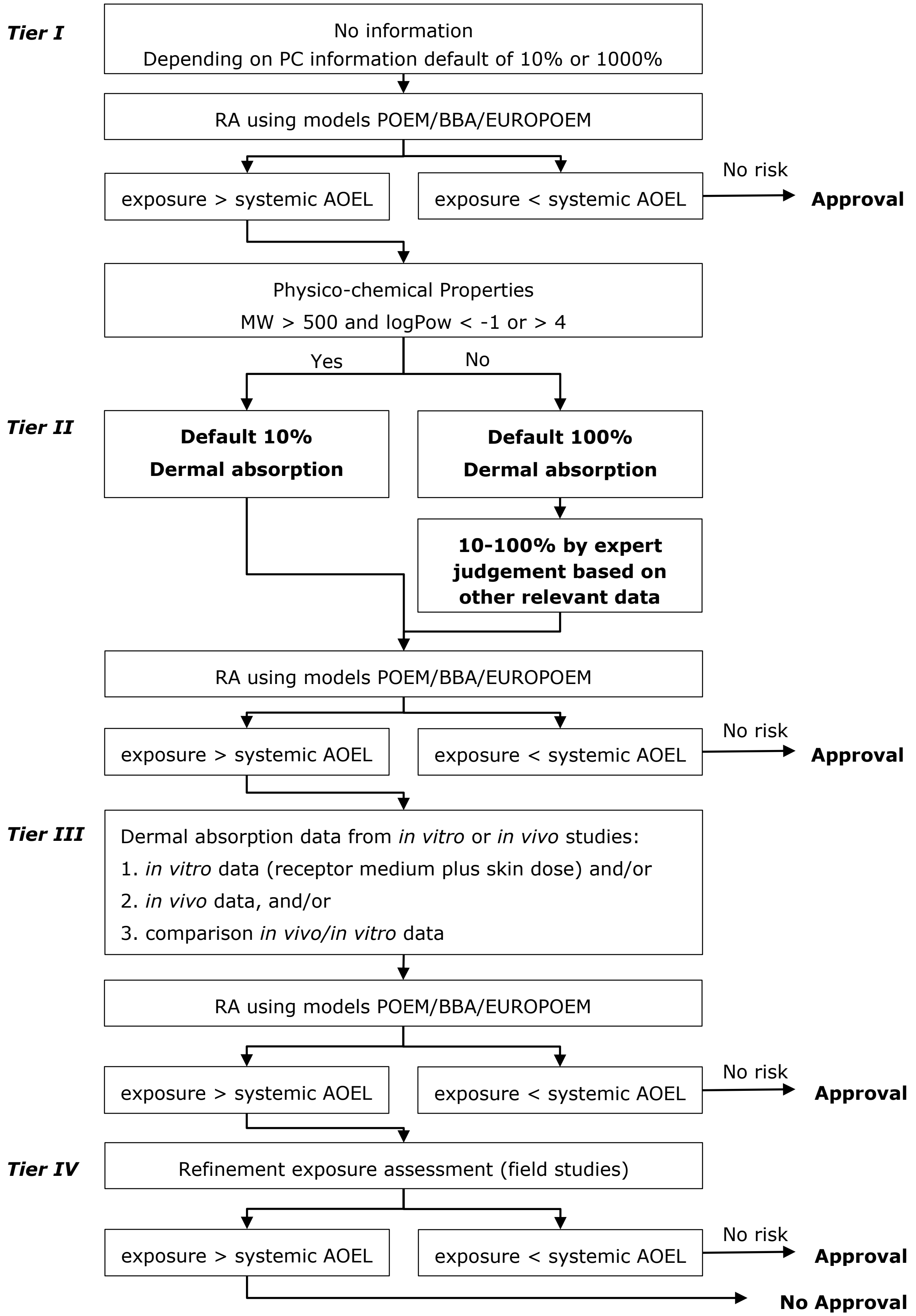


**Figure R.7.12—5 Dermal absorption in risk assessment for operator exposure; a tiered approach**



### R.7.12.3 References for guidance on toxicokinetics

ACGIH (2002). TLVs and BEIs Threshold Limit Values for Chemical Substances and Physical Agents. Cincinnati, USA.

Agoram,B., Woltosz,W.S., and Bolger,M.B. (2001) Predicting the impact of physiological and biochemical processes on oral drug bioavailability. *Adv.Drug Deliv.Rev.*, **50 Suppl 1**, S41-S67.

Andersen,M.E. (1995) Development of physiologically based pharmacokinetic and physiologically based pharmacodynamic models for applications in toxicology and risk assessment. *Toxicol Lett.*, **79**, 35-44.

Amidon,G.L., Lennernas,H., Shah,V.P., and Crison,J.R. (1995) A theoretical basis for a biopharmaceutic drug classification: the correlation of *in vitro* drug product dissolution and *in vivo* bioavailability. *Pharm.Res.*, **12**, 413-420.

Arms, A. D. and Travis, C. C.(1988) Reference Physiological Parameters in Pharmacokinetics modeling. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

Aungst,B. and Shen,D.D. (1986) Gastrointestinal absorption of toxic agents. In Rozman,K.K. and Hanninen,O. (eds.) *Gastrointestinal Toxicology*. Elsevier, New York.

Artursson,P., Palm,K., and Luthman,K. (2001) Caco-2 monolayers in experimental and theoretical predictions of drug transport. *Adv.Drug Deliv.Rev.*, **46**, 27-43.

Bachmann,K. (1996) Scaling basic toxicokinetic parameters from rat to man. Environmental Health Perspectives,400-407.

Balant,L.P. and Gex-Fabry,M. (1990) Physiological pharmacokinetic modelling. *Xenobiotica*, **20**, 1241-1257.

Benford,D.J., Cocker,J., Sartorelli,P., Schneider,T., van,H.J., and Firth,J.G. (1999) Dermal route in systemic exposure. *Scand.J Work Environ.Health*, **25**, 511-520.

Blaauboer,B.J., Bayliss,M.K., Castell,J.V., Evelo,C.T.A., Frazier,J.M., Groen,K., Gulden,M., Guillouzo,A., Hissink,A.M., Houston,J.B., Johanson,G., deJongh,J., Kedderis,G.L., Reinhardt,C.A., van de Sandt,J.J., and Semino,G. (1996) The use of biokinetics and *in vitro* methods in toxicological risk evaluation. *ATLA*, **24**, 473-497.

Blaauboer,B.J. (2002) The necessity of biokinetic information in the interpretation of *in vitro* toxicity data. *Altern.Lab Anim*, **30 Suppl 2**, 85-91.

Blanchard,N., Richert,L., Coassolo,P., and Lave,T. (2004) Qualitative and quantitative assessment of drug-drug interaction potential in man, based on Ki, IC50 and inhibitor concentration. *Curr.Drug Metab*, **5**, 147-156.

Blanchard,N., Alexandre,E., Abadie,C., Lave,T., Heyd,B., Mantion,G., Jaeck,D., Richert,L., and Coassolo,P. (2005) Comparison of clearance predictions using primary cultures and suspensions of human hepatocytes. *Xenobiotica*, **35**, 1-15.

Boobis,A., Gundert-Remy,U., Kremers,P., Macheras,P., and Pelkonen,O. (2002) *In silico* prediction of ADME and pharmacokinetics. Report of an expert meeting organised by COST B15. *Eur.J.Pharm.Sci.*, **17**, 183-193.

Borlak,J., Blickwede,M., Hansen,T., Koch,W., Walles,M., and Levsen,K. (2005) Metabolism of verapamil in cultures of rat alveolar epithelial cells and pharmacokinetics after administration by intravenous and inhalation routes. *Drug Metab Dispos.*, **33**, 1108-1114.

Brightman,F.A., Leahy,D.E., Searle,G.E., and Thomas,S. (2006) Application of a generic physiologically based pharmacokinetic model to the estimation of xenobiotic levels in rat plasma. *Drug Metab Dispos.*, **34**, 84-93.

Brightman,F.A., Leahy,D.E., Searle,G.E., and Thomas,S. (2006) Application of a generic physiologically based pharmacokinetic model to the estimation of xenobiotic levels in human plasma. *Drug Metab Dispos.*, **34**, 94-101.

Bronaugh,R.L. and Maibach,H.I. (1987) *In vitro* percutaneous absorption. In Marzulli,F.N. and Maibach,H.I. (eds.) *Dermatotoxicology*. Hemishere Publishing, Washington DC, pp 121-34.

Brown,R.P., Delp,M.D., Lindstedt,S.L., Rhomberg,L.R., and Beliles,R.P. (1997) Physiological parameter values for physiologically based pharmacokinetic models. *Toxicol Ind Health*, **13**, 407-484.

Byczkowski,J.Z. and Lipscomb,J.C. (2001) Physiologically based pharmacokinetic modeling of the lactational transfer of methylmercury. *Risk Anal.*, **21**, 869-882.

Cleek,R.L. and Bunge,A.L. (1993) A new method for estimating dermal absorption from chemical exposure. 1. General approach. *Pharm.Res.*, **10**, 497-506.

Clewell,H.J., III and Andersen,M.E. (1996) Use of physiologically based pharmacokinetic modeling to investigate individual versus population risk. *Toxicology*, **111**, 315-329.

Coecke,S., Ahr,H., Blaauboer,B.J., Bremer,S., Casati,S., Castell,J., Combes,R., Corvi,R., Crespi,C.L., Cunningham,M.L., Elaut,G., Eletti,B., Freidig,A., Gennari,A., Ghersi-Egea,J.F., Guillouzo,A., Hartung,T., Hoet,P., Ingelman-Sundberg,M., Munn,S., Janssens,W., Ladstetter,B., Leahy,D., Long,A., Meneguz,A., Monshouwer,M., Morath,S., Nagelkerke,F., Pelkonen,O., Ponti,J., Prieto,P., Richert,L., Sabbioni,E., Schaack,B., Steiling,W., Testai,E., Vericat,J.A., and Worth,A. (2006) Metabolism: a bottleneck in *in vitro* toxicological test development. The report and recommendations of ECVAM workshop 54. *Altern.Lab Anim*, **34**, 49-84.

Colmenarejo,G. (2003) *In silico* prediction of drug-binding strengths to human serum albumin. *Med.Res.Rev.*, **23**, 275-301.

Corley,R.A., Mast,T.J., Carney,E.W., Rogers,J.M., and Daston,G.P. (2003) Evaluation of physiologically based models of pregnancy and lactation for their application in children's health risk assessments. *Crit Rev.Toxicol*, **33**, 137-211.

Csanady,G.A. and Filser,J.G. (2001) The relevance of physical activity for the kinetics of inhaled gaseous substances. *Arch Toxicol*, **74**, 663-672.

Cuddihy,R.G. and Yeh,H.C. (1988) In Mohr,V. (ed.) Inhalation Toxicology. The Design and Interpretation of inhalation Studies and their use in risk assessment. Springer Verlag, New York.

Davidson,I.W., Parker,J.C., and Beliles,R.P. (1986) Biological basis for extrapolation across mammalian species. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol.*, **6**, 211-237.

Davies,B. and Morris,T. (1993) Physiological parameters in laboratory animals and humans. *Pharm.Res.*, **10**, 1093-1095.

Dedrick,R.L. and Bischoff,K.B. (1980) Species similarities in pharmacokinetics 6. *Fed.Proc.*, **39**, 54-59.

De Heer, C., Wilschut, A., Stevenson, H., and Hakkert, B. C. Guidance document on the estimation of dermal absorption according to a tiered approach: an update. V98.1237. 1999. Zeist, NL, TNO.

De Sesso,J.M. (1993) The relevance to humans in animal models for inhalation studies of cancer in the nose and upper airways. *Quality Assurance: Good practice Regulation and Law*, **2**, 213-231.

De Zwart, L. L., Rompelberg, C. J. M., Snipes, A. J. A. M., Welink, J., and van Engelen, J. G. M. Anatomical and Physiological differences between various Species used in Studies on the Pharmacokinetics and Toxicology of Xenobiotics. 6233860010. 1999. Bilthoven, NL, RIVM.

Dokoumetzidis,A., Kosmidis,K., Argyrakis,P., and Macheras,P. (2005) Modeling and Monte Carlo simulations in oral drug absorption. *Basic Clin.Pharmacol.Toxicol*, **96**, 200-205.

D'Souza, R. W. Modelling oral bioavailability: Implication for risk assessment. Gerrity, T. R. and Henry, C. J. 1990. New York, Elsevier. Principles of route-to-route extrapolation for risk assessment - proceedings of the workshop on principles of route-to-route extrapolation for risk assessment.

EC. Draft Guidance Document on Dermal Absorption. 2007. European Commission, Heath & Consumer Protection Directorate-General.

ECETOC. Percutaneous Absorption. Monograph 20. 1993. Brussels, ECETOC.

ECETOC. Toxicological Modes of Action: Relevance for Human Risk Assessment. 99. 2006. Brussels, ECETOC. Technical Report.

Elkins,H.B. (1954) Analyses of biological materials as indices of exposure to organic solvents. AMA Arch Ind Hyg Occup Med.,212-222.

Faqi,A.S., Dalsenter,P.R., Merker,H.J., and Chahoud,I. (1998) Reproductive toxicity and tissue concentrations of low doses of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin in male offspring rats exposed throughout pregnancy and lactation. *Toxicol Appl.Pharmacol.*, **150**, 383-392.

FDA (2000). Guidance for Industry: Waiver of *in vivo* bioavailability and bioequivalence studies for immediate release solid oral dosage forms based on a biopharmaceutics classification system. Washington DC, USA, CDER/FDA.

Fitzpatrick,D., Corish,J., and Hayes,B. (2004) Modelling skin permeability in risk assessment--the future. *Chemosphere*, **55**, 1309-1314.

Fiserova-Bergerova,V. and Hugues,H.C. (1983) Species differences on bioavailability of inhaled vapors and gases. In Fiserova-Bergerova,F. (ed.) *Modeling of Inhalation Exposure to Vapors: Uptake, Distribution, and Elimination*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida, pp 97-106.

Flynn,G.L. (1985) Mechanism of percutaneous absorption from physico-chemical evidence. In Bronough,R.L. and Maibach,H.I. (eds.) *Percutaneous Absorption, Mechanisms-Methodology-Drug Delivery*. Marcel Dekker Inc., New York.

Freireich,E.J., Gehan,E.A., Rall,D.P., Schmidt,L.H., and Skipper,H.E. (1966) Quantitative comparison of toxicity of anticancer agents in mouse, rat, hamster, dog, monkey, and man. *Cancer Chemother.Rep.*, **50**, 219-244.

Gad,S.C. and Chengelis,C.P. (1992) *Animal models in Toxicology*. Marcel Dekker Inc, New York.

Gargas,M.L., Tyler,T.R., Sweeney,L.M., Corley,R.A., Weitz,K.K., Mast,T.J., Paustenbach,D.J., and Hays,S.M. (2000) A toxicokinetic study of inhaled ethylene glycol ethyl ether acetate and validation of a physiologically based pharmacokinetic model for rat and human. *Toxicol Appl.Pharmacol.*, **165**, 63-73.

Gerlowski,L.E. and Jain,R.K. (1983) Physiologically based pharmacokinetic modeling: principles and applications. *J.Pharm.Sci.*, **72**, 1103-1127.

Gibaldi,M. (1982) *Pharmakokinetics*. New York.

Gueorguieva,I., Nestorov,I.A., and Rowland,M. (2006) Reducing whole body physiologically based pharmacokinetic models using global sensitivity analysis: diazepam case study. *J.Pharmacokinet.Pharmacodyn.*, **33**, 1-27.

Gulden,M. and Seibert,H. (2003) *In vitro-in vivo* extrapolation: estimation of human serum concentrations of chemicals equivalent to cytotoxic concentrations *in vitro*. *Toxicology*, **189**, 211-222.

Hinderling,P.H. (1997) Red blood cells: a neglected compartment in pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. *Pharmacol.Rev.*, **49**, 279-295.

Hirom,P.C., Millburn,P., Smith,R.L., and Williams,R.T. (1972) Species variations in the threshold molecular-weight factor for the biliary excretion of organic anions. *Biochem.J*, **129**, 1071-1077.

Hirom,P.C., Millburn,P., and Smith,R.L. (1976) Bile and urine as complementary pathways for the excretion of foreign organic compounds. *Xenobiotica*, **6**, 55-64.

Houston,J.B. and Carlile,D.J. (1997) Prediction of hepatic clearance from microsomes, hepatocytes, and liver slices. *Drug Metab Rev.*, **29**, 891-922.

Howes,D., Guy,R.H., Hadgraft,J., Heylings,J., Hoeck,U., Kemper,F., Maibach,H.I., Marty,J.P., Merk,H., Parra,J., Rekkas,D., Rondelli,I., Schaefer,H., Taeuber,U., and Verbiese,N. (1996) Methods for assessing percutaneous absorption - Report and Recommendations of ECVAM Workshop 13. *ATLA*, **24**, 81-106.

Howgate,E.M., Rowland,Y.K., Proctor,N.J., Tucker,G.T., and Rostami-Hodjegan,A. (2006) Prediction of *in vivo* drug clearance from *in vitro* data. I: impact of inter-individual variability. *Xenobiotica*, **36**, 473-497.

Hughes,R.D., Millburn,P., and Williams,R.T. (1973) Molecular weight as a factor in the excretion of monoquaternary ammonium cations in the bile of the rat, rabbit and guinea pig. *Biochem.J*, **136**, 967-978.

Ings,R.M. (1990) Interspecies scaling and comparisons in drug development and toxicokinetics. *Xenobiotica*, **20**, 1201-1231.

ICRP (2002). Basic Anatomical and Physiological data for Use in Radiological Protection: Reference Values. Valentin, J. (32). Stockholm, Sweden, Pergamon. Annals of the ICRP.

Inoue,S., Howgate,E.M., Rowland-Yeo,K., Shimada,T., Yamazaki,H., Tucker,G.T., and Rostami-Hodjegan,A. (2006) Prediction of *in vivo* drug clearance from *in vitro* data. II: potential inter-ethnic differences. *Xenobiotica*, **36**, 499-513.

IPCS (2001). Guidance Document for the use of data in development of Chemical Specific Adjustment Factors (CSAFs) for interspecies differences and human variability in dose/concentration-response assessment. UNEP, ILO WHO. WHO/PCS/01.4.

Johnson,T.N., Tucker,G.T., Tanner,M.S., and Rostami-Hodjegan,A. (2005) Changes in liver volume from birth to adulthood: a meta-analysis. *Liver Transpl.*, **11**, 1481-1493.

Jones,H.M., Parrott,N., Jorga,K., and Lave,T. (2006) A novel strategy for physiologically based predictions of human pharmacokinetics. *Clin.Pharmacokinet.*, **45**, 511-542.

Kalampokis,A., Argyrakis,P., and Macheras,P. (1999) Heterogeneous tube model for the study of small intestinal transit flow. *Pharm.Res.*, **16**, 87-91.

Kalampokis,A., Argyrakis,P., and Macheras,P. (1999) A heterogeneous tube model of intestinal drug absorption based on probabilistic concepts. *Pharm.Res.*, **16**, 1764-1769.

Katayama,K., Ohtani,H., Kawabe,T., Mizuno,H., Endoh,M., Kakemi,M., and Koizumi,T. (1990) Kinetic studies on drug disposition in rabbits. I. Renal excretion of iodopyracet and sulfamethizole. *J.Pharmacobiodyn.*, **13**, 97-107.

Klaassen,C.D. (1986) Distribution, Excretion and Absorption. In Klaassen,C.D. (ed.) Casarett and Doull's Toxicology. McMillan, New York.

Klaassen,C.D. (1988) Intestinal and hepatobiliary disposition of drugs. *Toxicol Pathol.*, **16**, 130-137.

Klaassen,C.D. (2002) Xenobiotic transporters: another protective mechanism for chemicals. *Int.J.Toxicol*, **21**, 7-12.

Klaassen,C.D. and Slitt,A.L. (2005) Regulation of hepatic transporters by xenobiotic receptors. *Curr.Drug Metab*, **6**, 309-328.

Komiya,I. (1986) Urine flow dependence of renal clearance and interrelation of renal reabsorption and physicochemical properties of drugs. *Drug Metab Dispos.*, **14**, 239-245.

Komiya,I. (1987) Urine flow-dependence and interspecies variation of the renal reabsorption of sulfanilamide. *J.Pharmacobiodyn.*, **10**, 1-7.

Krishnan,K. and Andersen,M.E. (2001) Physiologically based pharmacokinetic modeling in toxicology. In Hayes,A.W. (ed.) *Principles and methods in Toxicology*. Taylor & Francis, Philadelphia, PA.

Kroes,R., Renwick,A.G., Cheeseman,M., Kleiner,J., Mangelsdorf,I., Piersma,A., Schilter,B., Schlatter,J., van,S.F., Vos,J.G., and Wurtzen,G. (2004) Structure-based thresholds of toxicological concern (TTC): guidance for application to substances present at low levels in the diet. *Food Chem.Toxicol.*, **42**, 65-83.

Lee,S.K., Ou,Y.C., and Yang,R.S. (2002) Comparison of pharmacokinetic interactions and physiologically based pharmacokinetic modeling of PCB 153 and PCB 126 in nonpregnant mice, lactating mice, and suckling pups. *Toxicol Sci.*, **65**, 26-34.

Levine,W.G. (1978) Biliary excretion of drugs and other xenobiotics. *Annu.Rev.Pharmacol.Toxicol*, **18**, 81-96.

Luecke,R.H., Wosilait,W.D., Pearce,B.A., and Young,J.F. (1994) A physiologically based pharmacokinetic computer model for human pregnancy. *Teratology*, **49**, 90-103.

Luecke,R.H., Wosilait,W.D., Pearce,B.A., and Young,J.F. (1997) A computer model and program for xenobiotic disposition during pregnancy. *Comput.Methods Programs Biomed.*, **53**, 201-224.

Matsson,P., Bergstrom,C.A., Nagahara,N., Tavelin,S., Norinder,U., and Artursson,P. (2005) Exploring the role of different drug transport routes in permeability screening. *J.Med.Chem.*, **48**, 604-613.

Nau,H. and Scott,W.J. (1987) Species Differences in Pharmacokinetics, Drug Metabolism and Teratogenesis. In Nau,H. and Scott,W.J. (eds.) *Pharmacokinetics in Teratogenesis*. CRC Press, Boca-Raton, Fl, pp 81-106.

Nestorov,I.A. (1999) Sensitivity analysis of pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic systems: I. A structural approach to sensitivity analysis of physiologically based pharmacokinetic models. *J.Pharmacokinet.Biopharm.*, **27**, 577-596.

Ni,P.F.N., Ho,H.F., Fox,J.L., Leuenberger,H., and Higuchi,W.I. (1980) Theoretical model studies of intestinal drug absorption V. Nonsteady-state fluid flow and absorption. *Int.J.Pharm.*, **5**, 33-47.

Noonan,P.K. and Wester,R.C. (1989) Cutaneous metabolism of xenobiotics. In Bronough,R.L. and Maibach,H.I. (eds.) *Percutaneous Absorption*. Marcel Dekker Inc., New York.

Nordberg,M., Duffus,J., and Templeton,D. (2004) Glossary of terms used in toxicokinetics (IUPAC recommendations 2003). *Pure Appl Chem*, **76**, 1033-1082.

OECD. Guidance document for the conduct of skin absorption studies. Series on Testing and Assessment 28, ENV/JM//MONO(2004)2. 2004. Paris, OECD.

Parrott,N. and Lave,T. (2002) Prediction of intestinal absorption: comparative assessment of GASTROPLUS and IDEA. *Eur.J.Pharm.Sci.*, **17**, 51-61.

Parrott,N., Paquereau,N., Coassolo,P., and Lave,T. (2005) An evaluation of the utility of physiologically based models of pharmacokinetics in early drug discovery. *J.Pharm.Sci.*, **94**, 2327-2343.

Parrott,N., Jones,H., Paquereau,N., and Lave,T. (2005) Application of full physiological models for pharmaceutical drug candidate selection and extrapolation of pharmacokinetics to man. *Basic Clin.Pharmacol.Toxicol*, **96**, 193-199.

Pelkonen,O., Boobis,A.R., and Gundert-Remy,U. (2001) *In vitro* prediction of gastrointestinal absorption and bioavailability: an experts' meeting report. *Eur.J.Clin.Pharmacol.*, **57**, 621-629.

Pelkonen,O., Turpeinen,M., Uusitalo,J., Rautio,A., and Raunio,H. (2005) Prediction of drug metabolism and interactions on the basis of *in vitro* investigations. *Basic Clin.Pharmacol.Toxicol*, **96**, 167-175.

Potts,R.O. and Guy,R.H. (1992) Predicting skin permeability. *Pharm.Res.*, **9**, 663-669.

Poulin,P. and Theil,F.P. (2002) Prediction of pharmacokinetics prior to *in vivo* studies. 1. Mechanism-based prediction of volume of distribution. *J.Pharm.Sci.*, **91**, 129-156.

Poulin,P. and Theil,F.P. (2002) Prediction of pharmacokinetics prior to *in vivo* studies. II. Generic physiologically based pharmacokinetic models of drug disposition. *J.Pharm.Sci.*, **91**, 1358-1370.

Pritchard,J.B. (1981) Renal handling of environmental chemicals. In Hook,J.B. (ed.) *Toxicology of the kidney*. Raven Press, New York.

Proctor,N.J., Tucker,G.T., and Rostami-Hodjegan,A. (2004) Predicting drug clearance from recombinantly expressed CYPs: intersystem extrapolation factors. *Xenobiotica*, **34**, 151-178.

Pryde, D. E. and Payne, M. P. Refinements to an existing knowledge based system for predicting the potential for dermal absorption. IR/EXM/99/07. 1999. Sheffield, UK, Health and Safety Laboratory.

Reddy,M., Yang,R., Clewell,H.J., III, and Andersen,M.E. (2005) *Physiologically Based Pharmacokinetic (PBPK) Modelling: Science and Application*. Wiley Interscience, Hoboken

Renwick,A.G. (1994) Toxicokinetics - pharmacokinetics in toxicology. In Hayes,A.W. (ed.) *Principles and Methods of Toxicology*. Raven Press, New York, p 103.

Roberts,S.A. (2001) High-throughput screening approaches for investigating drug metabolism and pharmacokinetics. *Xenobiotica*, **31**, 557-589.

Rodgers,T., Leahy,D., and Rowland,M. (2005) Tissue distribution of basic drugs: accounting for enantiomeric, compound and regional differences amongst beta-blocking drugs in rat. *J.Pharm.Sci.*, **94**, 1237-1248.

Rodgers,T., Leahy,D., and Rowland,M. (2005) Physiologically based pharmacokinetic modeling 1: predicting the tissue distribution of moderate-to-strong bases. *J.Pharm.Sci.*, **94**, 1259-1276.

Rodgers,T. and Rowland,M. (2006) Physiologically based pharmacokinetic modelling 2: predicting the tissue distribution of acids, very weak bases, neutrals and zwitterions. *J.Pharm.Sci.*, **95**, 1238-1257.

Rollins,D.E. and Klaassen,C.D. (1979) Biliary excretion of drugs in man. *Clin.Pharmacokinet.*, **4**, 368-379.

Rowland,M. and Tozer,T. (1989) *Clinical Pharmacokinetics: Concepts and Applications*. Lea & Fibiger, Philadelphia.

Rowland,M., Balant,L., and Peck,C. (2004) Physiologically based pharmacokinetics in drug development and regulatory science: a workshop report (Georgetown University, Washington, DC, May 29-30, 2002). *AAPS.PharmSci.*, **6**, E6.

Rozman,K.K. (1986) Faecal excretion of toxic substances. In Rozman,K.K. and Hanninen,O. (eds.) *Gastrointestinal Toxicology*. Elsevier, Amsterdam.

Rozman,K.K. and Klaassen,C.D. (1996) Absorption, Distribution, and Excretion of Toxicants. In Klaassen,C.D. (ed.) *Cassarett and Doull's Toxicology: The Basic Science of Poisons*. McGraw-Hill, New York.

Saltelli,A., Tarantola,S., and Campolongo,F. (2000) Sensitivity analysis as an ingredient of modeling. *Statistical Sciences*, **15**, 377-395.

Schaefer,H. and Redelmeier,T.E. (1996) *Skin Barrier - Principles of percutaneous Absorption*. Karger, Basel.

Schlesinger,R.B. (1995) Deposition and clearance of inhaled particles. In McClellan,R.O. and Henderson,R.F. (eds.) *Concepts in Inhalation Toxicology*. Taylor & Francis, Washington DC.

Seibert,H., Morchel,S., and Gulden,M. (2002) Factors influencing nominal effective concentrations of chemical compounds *in vitro*: medium protein concentration. *Toxicol In Vitro*, **16**, 289-297.

Smith,R.L. (1973) Factors affecting biliary excretion. *The excretory function of the bile*. Chapmann & Hall, London.

Schneider,K., Oltmanns,J., and Hassauer,M. (2004) Allometric principles for interspecies extrapolation in toxicological risk assessment--empirical investigations. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol.*, **39**, 334-347.

Shiran,M.R., Proctor,N.J., Howgate,E.M., Rowland-Yeo,K., Tucker,G.T., and Rostami-Hodjegan,A. (2006) Prediction of metabolic drug clearance in humans: *In vitro-in vivo* extrapolation vs allometric scaling. *Xenobiotica*, **36**, 567-580.

Snipes,M.B. (1989) Long-term retention and clearance of particles inhaled by mammalian species. 1. *Crit Rev.Toxicol*, **20**, 175-211.

Snipes,M.B. (1995) Pulmonary retention of particles and fibers: Biokinetics and effects of exposure concentrations. In McClellan,R.O. and Henderson,R.F. (eds.) *Concepts in Inhalation Toxicology*. Taylor & Francis, Washington DC.

Snipes,M.B., James,A.C., and Jarabek,A.M. (1997) The 1994 ICRP66 human respiratory tract dosimetry model as tool for predicting lung burdens from exposure to environmental aerosols. *Appl.Occup.Environ.Hyg.*, **12**, 547-554.

Stenberg,P., Bergstrom,C.A., Luthman,K., and Artursson,P. (2002) Theoretical predictions of drug absorption in drug discovery and development. *Clin.Pharmacokinet.*, **41**, 877-899.

Tavelin,S., Grasjo,J., Taipalensuu,J., Ocklind,G., and Artursson,P. (2002) Applications of epithelial cell culture in studies of drug transport. *Methods Mol.Biol.*, **188**, 233-272.

Theil,F.P., Guentert,T.W., Haddad,S., and Poulin,P. (2003) Utility of physiologically based pharmacokinetic models to drug development and rational drug discovery candidate selection. *Toxicol Lett.*, **138**, 29-49.

Turpeinen,M., Uusitalo,J., Jalonen,J., and Pelkonen,O. (2005) Multiple P450 substrates in a single run: rapid and comprehensive *in vitro* interaction assay. *Eur.J.Pharm.Sci.*, **24**, 123-132.

US EPA (1992). Dermal exposure assessment: Principles and Applications. EPA/600/8-91.001B. Washington DC, US EPA.

US EPA (1994). Methods for derivation of inhalation reference concentrations and application of inhalation dosimetry. EPA/600/8-90/066F.

US EPA (1997). Exposure Factors Handbook Vol. I-III. EPA/600/P-95/002Fa. Washington DC, US-EPA.

US EPA (2004). Risk Assessment Guidance for Superfund Volume I: Human Health Evaluation Manual (Part E, Supplemental Guidance for Dermal Risk Assessment). EPA/540/R/99/005. Washington DC, US EPA.

US EPA (2007). Approaches for the application of Physiologically Based Pharmacokinetic (PBPK) Models and supporting data in risk assessment. EPA/600/R-05/043F. Washington DC, US EPA.

Velasquez,D.J. (2006) Toxicologic responses to inhaled aerosols and their ingredients. In Byron,P.R. (ed.) *Respiratory Drug Delivery*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida.

Watanabe,K.H. and Bois,F.Y. (1996) Interspecies extrapolation of physiological pharmacokinetic parameter distributions. *Risk Anal.*, **16**, 741-754.

West,G.B., Brown,J.H., and Enquist,B.J. (1997) A general model for the origin of allometric scaling laws in biology. *Science*, **276**, 122-126.

Williams,F.M. (2004) EDETOX. Evaluations and predictions of dermal absorption of toxic chemicals. *Int.Arch Occup Environ.Health*, **77**, 150-151.

Willmann,S., Schmitt,W., Keldenich,J., and Dressman,J.B. (2003) A physiologic model for simulating gastrointestinal flow and drug absorption in rats. *Pharm.Res.*, **20**, 1766-1771.

Willmann,S., Schmitt,W., Keldenich,J., Lippert,J., and Dressman,J.B. (2004) A physiological model for the estimation of the fraction dose absorbed in humans. *J.Med.Chem.*, **47**, 4022-4031.

Wilschut, A., Houben, G. F., and Hakkert, B. C. Evaluation of route-to-route extrapolation in health risk assessment for dermal and respiratory exposure to chemicals. V97.520. 1998. Zeist, NL, TNO.

Woollen,B.H. (1993) Biological monitoring for pesticide absorption. *Ann.Occup Hyg*, **37**, 525-540.

Yu,L.X., Lipka,E., Crison,J.R., and Amidon,G.L. (1996) Transport approaches to the biopharmaceutical design of oral drug delivery systems: prediction of intestinal absorption. *Adv.Drug Deliv.Rev.*, **19**, 359-376.

Yu,L.X., Crison,J.R., and Amidon,G.L. (1996) Compartmental transit and dispersion model analysis of small intestinal transit flow in humans. *Int.J.Pharm.*, **140**, 111-118.

You,L., Gazi,E., rchibeque-Engle,S., Casanova,M., Conolly,R.B., and Heck,H.A. (1999) Transplacental and lactational transfer of p,p'-DDE in Sprague-Dawley rats. *Toxicol Appl.Pharmacol.*, **157**, 134-144.

Yu,L.X. and Amidon,G.L. (1999) A compartmental absorption and transit model for estimating oral drug absorption. *Int.J.Pharm.*, **186**, 119-125.

Young,J.F., Wosilait,W.D., and Luecke,R.H. (2001) Analysis of methylmercury disposition in humans utilizing a PBPK model and animal pharmacokinetic data. *J.Toxicol Environ.Health A*, **63**, 19-52.

Zini,R. (1991) Methods in drug protein binding analysis. In Kuemerle,P., Tillement,J.P., and Shibuya,J. (eds.) *Human Pharmacology*. Elsevier, pp 235-82.

Zhao,Y.H., Abraham,M.H., Le,J., Hersey,A., Luscombe,C.N., Beck,G., Sherborne,B., and Cooper,I. (2002) Rate-limited steps of human oral absorption and QSAR studies. *Pharm.Res.*, **19**, 1446-1457.

# R.7.13 Substances requiring special considerations regarding testing and exposure

Standard approaches for hazard and risk characterisation rely on the premise that human and/or environmental exposure to a certain substance is adequately represented by the exposure of the test substance used in standard test protocols. However, there may be situations where the composition of a substance to which human and/or environmental exposure occurs, could be different from that tested in the laboratory studies. For example substances with variability in composition may result in a similar variation in the exposure profile of the different components over time. Also the composition of a liquid that is a complex mixture might be very different from that of its associated vapour phase or the Water Accommodated Fraction (WAF) and it is therefore necessary to develop a specific testing strategy to ensure that the composition of the sample to be tested in the laboratory reflects fully the composition of the likely human or environmental exposure. Such substances are designated as *Non-standard substances*, *Complex Substances* or *Substance of Unknown or Variable composition, Complex reaction products or Biological material* (UVCB substances) and have generally the following characteristics:

- they contain numerous chemicals (typically closely related isomers and/or chemical classes with defined carbon number or distillation ranges), and cannot be represented by a simple chemical structure or defined by a specific molecular formula
- they are not intentional mixtures of chemicals.
- many are of natural origin (e.g., crude oil, coal, plant extracts) and cannot be separated into their constituent chemical species.
- the concept of *impurities* typically does not apply to complex substances.
- they are produced according to a performance specification related to their physico-chemical properties.

This class of substances requires a case-by-case consideration of the approach to define the appropriate information and methods necessary for meeting the requirements of REACH. Pigments, surfactants, antioxidants, and complex chlorine substances are examples of classes of substances, which may require special considerations to take into account the testing requirements for complex substances. Additional examples are presented in Section R.7.13.1 and R.7.13.2, metal and inorganic substances and petroleum products).

## R.7.13.1 Metals and Inorganics

Metals and inorganic metal compounds have properties which require specific considerations when assessing their hazards and risks. These considerations may include:

- The occurrence of metals as natural elements in food, drinking water and all environmental compartments

- The essentiality of some of the metals for humans and organisms living in the environment and their general relationship with the natural background
- The speciation of metals influencing bioavailability and for some even the hazard profile
- The short and long term bioavailability of metals and differing degrees of availability to humans and other organisms in the environment

The classical (eco-)toxicity tests do not necessarily consider the above properties and the results obtained may, therefore, be difficult to interpret. Taking specific considerations into account when testing metals and inorganic metal compounds could often prevent these. Extensive experience on hazard and risk assessment of metals was gathered under the Existing Substances Regulation programme and the technical and scientific knowledge with regard to metals has advanced significantly. These have been described in detail by Van Gheluwe *et al.* (2006) for the environment and Battersby *et al.* (2006) for human health. Specific guidance on testing and data interpretation for the hazard and risk assessment of metals and inorganic metal compounds is given in the chapters related to the individual endpoints.

### R.7.13.2 Petroleum Substances

Petroleum substances belong to the group of UVCB substances: complex mixtures of hydrocarbons, often of variable composition, due to their derivation from natural crude oils and the refining processes used in their production. Many petroleum substances are produced in very high tonnages to a range of technical specifications, with the precise chemical composition of particular substances, rarely if ever fully characterised. Since complex petroleum substances are typically separated on the basis of distillation, the technical specifications usually include a boiling range. These ranges correlate with carbon number ranges, while the nature of the original crude oil and subsequent refinery processing influence the types and amount of hydrocarbon structures present. The CAS definitions established for the various petroleum substance streams generally reflect this, including details of final refinery process; boiling range; carbon number range and predominant hydrocarbon types present.

For most petroleum substances, the complexity of the chemical composition is such that it is beyond the capability of routine analytical methodology to obtain complete characterisation. Typical substances may consist of predominantly mixtures of straight and branched chain alkanes, single and multiple naphthenic ring structures (often with alkyl side chains), single and multiple aromatic ring structures (often with alkyl side chains). As the molecular weights of the constituent hydrocarbons increase, the number and complexity of possible structures (isomeric forms) increases exponentially.

Similar to the petroleum substances are the hydrocarbon solvents; they also consist of variable, complex mixtures of hydrocarbons and are described by EINECS numbers that are also used for petroleum refinery streams. Hydrocarbon solvents usually differ from petroleum refinery streams in the following ways:

- they are more highly refined;
- they cover a narrower range of carbon number;

- they contain virtually no substances of concern (e.g. benzene)
- they contain virtually no olefins.

Although compositionally somewhat better defined than the corresponding petroleum streams, hydrocarbon solvents require special consideration of the testing strategies similar to that of the petroleum substances.

Toxicity is defined via a concentration response and is dependant on the bioavailability of the individual constituents in a UVCB test substance. This may make interpretation for some substances very difficult. For example the physical form may prevent the dissolution of the individual constituents of such a substance to any significant extent where the whole substance is applied directly to the test medium. The consequence of this would be that toxicity may not be seen in such a test system. This would thus not allow for the toxicity assessment of these constituents to be addressed, were they to be released into the environment independent of the original matrix.

Testing strategies for environmental effects of petroleum substances necessarily reflect the complexity of their composition. Reflecting the properties of the constituent hydrocarbons, petroleum substances are typically hydrophobic and exhibit low solubility in water. However, reflecting the range of structures, constituent hydrocarbons will exhibit a wide range of water solubility. When adding incremental amounts of a complex petroleum substance to water, a point will be reached where the solubility limit of the least soluble component is exceeded and the remaining components will partition between the water and the undissolved hydrocarbon phases. Consequently, the composition of the total dissolved hydrocarbons will be different from the composition of the parent substance. This water solubility behaviour impacts on both the conduct and interpretation of aquatic toxicity tests for these complex substances, whilst the complex composition and generally low water solubility impacts on the choice and conduct of biodegradation studies.

For petroleum derived UVCBs, the lethal loading test procedure, also known as the WAF procedure provides the technical basis for assessing the short term aquatic toxicity of complex petroleum substances (Girling *et al*., 1992). Test results are expressed as a lethal or effective loading that causes a given adverse effect after a specified exposure period. The principal advantage of this test procedure is that the observed aquatic toxicity reflects the multi-component dissolution behaviour of the constituent hydrocarbons comprising the petroleum substance at a given substance to water loading. In the case of petroleum substances, expressing aquatic toxicity in terms of lethal loading enables complex substances comprised primarily of constituents that are not toxic to aquatic organisms at their water solubility limits to be distinguished from petroleum substances that contain more soluble hydrocarbons and which may elicit aquatic toxicity. As a consequence, this test procedure provides a consistent basis for assessing the relative toxicity of poorly water soluble, complex substances and has been adopted for use in environmental hazard classification (UNECE, 2003). Complex substances that exhibit no observed chronic toxicity at a substance loading of 1 mg/l indicate that the respective constituents do not pose long term hazards to the aquatic environment and, accordingly, do not require hazard classification (CONCAWE, 2001; UNECE 2003).

There are two possible approaches for generating new information or interpreting existing information, bearing in mind the limitations on interpretation of the results mentioned above:

- First for petroleum substances, a model, PETROTOX, has been developed (Redman *et al.*, 2006), based on previous work assuming a non-polar narcosis mode of action (McGrath *et al.*, 2004; 2005). This model, which was developed to predict the ecotoxicity of petroleum substances and hydrocarbon blocks, could be used to address individual structures where no experimental data is available.
- The WAF loading concept may be used for environmental hazard classifica tion (GHS 2005), but should not be used for PBT assessment.

The complex composition and generally low water solubility also impacts the choice and conduct of biodegradation studies.

A further complication impacting both the choice of test method and interpretation of results is the volatility of constituent hydrocarbons, which shows a wide variation across the range of carbon numbers and hydrocarbon structures present in petroleum substances. It has been the practise to assess the inherent hazards of petroleum substances by conducting testing in closed systems (going to great lengths to ensure that volatile losses are minimised), even though under almost all circumstances of release into the environment, there would be extensive volatilisation of many of the constituent hydrocarbons.

Health effects testing strategies for petroleum substances also reflect the complexity of their composition and their physico-chemical properties. Key factors impacting both the choice of test method and interpretation of results are:

- the vapour pressure of constituent hydrocarbons, which show a wide variation across the range of carbon numbers and hydrocarbon structures present in petroleum substances. This will influence the physical nature of the material to which exposure occurs
- the lipid solubility of constituent hydrocarbons, which show a wide variation across the range of carbon numbers and hydrocarbon structures present in petroleum substances. This will influence the potential for uptake into body tissues
- the viscosity of the complex petroleum substance which can significantly impact on potential for dermal absorption
- the presence of small amounts of individual *hazardous* constituents in complex petroleum substances eg Poly Aromatic Hydrocarbons (PAH's), which may or may not be relevant to the toxicity of the complex petroleum substance
- the presence of other constituents in the complex mixture which may modify (inhibit or potentiate) the toxicity of hazardous constituents.

Toxicological evaluation of complex petroleum substances has normally been based on results of testing of the complete mixture, using OECD Guideline methods. Using this approach it has been possible to take account of the complex interactions that occur between individual constituents of the mixture and the various physico-chemical properties that influence potential for exposure and uptake. In some cases however it has been necessary to adopt modified or non-standard test methods to provide a more reliable indication of the toxicity of certain petroleum fractions. The use of non-standard methods to evaluate the health and environmental effects of petroleum substances is described in more detail in the endpoint specific chapters.

### R.7.13.3 References for Section R.7.13

Battersby R. (2006) - HERAG. Metal Human Health Risk Assessment Guidance Document. www.icmm.com

CONCAWE (2001) - Environmental classification of petroleum substances - summary data and rationale. CONCAWE. Brussels. Report No. 01/54.

Girling A.E., Markarian R.K., and Bennett D. (1992) - Aquatic toxicity testing of oil products - some recommendations. *Chemosphere,* **24,** 10, 1496-1472.

McGrath J., TF P. and DM D.T. (2004) - Application of the narcosis target lipid model to algal toxicity and deriving predicted no effect concentrations. *Environ Toxicol Chem,* **23,** 10, 2503-2517.

McGrath J., Parkerton T., Hellweger F. and Di Toro D. (2005) - Validation of the narcosis target lipid model for petroleum products: gasoline as a case study. *Environ Tox Chem,* **24,** 9, 2382-2394.

OECD (2005) - Guidance Document n°34 on the Validation and International Acceptance of New or Updated Test Methods for Hazard Assessment. Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development.

Redman A., McGrath J., Parkerton T. and Di Toro D. (2006) Mechanistic fate and effects model to predict ecotoxicity and PNEC values for petroleum products. *In: SETAC*, Den Haag, Eds.

UN-ECE (2003) - European (UN/ECE) Globally Harmonized System Of Classification And Labelling Of Chemicals (GHS). United Nations Economic Commission. New York and Geneva.

Van Gheluwe M. (2006) - MERAG. Metal Environmental Risk Assessment Guidance Document.

# Appendix to Section R.7.13

# Appendix R.7.13—1 Technical Guidance for Environmental Risk Assessment of Petroleum Substances

## 1.0 Introduction

Petroleum substances typically consist of an unknown complex and variable composition of individual hydrocarbons. CAS numbers used to identify petroleum substances are based on various considerations including hydrocarbon type, carbon number, distillation range and the type and severity of processing used in substance manufacture.

To characterize hazards, CONCAWE (the oil companies' European organisation for environment, health and safety in refining and distribution) has grouped CAS numbers of petroleum substances derived from petroleum refining into generic categories of major marketed products (Boogard et. al, 2005). Further processing of these refinery streams can be performed to produce more refined hydrocarbon-based solvents. These products have also been further grouped to provide a consistent rationale for environmental hazard classification purposes (Hydrocarbon Solvents Producers Association, 2002).

Petroleum substances typically contain hydrocarbons that exhibit large differences in physio-chemical and fate properties. These properties alter the emissions and environmental distribution of the constituent hydrocarbons, and consequently it is not possible to define a unique predicted exposure concentration (PEC) for a petroleum substance. It is not, therefore, possible to directly apply current risk assessment guidance developed for individual substances to complex petroleum substances. To provide a sound technical basis to assess environmental exposure and risks of petroleum substances, CONCAWE devised the hydrocarbon block method (HBM) in which constituent hydrocarbons with similar properties are treated as pseudo-components or "blocks" for which PECs and predicted no effects concentrations (PNECs) can be determined (CONCAWE, 1996). Risks are then assessed by summing the PEC/PNEC ratios of the constituent blocks. While this conceptual approach has been adopted by the EU as regulatory guidance (EC, 2003) experience in applying this method was limited. Recent studies demonstrate the utility of the HBM to gasoline (MacLoed *et al.*, 2004; McGrath *et al.,* 2004; Foster *et al.*, 2005) and further work has been on-going to support the practical implementation of the HBM methodology to higher boiling petroleum substances. The following section provides a concise overview of the key steps which comprise the HBM and it’s application to the risk assessment of petroleum substances.

## 2.0 Outline of Method

Risk assessment of petroleum substances using the HBM involves an eight step process:

<u>2.1. Analyze petroleum substance composition & variability</u>

The initial step involves analytical characterization of representative samples with different CAS numbers included in the petroleum substance category (e.g. kerosines, gas oils, heavy fuel oils, etc.). Analytical approaches used for this purpose are generally based on chromatographic methodology and have been described previously (Comber *et al*., 2006, Eadsforth *et al*., 2006).

Options for analysis of petroleum substances that have been used include:

a. Full characterisation using GC can be performed on some simpler substances, e.g. gasoline. However, full characterization of higher boiling point streams is not feasible due to the increased complexity of the substances and rapidly increasing number of hydrocarbon components present in such substances.

b. "Modified" Total Petroleum Hydrocarbon (TPH) in which the aromatic and aliphatic fractions of the sample are first separated via a HPLC column. The hydrocarbon distribution in both fractions is then quantified as a function of equivalent carbon number using flame ionization detection. The equivalent carbon number (EC#) is defined by the elution time of the corresponding n-alkane standards. This approach has been adopted in risk-based assessment of petroleum contaminated sites (McMillen *et al*., 2001). This method can be used to quantify hydrocarbons up to an EC# of ca. 120.

c. Two dimensional chromatography (2d-GC) uses the same initial fractionation step used in the above TPH method. Further resolution of the various aromatic (e.g. mono, di, tri, poly aromatic and partially hydrogenated aromatic ring classes) and aliphatic (e.g. n-paraffins, i-paraffins, monocyclics, dicyclics and polycyclic saturated ring structures) classes is achieved by the coupling of two columns, respectively based on volatility and polarity, in series. This high resolution method can be used to quantify hydrocarbons up to an EC# of ca. 35. However, this method is limited to petroleum substances that contain a significant fraction of hydrocarbons below EC# 35 (Eadsforth *et al*., 2006).

2.2 Select hydrocarbon blocks (HBs) to describe product composition

Given the type of compositional data obtained using the methods above, HBs can be selected on the basis of EC# (i.e. boiling point range) and low (aromatic vs. aliphatic classes) or high (up to 16 hydrocarbon classes) resolution blocking schemes. Within aromatic and aliphatic classes or sub-classes, variation in physico-chemical properties depends on the range of EC# used to define the block. Analyses from multiple samples should be used to determine the mean and variance of HB mass fractions that are representative for the petroleum substance category under investigation.

2.3. Define relevant physico-chemical and fate property data for HBs

In order to perform environmental fate and effects modeling, physico-chemical and fate properties must be assigned to HBs. To estimate HB properties, CONCAWE has developed a library of ca. 1500 individual hydrocarbon structures that attempts to represent the structural diversity of the hydrocarbons present in petroleum substances. For each structure, publicly available quantitative structure property relationships (QSPR) have been used predict key properties (e.g. octanol-water partition coefficient, vapour pressure, atmospheric oxidation half-life, fish bioconcentration factor), (Howard *et al*., 2006). To estimate primary biodegradation half-lives for various compartments, literature data on hydrocarbons tested in unacclimated conditions involving mixed cultures under environmentally realistic conditions have been used to develop a hydrocarbon-specific QSPR (Howard *et al*., 2005). This new QSPR has been applied to estimate the half-life of representative library structures. Property data for individual library structures are then "mapped" to the corresponding HBs to assign HB property estimates. Due to the very low solubility of hydrocarbons with EC# > 35 in environmental media, these components are treated as inert constituents that are not considered further in exposure or effect assessment.

2.4. Estimate environmental emissions of HBs throughout product lifecycle stages

Once HBs have been selected and properties defined, an emission characterization covering production, formulation, distribution, professional and personal use and waste life stages must be performed for the petroleum substance category. In addition to assessing the total magnitude of emissions into each environmental compartment (air, water and soil), it is also necessary to speciate these emissions in terms of the HB blocks selected that describe the petroleum product. As in the case of single substance risk assessments, emissions characterization must be considered at different scales (local, regional and continental) and determined using either measured, modeled or, in the absence of other information, conservative default emission factors that are derived given HB properties and product use categories.

2.5. Characterize fate factors and intake fractions of HBs

To assess the environmental fate behavior of HBs, EUSES modeling has been performed for each library structure for different unit-emission scenarios (i.e. 100 kg/yr, 10 kg/yr or 1 kg/yr emission into air or water or soil at continental, regional and local scales, respectively). From these EUSES model runs, fate factors (fFs) and human intake fractions (iFs) for each emission scenario have been calculated. Fate factors for each compartment are defined as the calculated PEC in the compartment divided by the assumed emission for a given scenario. Intake fractions are defined as the predicted human exposure divided by the emission for a given scenario. This modeling exercise has provided a library of fFs and iFs for all representative hydrocarbon structures (van de Meent, 2007). This approach has the advantage that EUSES fate modeling only needs to be performed once so that results can then be consistently applied across different petroleum substance groups.

2.6. Determine environmental & human exposure to HBs

To calculate compartmental PECs and human exposures for different spatial scenarios, block emissions for the scenario are first equally divided among representative structures that "map" to that block. Emissions are then simply multiplied by the corresponding fFs or iFs that correspond to that structure to scale the model predicted exposure or human intake to the actual emission. PECs or human exposures for the block are then calculated by summing results for all of the representative structures that comprise the block.

For petroleum substances use of environmental monitoring data needs specific consideration. While data may be available for "total" hydrocarbons or specific hydrocarbon structures (e.g. naphthalene, chrysene), the source of these constituents may be multiple anthropogenic and natural sources. Therefore, such release or monitoring data may be only used to provide a worst-case, upper bound estimate of the concentration of a “block” for screening purposes. In contrast, model derived PECs are intended to provide a more realistic estimate for substance risk assessment since these values represent only the fraction of the observed total concentration of the "block" in the environment that is attributable to the specific petroleum substance under study.

2.7. Assess environmental effects of HBs

Since petroleum substances are comprised principally of only carbon and hydrogen, these substances will exert ecotoxicity via a narcotic mode of action (Verhaar *et al*., 2000). Moreover, ecotoxicity endpoints for narcotic mixtures are generally observed and quantitatively modeled as simply additive (de Wolf *et al*., 1988; McGrath *et al*., 2005; DiToro *et al*., 2007). To assess the environmental effects of HBs comprising petroleum substances on aquatic and wastewater organisms, a modification of the target lipid model (McGrath *et al*., 2004; Redman *et al.*, 2007) has been developed that builds on the work by Verbruggen (2003) in which toxicity relationships are related to membrane-water rather than octanol-water partition coefficients (Redman, 2007). This revision is needed to allow extension of the target lipid model to more hydrophobic constituents, beyond gasoline range hydrocarbons, that are present in many petroleum substances. The revised target lipid model has been used to derive PNECs for all CONCAWE library structures. If coupled with equilibrium partitioning theory, this model framework can also be used to support effects assessment in the soil/sediment compartment (Redman *et al*., 2007b).

*2.8.* Evaluate *individual and aggregate risk of HBs*

To assess environmental risks, the PEC/PNEC ratio for each library structure within a block is calculated and then the ratios for different structures summed within each block. The additive risk contributed by all the blocks is then determined to estimate the risk of the petroleum substance group. This calculation is performed for each spatial scale.

Efforts are currently underway to automate the HBM method into a simple spreadsheet-based computational tool. This tool is intended to provide a generic methodology to support petroleum substance risk assessment that: (1) links analytical characterization of petroleum substances to HB definition; (2) provides a consistent technical framework across different petroleum groups; (3) reflects the current state of science; and (4) is transparent and practical in scope. Availability of this tool will also allow the sensitivity of risk characterisation to be assessed in response to changes in compositional assumptions or alternative "blocking" schemes. Moreover, this tool will enable identification of HBs which are principal contributors to the PEC/PNEC ratio and where refinement in further data collection can be logically focused if the estimated PEC/PNEC > 1.

## 3.0 Limitations

At present the current HBM methodology does not quantitatively address effects on the air compartment due to lack of standardised laboratory hazard data. In addition, the method does not address heterocyclic compounds (e.g. carbazoles in cracked fuels) or metals (e.g. vanadium and nickel in fuel oils and asphalt) which may be present at low levels in certain petroleum substances. The potential for reduced exposure of certain polyaromatic hydrocarbons as a result of photodegradation or enhanced toxicity due to photoactivation is also not addressed due to the complexity and site-specific nature of these processes. Nevertheless, these issues may be considered on a case-by-case basis, at least in a qualitative manner.

The scope of the generic methodology is intended to address the risks posed by hydrocarbon components in petroleum substances. Therefore, additives that are intentionally introduced to modify the technical properties or performance of petroleum substances are outside the scope of this methodology, but in any event, these substances will be subject to independent risk assessments. Likewise, secondary constituents that are generated from reactions resulting from petroleum substance use (e.g. combustion by-products other than hydrocarbons components in the substance) are excluded and addressed by other EU and country-specific regulations.

## References

Arey, S., R. Nelson, C. Reddy (2007). Disentangling Oil Weathering Using GCxGC. 1. Chromatogram Analysis, *Environ. Sci. Technol.* 41: 5738-5746

Boogaard, P., B. Dmytrasz, D. King, S. Waterman, J. Wennington (2005). Classification and labelling of petroleum substances according to the EU dangerous substances directive (CONCAWE recommendations – July 2005), CONCAWE Report No. 6/05, Brussels, Belgium, 176pp,

Comber M, Dmytrasz B, Eadsforth C, King D, Parkerton T, Toy R Developing a Generic risk assessment methodology for petroleum products - Poster presented at SETAC, Den Hague, 2006

de Wolf, W., J. H. Canton, J. W. Deneer, R. C. C. Wegman and J. L. M. Hermens (1988). Quantitative structure-activity relationships and mixture-toxicity studies of alcohols and chlorohydrocarbons: reproducibility of effects on growth and reproduction of Daphnia magna, *Aquatic Toxicology* 12:39-49.

Di Toro D, McGrath J, Stubblefield W. 2007. Predicting the toxicity of neat and weathered crude oil: Toxic potential and the toxicity of saturated mixtures. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.* 26: 24-36.

European Commission (2003). Technical Guidance Document in Support of Commission Directive 93/67/EEC on risk assessment for new notified substances and commission regulation (EC) No. 1488/94 on risk assessment for existing substances.

Foster K L, Mackay D, Parkerton TF, Webster E, Milford L (2005). Five-Stage Environmental Exposure Assessment Strategy for Mixtures: Gasoline as a Case Study, *Environ. Sci. Technol.* 39:2711-2718.

Eadsforth C, Forbes S, Dmytrasz, B, Comber, M, King D, Application of comprehensive two-dimensional gas chromatography (GCxGC) for the detailed compositional analysis of gas-oils and kerosines - Poster presented at SETAC, Den Hague, 2006

Howard P, Meylan W, Aronson D, Stewart S, Parkerton T, Comber M, Prediction of Environmental Fate and Transport Properties in Support of the Hydrocarbon Block Approach to Risk Assessment – Poster presented at SETAC, Den Hague, 2006

Howard, P., W. Meylan, D. Aronson, W. Stiteler, J. Tunkel, M. Comber, T. Parkerton (2005). A new biodegradation prediction model specific to petroleum hydrocarbons, *Environ. Toxicol. Chem*. 24:1847-1860.

HSPA (2002). The Classification of Petroleum Solvent Streams and Related Complex Hydrocarbon Solvents for Aquatic Environmental Effects Under the EU Dangerous Substances Directive, Hydrocarbon Solvents Producers Association, CEFIC, Brussels, Belgium 44pp.

King, D.J., R.L. Lyne, A. Girling, D.R. Peterson, R. Stephenson, D. Short (1996). Environmental risk assessment of petroleum substances: the hydrocarbon block method, CONCAWE Report No. 96/52, Brussels, Belgium, 23 pp.

MacLeod,M., T. E. McKone, K. Foster, R. L. Maddalena, T. F. Parkerton, D. Mackay (2004). Applications of Contaminant Fate and Bioaccumulation Models in Assessing Ecological Risks of Chemicals: A Case Study for Gasoline Hydrocarbons, *Environ. Sci. Technol.* 38:6225-6233.

McGrath, J.A., T.F. Parkerton, and D.M. Di Toro (2004). Application of the narcosis target lipid model to algal toxicity and deriving predicted no effect concentrations. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem*. 23:2503–2517.

McGrath J A., Parkerton T F., Hellweger F L., and Di Toro D M, (2005). Validation of the narcosis target lipid model for petroleum products: gasoline as a case study, *Environ. Toxicol. Chem*. 24:2382–2394.

McMilllen, S., I. Rhodes, D. Nakles, R. Sweeney (2001). Application of the Total Petroleum Hydrocarbon Criteria Working Group Methodology to Crude Oils and Gas Condensates, Chapter 4, p. 58-76, In: Risk Based Decision Making for Assessing Petroleum Impacts at Exploration and Production Sites, S. McMillen, R. Magaw, R. Carovillano, Eds, Unites States Department of Energy, National Energy Technology Laboratory, Tulsa, OK, 239 pp.

Redman, A. (2007). PETROTOX v.1.02 Users Guide, HydroQual, Inc., for Conservation of Clean Air and Water in Europe (CONCAWE), 44pp.

Redman, A., J. McGrath, E. Febbo, T. Parkerton, D. Letinski, M. Connelly, D. Winkelmann, D. DiToro (2007). Application of the Target Lipid Model for deriving predicted no-effect concentrations for wastewater organisms. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.* 26:11 102-112.

Redman, A., J McGrath, T Parkerton, B. Versonnen, D. Di Toro (2007). Derivation of Soil Ecotoxicity Guidelines for Petroleum Hydrocarbons Using Target Lipid and Equilibrium Partitioning Models, poster presented at the Annual International Conference on Soils, Sediments, and Water, University of Massachusetts, Amherst, MA, USA.

van de Meent (2007). Environmental fate factors and human intake fractions for exposure and risk calculation of petroleum products with the hydrocarbon block method, draft report #20071219, Radboud University, Nijmegen, The Netherlands, 38 pp.

Verhaar, H.J.M., J. Solbé, J.Speksnijder, C. J. van Leeuwen, J. L. M. Hermens (2000).Classifying environmental pollutants: Part 3. External validation of the classification system, *Chemosphere* 40:875-883.

Verbruggen, E.M.J. (2003). Environmental Risk Limits for mineral oil (Total Petroleum Hydrocarbons), RIVM report 601501 021, Bilthoven, The Netherlands, 77pp.

# Appendix to Chapter R.7

# Appendix R.7—1 Threshold of Toxicological Concern (TTC) – a concept in toxicological and environmental risk assessment

## Human Health Aspects

Risk assessment for human health effects is based on the threshold of a critical toxicological effect of a chemical, usually derived from animal experiments. Alternatively, a toxicological threshold may also be based on the statistical analysis of the toxicological data of a broad range of structurally-related or even structurally-different chemicals and extrapolation of the no effect doses obtained from the underlying animal experiments for these chemicals to levels considered to be of negligible risk to human health. This latter approach refers to the principle called Threshold of Toxicological Concern (TTC). Regarded in this way the TTC concept could be seen as an extension of such approaches read-across and chemical category. As such, the TTC concept has been incorporated in the risk assessment processes by some regulatory bodies, such as the U.S Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the UN JMPR and EU EFSA in the assessment of flavourings and food contacts articles (SCF, 2001), as an approach to identify exposure levels of low regulatory concern, and as a tool to justify waiving of generation of animal data.

This section will briefly discuss different TTC approaches, their limitations, criteria for use, and finally their potential use under REACH.

<u>TTC approaches</u>

The TTC was implemented by the FDA as the *Threshold of Regulation* from food contact materials since 1995; a TTC value of 1.5 µg per person per day was derived for a chemical database that covered carcinogenicity (i.e. their calculated one per million risk levels; Gold *et al*., 1995). This value is considered to be applicable for all endpoints except genotoxic carcinogens.

Munro *et al.* (1996) subsequently developed a structure-based TTC approach on principals originally established by Cramer *et al*. (1978). The structural classes of organic chemicals analysed showed significantly different distributions of NOEL's for subchronic, chronic and reproductive effects. Carcinogenic or mutagenic endpoints were not considered. Based on the chemical structure in combination with information on toxicity three different levels (90, 540 and 1800 µg per person per day, respectively) were derived. UN-JMPR and EU EFSA have implemented these values in the regulations for indirect food additives.

Another structure-based, tiered TTC concept developed by Cheeseman *et al*. (1999), extended the Munro *et al*. (1996) 3 classes approach by incorporated acute and short-term toxicity, mutagenic and carcinogenic potency (but exempting those of high potency).

More recently. Kroes *et al.* (2004) evaluated the applicability for different toxicological endpoints, including neurotoxicity and immunotoxicity, and proposed a decision tree with 6 classes of organic chemicals. Allergens or substances causing hypersensitivity could not be accommodated due to the lack of an appropriate database (enabling statistical analysis for this category of substances).

Apart from the two indicated cases, the other approaches have not been adopted by any regulatory body.

Recently, ECETOC has proposed a Targeted Risk Assessment approach for REACH including a series of threshold values for a wide variety of organic and non-organic substances (both volatile and non-volatile), i.e. so-called Generic Exposure Value (GEV), and Generic Lowest Exposure Value (GLEV) for acute and repeated dose toxicity (ECETOC, 2004). Category 1 and 1B carcinogens, mutagens and reprotoxins were excluded. The GEV is a generic threshold values for occupational exposure (and derived dermal values), derived from some most stringent Occupational Exposure Limits (OEL). The GLEV is based on classification criteria for repeated dose toxicity and extrapolation factors. It is noted that the derivation of GEV values was based upon an analysis of current published occupational exposure levels, and therefore also incorporated socio-economic and technical arguments in addition to the assessment factors applied to toxicological endpoints and other data on which the OELs were based. This approach has not been peer reviewed nor accepted by regulatory bodies.

Basic requirements

The TTC concept discussed above require a minimum set of information in order to be applied successfully. However it should be noted that the application of TTC excludes substances with certain structural elements and properties including:

- Non-essential, heavy metals and polyhalogenated dibenzodioxins, -dibenzofurans, or-biphenyls and similar substances:
  This class of substances cannot be addressed by the TTC concepts due to the bio-accumulating properties. Although the TTC approach is able to accommodate other categories of substances with bio-accumulating potential, within the regulatory context, substances with potential for bioaccumulation are 'of concern' and need to be assessed on a case-by-case basis. Potentially bioaccumulating or persistent substances are also excluded from default environmental risk assessments.

- Genotoxic carcinogens:
  A case-by-case risk assessment is required for genotoxic carcinogens, even though some carcinogens can be accommodated within the TTC concept if the estimated intake is sufficiently low (<0.15 □g/day).

- Organophosphates:
  This class of high potency neurotoxicants are excluded.

- Proteins:
  This class of substances is a surrogate to address specifically potential (oral) sensitisation, hypersensitivity and intolerances. There are no appropriate databases available which allow the derivation of a generic threshold for this type of endpoint.

Additionally, another very critical criterion concerns the knowledge on the handling and use of the substance. TTC is only applicable in case there is detailed information available on all anticipated uses and use scenarios for which the risk assessment is provided.

Limitations

The TTC has several limitations. First of all, they are derived on data bases covering primarily systemic effects from oral exposure. This is especially important concerning occupational situations where inhalation or dermal exposure is the main route of contact. Only some cover mutagenic, carcinogenic and acute effects, and in fact none (except for the proposed ECETOC approach) addresses local effects such as irritation and sensitisation.

As all TTC approaches (except for the proposed ECETOC approach) have oral exposure as the principle route, further substantial efforts are needed to explore its potential use for the exposures routes inhalation and skin contact, before any application may become realistic.

Several of the structurally-based approaches to TTC have limitations in applicability domain and cannot accommodate every chemical class. For instance, proteins, heavy metals, polyhalogenated-dibenzodioxins, aflatoxin-like substances, N-nitroso-compounds, alpha-nitro furyl compounds and hydrazins-, triazenes-, azides-, and azoxy-compounds have been excluded by the approach of Kroes *et al.* (2004). Also excluded are highly potent neurotoxicants, organophosphates and genotoxic carcinogens.

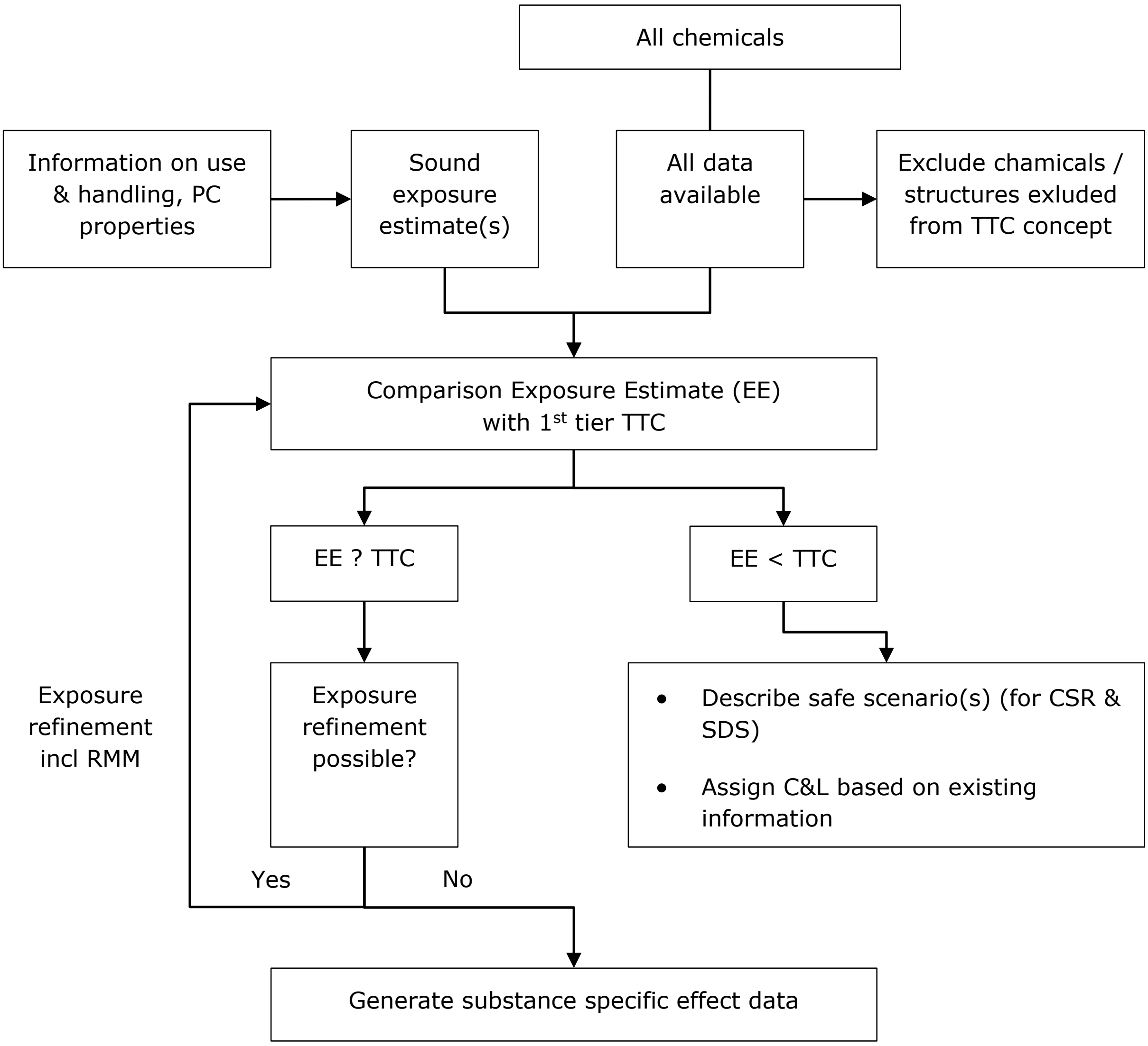
As indicated, the TTC approach is only applicable in case there is detailed information available on all anticipated uses and use scenarios for which the risk assessment is provided. Based on the experience of the EU Risk Assessment Programme for Existing Substances, robust exposure estimates will require a significant effort, even in cases where the uses were well characterised. In case of a multitude of (dispersive) uses and applications, it may not be feasible to generate overall exposure estimate with detail and precision necessary for use in a risk assessment relying on the thresholds based on the TTC concept. Therefore, a TTC will in practice only be applicable in those cases where there are only a few number of exposure scenario's that allow well characterisation.

Furthermore, the use of the TTC approach does not provide information on classification and labelling of a chemical, or on its potency for a specific effect.

Use of the TTC concept

The TTC concept has been developed primarily for use within a risk assessment framework. As already indicated, the TTC concept is applied for regulatory purposes by the U.S FDA and the EU EFSA and UN JMPR in the assessment of food contact articles and flavourings, respectively. These specific TTC approaches underwent a critical review before being accepted on this regulatory platform. Clearly, in the same way, any other TTC approach should be agreed upon by the relevant regulatory body before use, and it should be clearly indicated for which endpoints, routes and population they apply.

**Figure R.7.13—1 Generic TTC scheme/concept under REACH.**




The figure illustrates the way a TTC can be used: it precedes any chemical-specific testing. One tier is shown, but one could apply additional tiering rounds (as clearly illustrated by the approach presented by Kroes *et al*.,2004) dependent upon the chemical of interest.

<u>Potential use within REACH</u>

It is feasible that within REACH the TTC concept may be of use for the chemical safety assessment at tonnage levels triggering limited information on repeated dose toxicity and/or reproduction: REACH clearly indicates the need for non-testing methods and provides the opportunity of waiving testing based on exposure considerations. When clearly documented and justified the following options could apply.

REACH Annex VII

The testing requirements specified in Annex VII would normally not trigger toxicity testing involving repeated exposures and the information at this tonnage level do provide insufficient information to determine a dose descriptor or any other starting point for the derivation of a DNEL for use in an assessment of the human health risks associated with repeated exposures. Although non-testing or *in vitro* methodologies may give insight in the toxicological properties of a substance, generally such methods are insufficiently specific to provide quantitative information on the potency and/or threshold of an adverse effect. In such a case the threshold derived from the TTC methodology might provide a reference value to assess the significance of the human exposure.

REACH Annex VIII-X

At these tonnage levels there may be circumstances triggering an adaptation of the REACH requirements that may lead to waiving of the repeated dose toxicity study and, consequently, the generation of a substance-specific dose descriptor or another starting point for the derivation of a DNEL:

- in Annex VIII, repeated dose toxicity (28 d test, 8.6) and reproductive toxicity testing (8.7) may be waived 'if relevant human exposure can be excluded in accordance with Annex XI section 3.

- in Annex IX and X testing could be waived in case there is no significant exposure, and there is low toxicity, and no systemic exposure.

In a case-by-case consideration, the appropriate threshold derived from the TTC methodologies agreed upon by the relevant regulatory body might be considered as a starting point to assess the significance of the human exposure. The level chosen will be critical to ensure a level of sufficient protection.

Final remark

Independent of the approach used in risk assessment of industrial chemicals it is important to maintain a sufficient level of protection. In the striving for alternatives to animal testing one suggested approach is the use of generic threshold values. However, application of TTC would imply that limited data may be generated and thus, that the level of protection might be influenced. From information on flavouring substances in the diet the TTC concept seems to be reasonable well based with respect to general toxicity and the particular endpoints examined. However, the possible application of TTC on industrial chemicals needs to be carefully considered. There may be some important differences between industrial chemicals and substances used for food contact articles or flavourings, such as differences in use pattern and composition (for a further discussion see Tema Nord, 2005; COC, 2004).

## TTC concept for the environment*

Two approaches

Two different approaches have been used when deriving a TTC for the environment, i.e. the *action-limit* proposed by EMEA/CPMP (2001) and the environmental Exposure Threshold of No Concern (ETNC) proposed by ECETOC (2004) and de Wolf *et al*. (2005). Both these approaches are restricted to the pelagic freshwater compartment.

1. The first of these TTC-approaches, i.e. the *action-limit*, originates from a draft on environmental risk assessment of human pharmaceuticals (EMEA/CPMP, 2001), describing a tiered risk assessment process. The initial step is an environmental exposure assessment in which a coarsely predicted environmental freshwater concentration (PEC) for the pharmaceutical ingredient, or its major metabolites, is compared to an action limit (0.01 µg/L). In case the PEC is smaller than the action-limit and no environmental concerns are apparent, no further action is considered needed. On the other hand, when the PEC is larger than the action-limit, the assessment continues to a second phase, which involves an environmental fate and effect analysis. The action limit is based on an aquatic concentration below which it was concluded that no ecotoxicity data on drugs for relevant standard test organisms were reported (U.S. FDA, 1996). This concentration was further divided by an assessment factor of 100 to obtain the action limit. The action-limit has been questioned by the CSTEE since drugs with lower effect concentrations were found. In addition, the focus on acute toxicity in the draft was questioned, as chronic toxicity was considered more relevant for this kind of substances, i.e. pharmaceuticals.

2. A different TTC-approach was applied deriving an ETNC for the pelagic freshwater compartment, i.e. ETNCaquatic (ECETOC, 2004; de Wolf *et al*., 2005). This approach was based on existing toxicological databases and substance hazard assessments for organisms in the freshwater environment, and a categorisation of chemicals into four different modes of action (MOA) according to the system by Verhaar *et al*. (1992). The stratified data was fitted to a lognormal distribution from which a fifth percentile, with a 50% confidence interval, was determined. This value was then divided by an assessment factor, ranging from 1 to 1000 depending on the data to obtain the ETNCaquatic. Metals, inorganics, and ionisable organic chemicals are not covered by this system, and thus not included when deriving the ETNCaquatic.

   The authors proposed an overall value of 0.1µg/L for MOA1-3. The authors considered that a broad application of the ETNCaquatic concept also needed to cover MOA4, and that the resulting ETNCaquatic likely would have to be much lower. This idea is substantiated by the fact that a substantially lower ETNCaquatic was observed when analysing the chemicals assigned a MOA4,

* Based on TemaNord 2005: 559.

as the resulting ETNCaquatic, MOA4 was 0.0004 µg/l. The lowest individual NOEC value in that particular database was 0.0006 µg/l (Fenthion).

Regulatory use

There is presently no use of the TTC concept as regards environmental assessments. However, in a draft by EMEA/CPMP (2001, 2005) a stepwise, tiered procedure for the environmental risk assessment of pharmaceuticals (for human use) is proposed. This approach would involve a TTC approach as it includes an action limit of 0.01 µg/l in pelagic freshwater environment.

The ETNC may be considered a risk assessment tool, and data might still be needed for classification or PBT assessment. In general, acute toxicity data will be available/predictable, and the resulting PNEC will often be above the ETNC. If it is lower, then the substance should be considered in more depth.

Discussion

The TTC-concept represents a new approach as regards environmental risk assessments since it results in a general PNEC (a non-effect threshold value) that is intended to be applied on an entire group of substances, as compared to the standard substance specific PNEC.

The TTC approach is developed only for direct effects on the pelagic freshwater ecosystem and not effects due to bioaccumulation, or accumulation in other compartments. In addition, the concept does not cover metals, other inorganic compounds, or ionisable organic compounds. The use of the threshold of no toxicological concern, as compared to experimental data, implies a higher risk of not considering the toxicity of degradation product(s)/metabolite(s), which may be unfortunate if they are more toxic than the parent compound.

It has been proposed by de Wolf *et al*., 2005 to use the TTC concept as a tool for screening in order to select/prioritise substances for testing/further risk assessment, e.g. it may help to inform downstream users about the relative risk associated with their specific uses. The approach could also be valuable in putting environmental monitoring data into a risk-assessment perspective. For these applications the concept may work if the TTC is satisfactory determined. However, because only toxicity is considered, P and B criteria should also be consulted. The main reason using the TTC approach would be the saving of aquatic freshwater test organisms, including vertebrate species (mainly fish).

The method of deriving a PNEC, using the NOEC for the most sensitive species and an assessment factor, is the standard approach in TGD to derive a threshold value, i.e. Predicted No Effect Concentration (PNEC), for a chemical. Instead of using NOECs for the most sensitive species, it has for some data rich substances (e.g. Zn in the Existing Substance Regulation) been accepted to instead use the 5th percentile and lognormal distribution, of all species from all phyla, to derive a NOEC. This since the traditional method of deriving PNEC, according to the TGD, for the data rich metals resulted in PNECs below background values. In these cases, ecotoxicity data for a number of species and phyla was used to derive a toxicity threshold (PNEC) for one substance. This differs from the ETNCaquatic (TTC )-approach, where instead an assessment factor is used on the fifth percentile of  toxicity data for the many species for many chemicals (belonging to a defined group). In the first case, the concept accepts that 5% of the species NOECs will fall below the threshold. In the second case, the concept accepts that 5% of the chemical PNECs will fall below the threshold. Is the safety level for the environment similar in these two cases? The consequences should be further evaluated.

What is the added value of using a generic PNEC as compared to (Q)SAR estimates, when no substance specific experimental toxicity data is available? As regards what Verhaar *et al*. (1992) defined as mode of action 1-2, available QSAR models exists, which are based on more specific data, which should be more relevant than a generic TTC. However, it should be stressed that QSARs are usually used as indicators of an effect, and not for confirmation of lack of effects (which is the opposite of how the TTC is proposed to be used!).

If the TTC-concept is to be used, should one or several threshold values be used? Using more than one threshold value implies a higher risk of using the wrong (not safe) threshold. The use of several thresholds put higher demands on the categorisation system. Chemicals may be categorised according to different systems. Considering the fact that the knowledge in this field has continued to grow over the years, is the approach suggested thirteen years ago by Verhaar *et al*. (1992), as proposed by ECETOC (2004) and de Wolf *et al*. (2005), presently the most appropriate way of grouping chemicals in order to derive a TTC? This method uses four modes of toxic action to differentiate between chemicals. Even though rules exists as to categorise that a chemical exhibits one of the first of these three modes of action, it is however not possible, based on definite structural rules, to decide whether or not a substance exhibits the fourth of these modes. Inclusion in this fourth class must, and should, be based on specific knowledge on mode of toxic action of (groups of) chemicals. In addition, a substance may have more than one mode of action.

Hence, the use of only one threshold value appears to be the most transparent and conservative approach. As a consequence of the above, it seems reasonable to base this threshold value on chronic toxicity data for the most toxic chemicals, i.e. those categorised as having a specific mode of toxic action.

TTC can presently not be used as a stand-alone concept, but could perhaps in the future be included in a *Weight-of-Evidence* approach when deciding on potential derogations.

## References

Bitsch A, Wahnschaffe U, Simetska N, Mangelsdorf I. 2003. Identification of structure activity relationship (SAR) alerts (combinations of functional groups) for repeated dose toxicity. Report for CEFIC LRI. Fraunhofer Institute of Toxicology and Experimental Medicine, Germany.

Cheeseman *et al*., 1999. A tiered approach to threshold of regulation. Food and Chemical Toxicology 37, 387-412.

COC, (Committee on Carcinogenicity of Chemicals in Food, Consumer Products and the Environment). Guidance on a Strategy for the Risk Assessment of Chemical Carcinogens, 2004

Cramer *et al*., 1978. Estimation of toxic hazard: A decision tree approach. Food and Cosmetic Toxicology 16, 255-276.

CSTEE (2001) ”Opinion on: Draft CPMP Discussion Paper on Environmental Risk Assessment of Medical Products for Human Use [non-Genetically Modified Organism (Non-GMO) Containing]”, European Union, Brussels, Belgium. http://europa.eu.int/comm/food/fs/sc/sct/out111_en.pdf

De Wolf, W., Siebel-Sauer, A., Lecloux, A., Koch, V., Holt, M., Feijtel, T., Comber, M., and Boeije, G. (2005) ”Mode of action and aquatic exposure thresholds of no concern”, Environ Toxicol Chem, vol. 42(2), pp. 479-484.

ECETOC (2004) ”Targeted risk assessment”, Technical Report No.93. European Centre for Ecotoxicology and Toxicology of Chemicals, Brussels, Belgium.

EMEA/CPMP (2001) ”Draft CPMP Discussion Paper on Environmental Risk Assessment of Non-genetically Modified organism (Non-GMO) Containing Medical Products for Human Use”,

EMEA/CPMP (2005) ”Draft Guideline on Environmental Risk Assessment of Medical Products for Human Use”, London, 20 January 2005. CPMP/SWP/4447/00 draft.

http://www.emea.eu.int/pdfs/human/swp/444700en.pdf

Gold *et al*., 1984. A carcinogenesis potency database of standardized results of animal bioassays. Environmental Health Perspectives 58, 9-319.

Gold *et al*., 1995. Sixth plot of the carcinogenic potency database: Results of animal bioassays published in the general literature 1989-1990 and by the National Toxicology Program through 1990-1993. Environmental Health Perspectives 103 (Suppl. 8), 3-122.

Kroes, R., *et al*., 2004. Structure-based thresholds of toxicological conern (TTC): guidance for application to substances present at low levels in the diet. Food and Chemical Toxicology 41, 65-83

Munro *et al*., 1996. Correlation of structural class with no-observed-effect levels: A proposal for establishing a threshold of concern. Food and Chemical Toxicology 34, 829-867.

SCF, 2001. Scientific Committee on Food: Guidelines of the Scientific Committee on Food for the presentation of an application for safety assessments of a substance to be used in food contact materials prior to its authorisation. European Commission, Brussels.

TemaNord 2005: 559. Threshold of Toxicological Concern (TTC), Literature review and applicability. ISBN 92-893-1196-7

U.S. FDA (1996) ”Retrospective review of ecotoxicity data submitted in environmental assessments. Center for drug evaluation and research, Food and Drug Administration”, For Public display, Docket No. 96N-0057.

Verhaar, H.J.M., van Leeuwen, C.J., and Hermens, J.L.M. (1992) ”Classifying environmental pollutants. Part1: Structure-activity relationships for prediction of aquatic toxicity”, Chemosphere, vol. 25, pp. 471-491.

**EUROPEAN CHEMICALS AGENCY**
**ANNANKATU 18, P.O. BOX 400,**
**FI-00121 HELSINKI, FINLAND**
**ECHA.EUROPA.EU**